



basic Japanese

Learn to Speak Japanese in 10 Easy Lessons



- An emphasis on daily communication with clear grammar and usage notes
- Fully updated for today's learners
- Ideal for self-study or classroom use

TUTTLE

SAMUEL E. MARTIN AND ERIKO SATO

basic Japanese

Learn to Speak Everyday Japanese in 10 Carefully
Structured Lessons

SAMUEL E. MARTIN & ERIKO SATO

TUTTLE Publishing

Tokyo | Rutland, Vermont | Singapore

Contents

About This Book

About the Japanese Language

Word order and particles

Postpositions

Dropping pronouns

Verb morphology

Counters

Honorifics

LESSON 1 **Sound It Out in Japanese!**

Basic Sentences

Basic Vocabulary

Structure Notes:

1.1. Pronunciation

1.2. Rhythm

1.3. Syllables

1.4. Voicing

1.5. Vowels

1.6. Vowels in sequence

1.7. Consonants

1.8. Flapped **r**

1.9. Syllabic nasal

1.10. Accent

LESSON 2 **What? Where? Who?**

Basic Sentences

Basic Vocabulary

Structure Notes:

- 2.1. Nouns and pronouns
- 2.2. Prenouns
- 2.3. Place words (relative location)
- 2.4. Adjectival nouns
- 2.5. Untranslated English words
- 2.6. Particles
- 2.7. は **wa**
- 2.8. が **ga**
- 2.9. か **ka**
- 2.10. の **no**
- 2.11. に **ni**
- 2.12. Words meaning 'is'
- 2.13. Inflected words
- 2.14. Dropping subject nouns
- 2.15. Words of relative reference and question words
- 2.16. Words for 'restaurant'
- 2.17. Words for 'toilet'
- 2.18. 何 **nani/nan** 'what'

LESSON 3 **Actions! Actions! Actions!**

Basic Sentences

Basic Vocabulary

Structure Notes:

- 3.1. Time words (relative time expressions)
- 3.2. Nouns with and without particles
- 3.3. Particles から **kara**, まで **made**, and へ **e**
- 3.4. Particle ね **ne**
- 3.5. Particle で **de**
- 3.6. Particle を **o**
- 3.7. Particle と **to**, meaning 'with' and 'and'
- 3.8. Expressions for accompaniment
- 3.9 Verbs, polite moods
- 3.10. Use of the gerund (or **te**-form)
- 3.11. Use of the imperfect, perfect, and tentative moods

- 3.12. Negatives
- 3.13. Words for 'work'
- 3.14. Verbal nouns (...する ...**suru**)
- 3.15. Going in vehicles
- 3.16. 'As soon as'

LESSON 4 **What's the Weather Like?**

Basic Sentences

Basic Vocabulary

Structure Notes:

- 4.1. Adjectives
- 4.2. Plain and polite forms
- 4.3. Shapes of the plain forms
- 4.4. Learning the forms
- 4.5. Irregular verbs
- 4.6. Adjectives and the copula
- 4.7. Uses of the plain imperfect and perfect
- 4.8. Uses of the infinitive
- 4.9. The plain negative
- 4.10. Particle も **mo**
- 4.11. Expressing the time of the event 'when ...' (...と ...**to**, ...時 ...**toki**, ...間 ...**aida**)
- 4.12 Particle から **kara** meaning 'since' and 'because'
- 4.13. Multiple particles
- 4.14. こと **koto**
- 4.15. つもり **tsumori**
- 4.16. More adverbs
- 4.17. More gerund expressions
- 4.18. Gerund (**te**-form) + いる **iru**
- 4.19. あそぶ **asobu**

LESSON 5 **Because It's for Business**

Basic Sentences

Basic Vocabulary

Structure Notes:

- 5.1. Modifiers
- 5.2. Modifier clauses made with adjectives
- 5.3. Modifier clauses made with a copula
- 5.4. Modifier clauses made with adjectival nouns
- 5.5. The noun の **no**
- 5.6 ...の(ん)です ...**no (n) desu**
- 5.7. Verb + でしょう **deshō**
- 5.8. ...かね ...**ka ne**
- 5.9. ので **no de**
- 5.10. のに **no ni**
- 5.11. Plain negative ...ない ...**nai**
- 5.12. Negative infinitive ...ず ...**zu**
- 5.13. Imperfect negative + **de** ...ないで ...**nai de**
- 5.14. はず **hazu**
- 5.15. ところ **tokoro**
- 5.16. Verbs for leaving
- 5.17. ...前に ...**mae ni** and ...後で ...**ato de**
- 5.18. まで **made** and うち **uchi**
- 5.19. Verbs meaning 'know'
- 5.20. Talking a language

LESSON 6 **Going Shopping Again?**

Basic Sentences

Basic Vocabulary

Structure Notes:

- 6.1. Numerals and numbers
- 6.2. Other quantity words
- 6.3. Use of numbers and quantity words
- 6.4. Primary and secondary numerals
- 6.5. Primary numerals
- 6.6. Arithmetic
- 6.7. Counters
- 6.8. Sound changes
- 6.9. Secondary numerals

- 6.10. Secondary counters
- 6.11. Counting people
- 6.12. Counting birds
- 6.13. Counting days
- 6.14. Names of the months
- 6.15. Giving dates
- 6.16. Telling time
- 6.17. -ぐらい **-gurai/-goro**
- 6.18. Particle や **ya**
- 6.19. など **nado**, なんか **nanka**
- 6.20. Particle か **ka** meaning 'or'
- 6.21. Particles は **wa** and を **o** with いかがですか **ikaga desu ka**
- 6.22. ひとつ **hitotsu**
- 6.23. Only: -だけ **-dake** and -しか **-shika**
- 6.24. Approximate numbers
- 6.25. Fractions
- 6.26 Percentage
- 6.27. Multiples
- 6.28. -ずつ **zutsu**
- 6.29. ごとに **goto ni**, おきに **oki ni**
- 6.30. Stores that end in 屋 **ya**

LESSON 7 **Have You Been in a Japanese House?**

Basic Sentences

Basic Vocabulary

Structure Notes:

- 7.1. Quotations
- 7.2. と 言う **to iu**
- 7.3. The plain tentative
- 7.4. Tentative (volitional) + とする **to suru**
- 7.5. Noun + として **to shite/**にして **ni shite**
- 7.6. Gerund (**te-form**) + みる **miru**
- 7.7. Desideratives

- 7.8. Alternative questions
- 7.9. よう **yō**
- 7.10. Quoting requests
- 7.11. Particle よ **yo**
- 7.12. 見える **mieru** and 聞こえる **kikoeru**
- 7.13. Pronouns + に **ni**
- 7.14. Gerund (**te**-form) + ある **aru**
- 7.15. The noun 方 **hō**
- 7.16. Comparisons
- 7.17. Questions with comparisons
- 7.18. 一番 **ichiban**
- 7.19. -目 **me** (ordinal numbers)
- 7.20. Particle ほど **hodo**
- 7.21. なるほど **naruhodo**
- 7.22. -ばかり **-bakari**
- 7.23. まま **mama**
- 7.24. 同じ **onaji**
- 7.25. Clothing

LESSON 8 **Let's Keep in Touch!**

Basic Sentences

Basic Vocabulary

Structure Notes:

- 8.1. Interrogatives + も **mo** or か **ka**
- 8.2. Gerund + も **mo**
- 8.3. Interrogative + gerund + も **mo**
- 8.4. The provisional mood (-れば **-reba**)
- 8.5. Obligation
- 8.6. Permission
- 8.7. Denial of permission = prohibition
- 8.8. Denial of obligation
- 8.9. Obligation, prohibition, permission: summary
- 8.10. Conditionals (forms) -たら/-たら **-tara/-dara**
- 8.11. Conditionals (uses)

- 8.12. Asking for advice
- 8.13. 'Had better'
- 8.14. ...さえ...**sae**
- 8.15. The explicit use of に **ni**
- 8.16. ...ば...ほど... **...ba...hodo** 'the more... the more...'
- 8.17. ...し **...shi**
- 8.18. Correlative compounds

LESSON 9 **Be Polite!**

Basic Sentences

Basic Vocabulary

Structure Notes:

- 9.1. Status words: humble, neutral, exalted
- 9.2. Kinship terms
- 9.3. Other nouns
- 9.4. Honorific prefixes
- 9.5. Honorific suffixes for people's names
- 9.6. Verbs: the honorific infinitive
- 9.7. Special honorific verbs
- 9.8. 申し上げる **mōshiageru**
- 9.9. Inflection of slightly irregular exalted verbs
- 9.10. Special inflections of -ます **-masu**
- 9.11. Use of humble verbs
- 9.12. Adjectives and adjectival nouns
- 9.13. Formation of the adjective honorific infinitive
- 9.14. Summary of honorific predicates
- 9.15. ござる **gozaru**
- 9.16. いらっしゃる **irassharu**
- 9.17. おいで **oide**
- 9.18. Verbs for giving and receiving
- 9.19. Favors
- 9.20. Requests
- 9.21. Answers to negative questions
- 9.22. The specific plural

LESSON 10 **What Is Your Take on That?**

Basic Sentences

Basic Vocabulary

Structure Notes:

- 10.1. Hearsay そうです **sō desu**
- 10.2. Bound form -そう(な) **-sō (na)** 'appearance'
- 10.3. ...らしい **...rashii**
- 10.4. Expressions meaning 'like'
- 10.5. The alternative -たり/-だり **-tari/-dari**
- 10.6. ...ながら **...nagara**
- 10.7. ある **aru** with people
- 10.8. ...ことにする/...ことになる **...koto ni suru/...koto ni naru**
- 10.9. ...しまう **shimau** and ...おく **oku**
- 10.10. ...わけ **...wake**
- 10.11. Double negatives
- 10.12. ...に違いない **...ni chigai nai**
- 10.13. について **ni tsuite** and によって **ni yotte**
- 10.14. Causative, passive, and causative passive verbs
- 10.15. Use of the causative
- 10.16. Uses of the passive
- 10.17. Use of the causative passive
- 10.18. The potential
- 10.19. かもしれない **ka mo shirenai**
- 10.20. かしら **ka shira**
- 10.21. Desiderative verbs ...たがる **...tagaru**
- 10.22. ...ものです **...mono desu**
- 10.23. The plain imperative

APPENDIX I **Other Styles of Speech**

APPENDIX II **Accent Patterns**

APPENDIX III **Verb Forms (Selected)**

Dictionary

Japanese—English

English—Japanese

Illustration and Photo Credits

List of Culture Notes

About This Book

Basic Japanese introduces the structure of Japanese through authentic, commonly heard Japanese sentences, useful contemporary Japanese vocabulary, and natural conversation. This book is particularly suited for those who wish to quickly build their knowledge of sentence structures and their communicative skills in Japanese.

Each lesson starts with a section of Basic Sentences, which offers ten to twenty sentences serving as typical examples of essential sentence structures. These structures are explained thoroughly in the Structure Notes section later in the lesson. Basic Vocabulary lists thematically sorted vocabulary words and phrases that are relevant to the contextual theme of the lesson. The thematic grouping of the vocabulary is to help learners make associations to contexts more easily. The Conversation section offers an authentic dialog, in which you can learn basic, everyday discourse devices, such as natural ways of responding and acknowledging as well as appropriate ways of ending sentences in the context. Exercises are provided to strengthen your understanding of the content of the lesson.

Lesson 1 is mainly on sound systems, and not many grammatical facts are covered. However, the subsequent lessons introduce gradually more complex structures and facts about usage, so one can start with simple sentence structures and eventually learn complex sentences including conditionals, passives, and causatives by the time all ten lessons have been completed.

Basic Japanese is an extensive revision of *Essential Japanese*, by Samuel E. Martin, first published in 1957 and long a standard text for learning Japanese. Although Samuel Martin

passed away in 2010 and was unable to review and approve the new changes, *Basic Japanese* maintains all the exciting linguistic insights of *Essential Japanese*, while incorporating linguistic changes that have taken place over the past several decades in terms of structure, vocabulary, and socio-cultural norms that are essential for communication in Japan today. Furthermore, all Japanese sentences (except those embedded in the English paragraphs) are presented in both kana/kanji and Romanization, and all sections except the Structure Notes and Exercise are recorded in the accompanying audio CD to help users learn the language as a whole. Illustrations, culture notes, and usage tips are provided in sidebars wherever they may help learners to put themselves in the communicative contexts. Here are some tips for getting the most out of *Basic Japanese*:

The sentences in Basic Sentences are clearly laid out so that Japanese sentences can be seen from their English translations. Some items in each sentence are underlined, showing that they bear grammar/usage points that will be discussed in Structure Notes.

It is advisable that you not write down the answers in Exercises so you can use this section repeatedly for reviewing and reinforcing your understanding. Answers are provided in a smaller font after the questions.

Many vocabulary words are presented outside of the Basic Vocabulary section, and you are advised to learn words from all the sections in each lesson. For example, Structure Note 3.1 lists relative time expressions such as **ashita** ‘tomorrow,’ **kinō** ‘yesterday,’ **raishū** ‘next week,’ and **kotoshi** ‘this year.’ Furthermore, all Japanese sentences except in Exercise are accompanied by English translations, so you can expand your vocabulary as you work through them. A glossary is provided at the end of the book for the learner’s convenience.

The authors are grateful to Cal Barksdale, Nancy Goh, Tan Cheng Har, and other editors and staff at Tuttle for their dedication and professionalism, as well as Akiko Saito for providing numerous illustrations, Taeko Kamei for her photographs, and Rui Tamura and Azuma Tanaka for helping to

record the audio CD.



The Bonus Material from the Enclosed MP3 Audio CD may also be Downloaded.

How to Download the Bonus Material of this Book.

1. You must have an internet connection.
2. Click the link below or copy paste the URL to your web browser.

<http://www.tuttlepublishing.com/basic-japanese-downloadable-cd-content>

For support, you can email us at info@tuttlepublishing.com.

About the Japanese Language

The origins of the Japanese language are incompletely known, and multiple theories have been proposed over the past few centuries connecting Japanese to North Asian languages, South Asian Languages, and languages in other areas. Currently, it is thought that the strongest theory among them is one of the North Asian ones, which places Japanese with Altaic languages such as Turkish and Mongolian based on the typological similarities, for example, sequential suffixation (agglutinating morphology), Subject-Object-Verb order, and vowel harmony in native vocabulary. Around the fourth and the fifth centuries AD, Chinese characters and vocabulary started to be brought to Japan. The Japanese developed *man'yōgana*, in which a limited set of kanji were used to write Japanese words with their phonetic contribution. Eventually, in the Heian Period (794–1185), hiragana and katakana were developed from some of the kanji characters included in *man'yōgana*. Most content words, such as nouns, adjectives, and verbs, have a Chinese origin due to the strong influence of China in history. However, modern Japanese also includes an increasing number of loan words from English. The Japanese language is obviously extremely complex in terms of its lexicon and writing systems, but its unique structural features also surprise many speakers of English. The following are only some of its unique features.

Word order and particles

The basic word order in English is subject-verb-object, whereas in Japanese it is subject-object-verb. The word order is rigid in English in most cases but can be very flexible in Japanese, so long as the verb is placed at the end of the sentence. For

example, the English sentence *Ken called Yumi* can be either *Ken-ga Yumi-o yonda* or *Yumi-o Ken-ga yonda* in Japanese.

Postpositions

English prepositions such as *from*, *in*, *on*, *at*, and *with* correspond to postpositions in Japanese. Instead of saying *from New York*, they say something like *New York from*, or **Nyū Yōku kara**. Japanese and English are mirror images in this respect.

Dropping pronouns

The Japanese are not lazy people, but they like to drop personal pronouns such as ‘I,’ ‘you,’ and ‘he.’ The use of the second person pronoun **anata** ‘you’ is almost forbidden in conversations. To ask, ‘Is it yours?’ in speaking to Ms. Yamada, the Japanese will say, **Sore wa Yamada-san no desu ka** ‘Ms. Yamada, is it Ms. Yamada’s?’

Verb morphology

Japanese verbs and adjectives can be followed by numerous suffixes, one after another, just as if you are creating a necklace by putting beads together. For example, **tabe** is the shortest pronounceable form of the verb ‘to eat.’ However, **tabe-ru** means ‘will eat,’ **tabe-sase-ru** means ‘will make someone eat,’ **tabe-sase-rare-ru** means ‘will be made to eat,’ **tabe-sase-rare-tai** means ‘want to be made to eat,’ and **tabe-sase-rare-taku-nai** means ‘do not want to be made to eat.’ This feature of language is called agglutination, and it is one of the reasons many scholars think Japanese belongs to the Altaic language family.

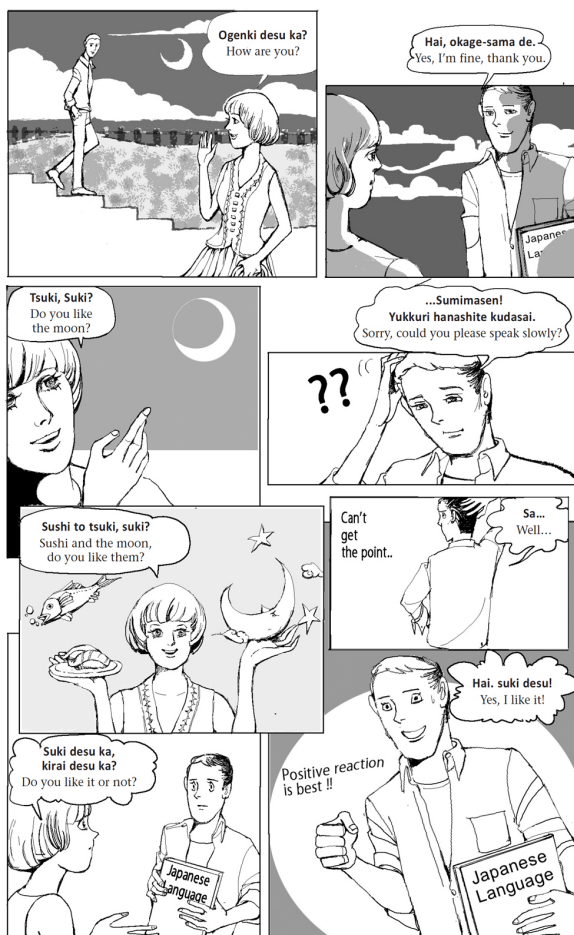
Counters

Another feature that exists in Japanese but not in English is a category of suffixes called counters. Counters are placed after numerals in order to express the quantity or amount of people and things, and the choice of counters varies depending on the shape, size, and type of the item. For example, **go-nin no hito** means ‘the five people’; **go-hiki no inu** means ‘the five dogs’; **go-**

dai no kuruma means ‘the five cars.’ **Nin**, **hiki**, and **dai** are the counters for these respective types of items.

Honorifics

The Japanese language has rich and extensive honorific systems that express respect, humility, and politeness. These systems govern speech styles through the choices of suffixes, prefixes, (pro)nouns, verbs, adjectives, and phrases that are determined based on the relationship among the speaker, the listener, and a third party with respect to the social grouping and social hierarchy. For example, a simple question like ‘Will you go?’ can be **iku no**, **ikimasu ka**, or **irasshaimasu ka** depending on how close or distant the speaker feels to the person. English does not have such verbal suffixes for expressing politeness or respect. However, this does not mean English speakers are rude. English speakers use different strategies for expressing politeness. For example, they tend to use a longer phrase for expressing politeness: they may say ‘I’m wondering whether it is okay for me to leave now’ instead of ‘Is it okay to leave now?’ for politely asking for permission to leave. Or, they may elaborate on a statement with the addition of kind comments or brief explanations for conveying politeness in a variety of speech functions such as asking for permission, requesting, apologizing, thanking, and refusing invitations.



LESSON 1

Sound It Out in Japanese!

日本語で言ってみよう！ **Nihongo de Itte Miyō!**

In this lesson you will learn some everyday phrases and sound structures of the Japanese language.





[cue 01-1]

Basic Sentences

1「あ、今日は。ちは。」

“**Akhonitichiawà.**”

“**Ohlhl!** (literally, As for today...)”

2「先生、お囲まんどおはます。」

“**SeYsaiaohayāngōzaiyōašu.**”

“**Ohfessed, gooding, Ming!** (lit., It is early.)”

...ございます ...gozaimasu

Remember that you must add **gozaimasu** after **ohayō** ‘good morning’ and **arigatō** ‘thank you’ when you say these to your superior.

3「あ、ばんは。ばんは。」

“**Akhobanawà!**”

“**Ohgoodinglit!** (As for this evening...)”

4「(どうも) ありがとうございます。」

“**(Dōmo) arigatō gozaimasu.**”

“**Thank yōu** (literally).”

5「ありがたうまじりました。」

“**Dōgatshgozaimiteshita.**”

“**Thank you** (for what you have done).”

6「は元気のすかまで。」

“**Dejekigessaka’dē.**”

“**Yes, I am fine, (thank you) (lit., Thanks to you and others.)**”

7「さようなら。」

“**Sayōnara!**”

“**Goodbye!**”

8「おやすみ、おやすみなさい。」

“**Okayasuminajsuminasai.**”

“**Ohgoodnight!** (lit., Please rest well.)”

9「懺悔のう。」(ちよつと) すみません。」

“~~Maō~~, (chotto) sumimasen.”

“~~Excuse~~ me.”

ちよつと chotto

Chotto means ‘a little bit’ and is used with a variety of verbs and adjectives, but it also functions just to make one’s expression soft and friendly. It can be used by itself to get attention or softly refuse something or express dislikes.

10(どうも) すみませんでした。」

“~~(Dōmo)~~ Sumimasen deshita.”

“~~No, (deny) sorry~~ (I) have committed a discourtesy.)”

すみません Sumimasen

Sumimasen is one of the most frequently used words in Japanese. Depending on the context, it is used to catch attention or apologize. It is also used to thank someone when one receives overwhelming generosity or kindness from him/her.

11あ、うめだなきいふぶ。」

“~~Au good~~ajōbasai.”

“~~Oh, nothing~~ryl’m fine.”

12よつと失礼ですが…

Chotto shitsurei desu ga...

Excuse me, but... (I have a question or request).

13よつと待って(ください)。

Chotto matte (kudasai).

Please wait a moment.

14はやく(話してください)。」

“~~Mak~~kuri (hanashite kudasai).”

“~~Please~~ talk) slowly.”

15う一度(言ってください)。

Mō ichido (itte kudasai).

(Please) (say it) again.

16願います。

Onegai shimasu.

Please (do so). (I’ll make a request of you.)

では (or じゃ), 失礼します。

“De wa (or Ja), shitsurei shimasu.”

Well, I'll say goodbye. (Excuse me.)

18 じゃあ、また。 」

“Ejamataā.”

“Okay, see you!” (see you) again!”

19 はじめまして。田中です。どうぞよろしく。 」

“Hajimemashite. Tanaka desu. Dōzo yoroshiku.”

“Hi! I’m Ms. Tanaka. Nice to meet you!, too!”

Puzzling Japanese Phrases

Beginner students of the Japanese language are often puzzled by simple, daily expressions when they see their literal translations. This is mainly due to socio-cultural differences between Japan and other countries, especially in the West, although structural differences in the language are also responsible. Many Japanese phrases were derived from locutions that express modesty and respect. For example, when the Japanese introduce themselves to others, they say **yoroshiku onegai shimasu** at the end. Phrase books will offer a conventional translation, like ‘Nice to meet you,’ but the literal translation is very different. Literally, **yoroshiku** means ‘well,’ appropriately,’ or ‘favorably.’ **Onegai** means ‘wish’ or ‘request.’ **Shimasu** means ‘will do.’ So, the entire phrase literally means something like ‘I request (you to act) in favor (of me)’ or ‘please be kind to me.’ You may wonder why Japanese people say something that implies their helplessness at the very moment they introduce themselves, but the phrase actually expresses their modesty, their respect for the person they’re speaking to, and their willingness to have a good relationship with him or her. And while the literal translation of the phrase is awkward, understanding the culture, understanding the idea of the phrase, and learning exactly when the phrase is used—by whom, to whom, and

for what purpose—is the key to success in acquiring the language. Conventional English translations may be useful for you at the outset, but in a later context they will eventually confuse you. So, when you learn Japanese, think in Japanese, not in English!



[cue 01-2]

Basic Vocabulary

FAMILIAR JAPANESE WORDS

折り紙 **origami**

植物 **ikimono**

空手 **karate**

寿司 **sushi**

刺身 **sashimi**

すき焼き **(sukiyaki)**

うどん **udon**

えび **ebi**

アニメ **anime**

漫画 **manga**

TVドラマ **drama**

otaku **(otaku)** (people with obsessive interest in their hobby)

Japanese pop **(music)**, J-pop

FAMILY

father **otōsan**

mother **okāsan**

older brother **otōsan**

older sister **otōsan**

Manga

In Japan, people of all ages read **manga**, or comic books. At restaurants in the business district, it's common to see office workers in suits reading manga during their lunch breaks. Most cyber cafés in Japan offer their clients shelves of manga. There are popular long-running manga magazines like *Shonen Jump*, and some super-popular manga—for example, *Nana* by Ai Yazawa—have been turned into anime and/or movies. Manga's history can be traced back to the twelfth century, but the modern style of manga has flourished since World War II, with themes varying from action-adventure to romance, history, comedy, science fiction, fantasy, mystery, and horror, among others. Manga are studied by scholars, and there are even manga museums (for example, the Kyoto International Manga Museum). One reason for the appeal of manga is that they are very much accessible to anyone. They can influence people's lives, giving them courage, offering enlightenment, and releasing stress. Near 40 percent of the total sales of books and magazines in Japan are from manga publications. In fact, many supplementary teaching materials take the form of manga, teaching kanji, proverbs, history, and other subjects. Manga can be a good study tool for learners of Japanese like you, because they introduce kanji with the aid of a pronunciation guide (**furigana**), vocabulary words, colloquial phrases, onomatopoeia, and other features in illustrated contexts.



ANIMALS

dogu
catneko
rabbitagi
fishsake
horsea

LANDSCAPE

mountain
riverkawa
ocean, sea
lake
lake, mizuumi

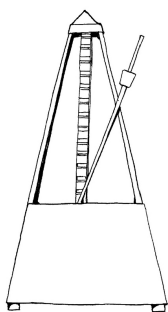
Structure Notes

1.1. Pronunciation

Every language has a system of sounds, and no two systems are exactly alike. The same organs are used in pronouncing the sounds of Japanese and those of English, but they are used in somewhat different ways. These organs are parts of the mouth, the tongue, the nose, and the throat. You will find it helpful to learn a bit about how these organs are used to make the sounds of English and those of Japanese. Many of the sounds in these two languages are so similar that you can use English sounds for the Japanese ones without being misunderstood, but there are some English pronunciation habits that you must avoid if you are to speak understandable Japanese. And if you don't want your Japanese to have a marked American accent, you will want to pay close attention to the slight differences between even those sounds that are most alike in the two languages.

1.2. Rhythm

English is spoken in a SYNCOPATED fashion—we bounce along, rushing syllables in between heavy stresses, keeping an irregular rhythm and tempo based on our stress system. Each normal English syllable is spoken with one of four stresses—and there’s even an extra one, especially loud, to show unusual emphasis. If you listen to the word *windshield wiper* you will notice that the first syllable (‘wind-’) is more heavily pronounced than the others; the last syllable (‘-er’) is the weakest; and for some speakers there is a difference in stress between the remaining syllables (‘-shield-’ and ‘-wipe-’). Those Americans who hear no difference in stress between ‘-shield-’ and ‘-wipe-’ may hear the somewhat stronger stress on the syllable ‘new’ in the phrase “a new windshield wiper” (with the strongest stress still on the syllable ‘wind-’).



Japanese, on the other hand, speak in a METRONOMIC fashion—as if there were a musician’s metronome evenly beating out each syllable. Instead of putting a heavy stress on some syllables and various weaker stresses on the others, the Japanese gives each syllable a moderate and even stress. And instead of rushing syllables in between the heavy-stressed ones, speeding up the weaker syllables, slowing down for the stronger ones, the Japanese speaker allows about the same amount of time for each of his syllables, regardless of the apparent prominence of the syllable. To the ears of an American, accustomed to hearing distinctive stresses, not all Japanese syllables are heard evenly strong. This is because not all Japanese syllables are equally PROMINENT. The prominence of

a syllable is conditioned by a variety of factors, such as stress, vowel color, pitch, voicing, etc. Of these factors, stress is the most important in English, but the least important in Japanese. Of course, those syllables that have voiceless or dropped vowels in Japanese will sound weakly stressed to an untrained American ear. So the first English habit to overcome in speaking Japanese is syncopation. Try to time your Japanese syllables evenly, giving them an equal stress.

1.3. Syllables

Now, what is a Japanese syllable? An English syllable, as noted above, is a sound or group of sounds accompanied by one of four stresses. A Japanese syllable isn't that sort of thing at all. It's a sound or group of sounds that take up a certain relative space of time. In other words, one of those metronome beats. A Japanese syllable may consist of a SHORT VOWEL (**e** 'picture,' **o** 'tail'), or A CONSONANT + A SHORT VOWEL (**te** 'hand,' **ta** 'field,' **yo** 'world'), or A CONSONANT + Y + A SHORT VOWEL (the first syllable of **kyonen** 'last year'). Note that the sounds **sh**, **ch**, **ts** are in each case single consonants even though we write them with two letters.

In addition, a syllable may consist of a consonant when followed by another consonant (other than **y**) or a pause. For example, the first **k** of **yukkuri** 'slowly,' the first **s** [a spelling abbreviation for what is really **sh** of **irasshaimashita** '(you) came,' the first **n** of **kon'nichi** 'today,' and both instances of the **n** in **konban** 'this evening.' The syllabic consonants are further discussed in note 1.9.

Finally, a syllable may consist of EITHER HALF OF A LONG VOWEL. In other words, what we write as **ā**, **ē**, **ī**, **ō**, **ū** are really just abbreviations for **aa**, **ee**, **ii**, **oo**, **uu**—two syllables each. Long vowels are further discussed in note 1.6.

Below are some of the words occurring in the Basic Sentences, with the syllable divisions indicated by hyphens.



[cue 01-3]

hai はい
 chotto ちょっと
 okay オケー
 Konnichiwa こんにちは
 Konbanwa こんばんは
 sayōnara さようなら

1.4. Voicing

In the throat there are two pieces of muscular tissue that can be vibrated with a flow of air from the lungs like a couple of heavy rubber bands. They are called vocal cords. When vocal cords vibrate, we say the sound has VOICING or is VOICED. When these cords are somewhat relaxed at the sides of the throat, we say the sound is VOICELESS or UNVOICED. You can feel the vibration of the vocal cords by placing your hand on your throat. Or put your hands over your ears and you will notice a buzz whenever a sound is voiced.

In most languages, some of the sounds are typically voiced and others are typically voiceless. For instance, in English the initial sounds of these pairs differ in that the ones on the left (**k, ch, t, s, p, f, th**) are voiceless, and those on the right (**g, j, d, z, b, v, th**) are voiced:

Voiced

gay
 cheer
 dough
 zeal
 pay
 fan

then

There are similar pairs of voiced and voiceless sounds in Japanese:



[cue 01-4]

Voiced

銀 **gin** silver
字 **ji** character, letter
ど **dō** how
象 **zō** elephant
番 **ban** watchman

In English, the sounds we call VOWELS, those made without any close contact between the tongue and top of the mouth, are always voiced, unless we are softly whispering. In Japanese, vowel sounds are often unvoiced when they come between voiceless consonants. Virtually every speaker of Japanese pronounces the vowels written **i** and **u** as unvoiced between voiceless consonants, and some drop these vowels completely. At the end of a word and after a voiceless consonant, these vowels are also frequently unvoiced or dropped, so that the final syllable of **ohayō gozaimasu** ‘good morning’ and **genki desu** ‘I’m fine’ sound AS IF there were no **u** there at all. The other vowels, those we write **a**, **e**, and **o**, are usually pronounced voiced. But unaccented **ka** and **ko** at the beginning of a word are often unvoiced when followed by the same syllable: **kakanai** ‘does not write,’ **koko** ‘here.’ And **ha** and **ho** are often unvoiced when followed by a voiceless consonant and the same vowel: **haka** ‘grave,’ **hokori** ‘dust,’ and **hosoi** ‘slender.’

1.5. Vowels

There is a striking difference between the way a Japanese person pronounces his vowels and the way an American pronounces his. Japanese vowels seem to stand still. English vowels often slide off from their starting points in one of three directions: with the tongue moving front and up (as in *key*, *bay*, *shy*, and *toy*); with the tongue moving back and up and the lips rounding (as in *now*, *know*, and *who*); with the tongue relaxing toward a central position (as in *yeah*, *ah*, *law*, *uh*, and *huh*; with many speakers also in *bad*, *bed*, *bid*, and *bud*; with some Southern and Western speakers also in *bat*, *bet*, *bit*, and *butt*).

A vowel takes its characteristic color from the way the tongue, mouth, and lips are held. Vowels are often described in terms of the tongue's position in three top-to-bottom levels (HIGH, MID, LOW) and three front-to-back positions (FRONT, CENTRAL, BACK). If we ignore the off-glides mentioned above, and think only about the points of departure, we can illustrate these positions for American vowels with such words as these:

	Front	Central	Back
High	beat, bit		boot, book
Mid	bait, bet	but, cut	boat, paw
Low	bat	father, cot	caught

Note: Some speakers do not distinguish *caught* from *cot*.

For many American speakers all nine possible positions are used. The Japanese speaker, however, fills only five of the spaces as in the following words:



[cue 01-5]

	Front	Central	Back
High	いびき ibiki snoring	---	つづく tsuzuku continues
Mid	せめて semete at least	---	こども kodomo child
Low	---	あなた anata you	---

In English, we spell the same vowel sound many different ways (*dough, toe, slow, so, sew*, etc.) and the same letter may indicate a number of different vowels (*line, marine, inn, shirt*, etc.). In Romanized Japanese, the same symbol is normally used for each occurrence of the same vowel. You should learn these symbols and the sounds they stand for, and not confuse this simple use of these letters with their many English uses. The use of the letters may be remembered as: **i** as in *ski*, **e** as in *pet*, **a** as in *father*, **o** as in *so*, **u** as in *rhubarb*. In both English and Japanese, the lips are relaxed for vowels in the front and center of the mouth, and somewhat rounded for those in the back. Many Japanese round their lips very little, however, and you will probably notice that the Japanese **u** involves less of this lip-rounding than the American equivalent. (Actually, much of the American lip-rounding is part of the off-glide.) After the consonants **s**, **ts**, and **z**, the Japanese **u** is sometimes pronounced in a HIGH CENTRAL position.



[cue 01-6]

追々 **tsuzumu**
車 **kuruma**
続 **datsu**
続 **tsuzuku**
続 **tsuzukimasu**
牛乳 **gyūnyū**

In ordinary conversation when the Japanese syllable **u** comes before **ma**, **me**, or **mo**, it is often pronounced as if it were the syllable **m**:



[cue 01-7]

~~馬~~ **uma** [mma]

~~梅~~ **ume** [mme]

~~模範~~ **moregi** [mmoregi]

Notice that Japanese does not utilize the MID CENTRAL position on the vowel chart. This is one of the most common of English vowels; it is sometimes indicated by the phonetic symbol ə (the schwa or ‘inverted e’). For many English speakers, this is the most common vowel in weak-stressed syllables; so the American who forgets that Japanese has no weak-stressed syllables tends to replace various Japanese vowels with this relaxed central vowel. For **anata** ‘you,’ many Americans will say **anata**, overstressing the syllable **na** and sliding over the other syllables. Be careful to avoid weak stresses, and you will not confuse the Japanese with this mid-central vowel.

1.6. Vowels in sequence

In Japanese, any vowel may be followed by any other vowel. Each is pronounced in a short, clear, evenly stressed fashion. Here are some examples of vowel sequences:



[cue 01-8]

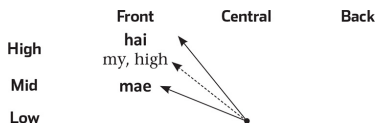
~~え~~ **hai**

noise
 tope
 new
 bai



Note that there is a syllable, an even space of time, for each vowel: **ha-i**, **i-e**, **u-e**, **o-i**.

Now, in English we do not have vowels in sequence. Each vowel is followed either by a consonant or by one of those three off-glides mentioned in 1.5: the y-glide in *key*, *bay*, *by*, and *boy*; the w-glide in *now*, *know*, and *new*; the h-glide in *ah*, *yeah*, *law*, and *huh*. When we Americans hear a Japanese vowel sequence, we are apt to reinterpret this as one of our combinations of vowel + glide. We hear Japanese **hai** like English *high* and Japanese **mae** like English *my*. The difficulty is that English *high* and *my* rhyme, but Japanese **hai** and **mae** do not. The following chart will give you an idea of the difference in pronunciation between the two English words on the one hand and each of the Japanese words on the other:



Note that there are some Tokyo speakers who do sound their **ai**'s much like their **ae**'s. Such speakers rhyme the words **kaeru** 'return' and **hairu** 'enter.' Speakers of Standard Japanese, however, try to keep these sequences distinct.

Just as we hear Japanese **ai** and **ae** alike, we tend to hear Japanese **au** and **ao** the same. Listen carefully to the difference

between these pairs:



[cue 01-9]

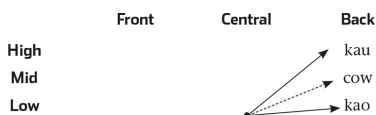
買 ^u **kau**

金 ^o **au**

顔 **kao**

真 **ao**

Do **kau** and **au** seem to sound like English *cow*? Do **kao** and **ao** seem to sound like English *ow*? The following chart will give you an idea of the difference in pronunciation. As you can see, this chart is a mirror image of the one above.



Since any vowel can follow any other vowel in Japanese, it is natural that a vowel can follow itself. These double vowels are sometimes called **LONG VOWELS** because, being two syllables, they take twice as long to pronounce as the short ones. In the Hepburn Romanization of Japanese, which this book uses, the double vowels are usually written with a macron (ˉ) over the simple vowel, except in the case where there is a morphological boundary, as in **oishi-i** ‘delicious.’ Instead of a macron, some people use a circumflex accent (ˆ —like a small inverted V).

It is extremely important to master the difference between the short (simple) vowels and the long (double) ones early in your study of Japanese. So many words are distinguished by vowel length alone that, unless you are careful with these distinctions, your Japanese will be like a faulty telephone connection, likely to break down at any moment. English vowels are neither long nor short, by Japanese standards, but

they often SOUND long, because of the off-glides. Remember to make your SHORT vowels SHORTER and your LONG vowels LONGER than the equivalent English vowels. Here are some examples of long and short vowels:



[cue 01-10]

~~さい~~ **sā** [sa-a]

~~え~~ **ē** [e-e]

~~い~~ **ī** [i-i]

~~ほ~~ **hō** [ho-o]

~~ふ~~ **fū** [fu-u] prefecture

In ordinary conversation, most Japanese do not distinguish the vowel sequence **ei** from **ee** (= **ē**). In some parts of Japan, however, the distinction is still maintained. To an American ear, both sequences sound about like the vowel in *bay*. You should practice making the **ē** sound clear and long without the off-glide of the equivalent English sound. Examples:



[cue 01-11]

~~い~~ **ī**

~~けい~~ **keī** management

~~おん~~ **on** register

~~た~~ **tā** ル



1.7. Consonants

In the structural system of every language, a given sound is made in somewhat different ways, depending on what sounds precede and follow it. If you hold your hand very close to your mouth and say the word *pan* clearly and naturally, you will feel a slight puff of breath; on the other hand, if you say *span* or *ban*, you will not feel the puff of breath. A more effective demonstration is to light a match and hold it close. Those consonants with a puff of breath will put the match out; those without will merely make it flicker. This puff of breath is called **ASPIRATION**; consonants accompanied by it are said to be **ASPIRATED**. English **p**, **t**, **ch**, and **k** (often spelled with the letter **c** as in *cat*) are aspirated in initial position, but not after the consonant **s**. Compare the two words in each of the following pairs:

pin and *spin*

tick and *stick*

charge and *discharge*

key and *ski*

In final position, English **p**, **t**, and **k** may be either aspirated or unaspirated, or not released at all.

Now in Japanese, the consonants **p**, **t**, **ch**, and **k** are usually somewhat aspirated as in English, but the aspiration is not so heavy. The Japanese consonants are **UNASPIRATED** when they are double (that is, long). Since the corresponding English

double consonants are aspirated as in *hip pocket*, *part-time*, *night chief*, and *bookkeepers*, you should give special attention to suppressing the puff of breath when you make the Japanese double consonants.

Another characteristic of Japanese double consonants, including **ss**, **ssh**, as well as **pp**, **tt**, **tch**, **kk**—is the special TENSENESS with which they are pronounced. It is as if the Japanese speaker tightened up his throat in order to hold on and get in that extra syllable represented by the first of the consonants.

Listen to the difference between the single and double consonants in the following examples, then imitate them, being very careful to hold the first of the double consonants for a full syllable's duration and then release it tight and clear with no puff of air.



[cue 01-12]

Single Consonant

へ通 **pepon** one time
糸通 **toiroad**, a course
括弧 **kakko** parentheses; brackets
喝采 **kassai** applause
遺囑 **ishoku** will; testament
一致 **itchi** accord, agreement, unity

Just as the difference between long and short vowels is very important to make your Japanese understandable, so is the difference between long and short consonants.

One other point about aspiration. In English we do not aspirate a consonant after **s**. But in Japanese, when the syllable **su** is reduced to just a syllabic **s** (as in *ikaga desu ka.*), a following **p**, **t**, or **k** still has the slight aspiration it would have in initial position. Notice the difference in pronunciation between

English *ski*, one syllable, no aspiration—and Japanese **suki** ‘likes’—two syllables, with **u** unvoiced or dropped, but with slight aspiration of **k**.

Consonants are usually described in terms of the WAY they are pronounced (voiced, voiceless; aspirated, unaspirated; etc.) and the PLACE they are pronounced. In general, Japanese uses about the same places in the mouth as English—**b**, **p**, and **m** are made with the lips, and **k** and **g** with the back of the tongue against the soft part of the roof of the mouth. However, **t**, **d**, and **n** are all made farther front than the English equivalents. For these sounds in English, most of us touch the front of the tongue or the tip (or both) against the ridge BEHIND the teeth, or even farther back than that. But in Japanese, the tongue is pushed forward against the teeth themselves. This gives the Japanese sounds—called DENTAL consonants—a sharper quality; the English sounds—called ALVEOLAR consonants (after the alveolar ridge behind the teeth)—sound dull and indistinct to a Japanese. Notice the difference between sounds in certain Japanese and English words:



[cue 01-13]

English (dental!)

~~to~~ **tō** ten

~~do~~ **dō** how

~~no~~ **nō** No (Japanese classical ballet)

The Japanese consonants **s**, **z**, **sh**, **ch**, and **j** are also pronounced somewhat more FRONT than many American speakers pronounce the English equivalents. Since the American sounds are farthest front in words like *see*, *zeal*, *sheep*, *cheap*, and *jeep*, it may help to think of the sounds in these words. Some Japanese give the **j** a sound rather like that used by the French in *Jacques* or by some Americans in *azure*, *garage*, and

rouge. (At the beginning of a word, many Japanese pronounce **z** as if it were spelled **dz**; in slow over-precise speech, you may hear the **dz** version even in the middle of a word.)

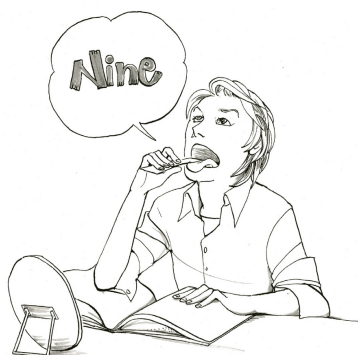
Be careful how you pronounce the Japanese. English **f** is made with the lower lip against the upper teeth. The Japanese place both lips close together (as if about to make a **p** or a **b** or as if about to whistle) and then let the air come out in a puff between. A Japanese **f**, then, is an **f** WITHOUT ANY TEETH. Occasionally you will hear a Japanese person use an ordinary **h** instead of this **f**.

Japanese voiced consonants (**b**, **d**, **z**, **j**, **g**, **m**, **n**) are more fully voiced than English initial voiced consonants. In English we start off somewhat lazily with the voicing, giving our vocal cords an instant to warm up. It is only between vowels, *rabbit*, *lady*, *dizzy*, *tiger*, *coming*, and *inning*, that we voice these sounds all the way through. Japanese warm their vocal cords up an instant before they start to make the sound and this gives their voiced consonants a bit more prominence than ours.

The Japanese consonant **g** has two pronunciations. In Southern Japan it is usually pronounced like **g** in English *go* (but of course never like **g** in *gem* because that sound would be written *j*). In Northern Japan, many people pronounce the **g** always like the English sound in *sing* or *singer*. In Tokyo, there is a compromise. The general rule is: initial in a word, pronounce as in *go*; within a word, pronounce as in *singer*. There are a few exceptions to this rule. The particle **ga** is always pronounced with the **ng** sound, and the element **go** meaning ‘five’ is usually pronounced like English *go* even within a word, but these are of minor importance.

You may have trouble with this **ng** sound. It is made with the tongue in the same position as for **g**, but with the nasal passage open, the way it is for **m** or **n**. Notice that this is NOT the same sound as that used by most English speakers in the word *finger*—that is, by those speakers who do not rhyme this word exactly with *singer*. It is as if we should spell the former word *finger* to show that we make first the back nasal sound (**ng**) and then the back non-nasal sound (**g**). Since you are not

used to using this **ng** sound at the beginning of a stressed syllable in English, you may want to practice it in the following way. Hold the tip of your tongue down with your finger or one of those flat tongue-depressors doctors use. Then try to say the sound **n** as in *nine*. You will feel the tip of your tongue try to come up, but keep it down and make the back part of the tongue do the work. You have then made the **ng** sound. All you have to do after that is to train the tip of your tongue so you will not have to hold it down with a tongue depressor while making this sound. The Japanese **g** in the middle of a word, then, is an **n** made with the back of the tongue. If you find this sound too difficult, just use your English **g** in all positions. You will not quite be talking Standard Japanese, but then neither do lots of Japanese! Here are some examples of the two kinds of **g**:



[cue 01-14]

-g{-ng]

学校 **gashōgakkō** primary school

銀 **ginn** gold and silver

蛾 **ga** but [subject particle]

銃後 **gun-go** noncombatant (status); behind the guns

戦後 **sengo** postwar

* Exceptions!

The word **gogo** ‘p.m., afternoon’ shows both kinds: [go-ngo].

Another sound that may cause you trouble is **ts**. Unlike Japanese **t** (dental!), this sound usually starts at the alveolar ridge like an English **t**. It normally occurs only before the vowel **u**, and between the **t** and the **u** there is a slight hiss represented by the **s**. This sound does not occur initially in English, except for a few rare words like *tsetse fly*. However, you sometimes hear it in rapid speech: *ts cool today* (for *it is cool today*), *ts all right with me* (for *it is all right with me*). You may tend to slide over the **t** and only pronounce the **s**; this will cause confusion, because **tsu** and **su** distinguish a number of words, for example:



[cue 01-15]

ts

隅 **tsumi** [tsu] side corner, angle
釣る **tsuru** [tsu] fishes
住む **tsumu** [tsu] side up
勝 **tsu** [tsu] wins
すずき **tsuzuki** [tsu] can; sequel

Notice that the vowel **u** gets unvoiced or dropped when there is a following voiceless consonant:



[cue 01-16]

ts

好き **tsuki** [tski] like
進む **tsumu** [tsu] advance

すすき ~~tsutsuk~~ [sutsu] kippasigassiting

After you have practiced on the difference between **tsu** and **su** for a while, you might try these tongue-twisters:



[cue 01-17]

すすみすくはし
~~susumitsuku~~ hashita
すすみすくはし
~~susumitsuku~~ hashita

The thing to remember about the syllable **tsu** is: DON'T OMIT THE **t**.

In addition to the simple consonants are the combinations **ky**, **gy**, **py**, **by**, **my**, **ny**, and **hy**. (There is also **ry**, for which see below, 1.8.) These are pronounced somewhat as are the corresponding English sounds in *cute*, *gew-gaw* or *regular*, *rebuke*, *music*, and *Hugh*, provided you distinguish *Hugh* from *you*). In English, these combinations are usually followed by a vowel corresponding to Japanese **u**, but in Japanese they are also followed by **a** and **o**. For example, **byōin** [byo-o-i-n] ‘hospital’ and **biyōin** [bi-yo-o-i-n] ‘beauty shop’ sound similar but differ in that the former has the combination of **b** and **y** whereas these consonants are in separate syllables in the latter. Here are some examples:



[cue 01-18]

客車 ~~kya~~ kusha [kya-ku-sha]
郵便局 ~~yu~~ binkyoku [yu-u-bi-ng-kyo-ku]
駅 ~~kyu~~ ko [kyu-u-ko-o]
送 ~~gya~~ ku [gya-ku]

実業家 **jitsugyōka** [ji-tsu-gyo-o-ka]
 館 **gyūniku** [gyu-u-ni-ku]
 eighth **happyaku** [ha-p-pya-ku]
 present **happyō** [ha-p-pyo-o]
 with a hiss **yūke** [pyulletto]
 three **sambaku** [sa-m-bya-ku]
 講氣 **byōki** [byo-o-ki]
 bureau **byūrō** [byu-u-ro-o]
 明日 **saimyaku** [sa-m-mya-ku]
 明日 **myōbaneminyō** [myo-o-ba-N]
 muse **myūzu** [myu-u-zu]
 meow **nyā** [nya-a]
 最 **nyō** [nyo-o]
 milk **gyūnyū** [gyu-u-nyu-u]
 戸 **hyaku** [hya-ku]
 標準 **hyōjun** [hyo-o-ju-N]
 fuse **hyūzu** [hyu-u-zu]

1.8. Flapped r

The sound that seems to cause Americans most distress is the Japanese **r**. This is a sound called a flap. You make it by lifting the tip of the tongue backwards, then quickly and decisively bringing it down with a brief flick against the alveolar ridge (behind the teeth). Many Americans have this sound in the middle of words like *Betty*, *letter*, *latter*, and *cottage*. Some Englishmen use this sound for the **r** in *very*, *merry*, and *berry* so that the Englishman's *berry* often sounds like the American *Betty*. This **r** will sound a little bit like a **d** to you. The differences between the Japanese **r** and **d** are primarily two: length—the **r** is brief, the **d** somewhat longer; and position of contact—the **r** is against the alveolar ridge with the very tip of the tongue, but the **d** is against the teeth with somewhat more of the tongue. You might begin to practice this sound in medial position, being careful not to make it like an American **r**—nor to trill it lengthily like an Italian **r**—and at the same time keep it distinct from the Japanese **d**:



[cue 01-19]

Japanese r

(RIDGE! BRIEF!)

腰 **hada** skin/fish

薦 **toro** tokeru idencha

研 **sosoro** chat

研 **ari** ant

する **suru** does

Be sure you are putting the **r** at the beginning of the syllable: **sorosoro** [so-ro-so-ro] ‘leisurely.’ Once you have acquired the sound, try practicing it initially:



[cue 01-20]

Japanese r

(RIDGE! BRIEF!)

跡 **ato** da ku enfor

電 **den** chu ga ho

毒 **doku** poison

りん **ringo** apple

留 **rusu** absence

Once you’re able to make the initial **r**, you’re ready to tackle the combination **ry**. This sound is made by putting the back part of the tongue in position to make the **y** sound, then very swiftly moving just the tip of the tongue up to make the flap for the **r**. You might practice the words first without the **r**, making the **y** good and strong; then go over them inserting the **r** lightly,

without damaging the **y**. Do not make the **r** and then add an extra syllable just to get the **y** in. Examples:



[cue 01-21]

略 byakia [rya-ku]
 片利 Ryū (kyā) [rya-ku]-u-kyu-u]
 略 shōryaku [shō-rya-ku]
 上野 jōyū [jō-ō-ryū] (ver)
 大統領 daitōryō [da-i-to-o-ryo-o]

1.9. Syllabic nasal

There is one more sound that may cause you some trouble. This is the syllabic nasal. The Japanese write this sound with the same symbol, but it is pronounced in different ways, depending on the sounds around it. For example, the **n** sounds in **tan-i** ‘academic credits’ and **tani** ‘valley’ sound completely different. The Hepburn Romanization writes the syllabic nasal sometimes **m**, sometimes **n** and sometimes **n’** or **n-** (**n** followed by an apostrophe or a hyphen). The sound may be written **m** if it is followed by **p**, **b**, or **m**—any lip sound other than **f** or **w**; it is written **n’** or **n-** if it is followed by a vowel (**a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**) or by **y**; and it is written just **n** before other consonants (including **f** and **w**) and at the end of a word.

The pronunciation of the syllabic nasal varies according to its surroundings, but it is always pronounced with the nasal passage open and it always takes a full syllable’s time. There are four main pronunciations:

1. a long (syllabic) **m** (before **p**, **b**, and **m**)
2. a long (syllabic) **n** (dental!, before **t**, **ts**, **d**, **n**, **ch**, and **j**)
3. a long (syllabic) **ng** (before **k** and **g**)

4. long nasalization **N** (elsewhere (before vowel, **y**, **w**, **r**, **s**, **sh**, **z**, **h**, **f**, or at the end of a word))

You will have little difficulty with the first two pronunciations. Just remember to hold the nasal for a full syllable's time. Here are some examples:



[cue 01-22]

1. a long (syllabic) **m**

見物 ~~kenbu~~ **tsu** [ke-m-bu-tsu]
見物 ~~kenbu~~ **tsu** [ke-m-bu-tsu]
見物 ~~kenbu~~ **tsu** [ke-m-bu-tsu]
見物 ~~kenbu~~ **tsu** [ke-m-bu-tsu]



[cue 01-23]

2. a long (syllabic) **n**

just, precisely ~~chan~~ **to** [cha-n-to]
an ~~shin~~ **tsu** [shin-tsu-u]
this ~~kondo~~ **to** [kondo-tu]
hello, good ~~kon~~ **ni** [ko-ni-chi-wa]
constantly ~~ken~~ **chi** [ken-chi-ku]
three ~~san~~ **ji** [sa-n-ji]

The third pronunciation may cause you some difficulty. The combination **nk** is pronounced about as in *banker*, but the **ng** sound of the **n** is held for a full syllable. The combination written in the Hepburn Romanization as **ng** is pronounced with that **ngg** sound of *finger* in some parts of Japan, but in the Standard Language it is pronounced like two **ng** sounds in a row: **ngng**, with the first held for a full syllable and the second

beginning the following syllable. Get out your tongue-depressor again, and keep the tongue tip down a little longer.

Cf. **nangai** ‘how many floors’ and **nagai** ‘is long.’



[cue 01-24]

3. a long (syllabic) **ng**

good **genthi** [ge-ng-ki]

triangle **sankaku** [sa-ng-ka-ku]

ink **inki** [i-ng-ki]

this **kongetsu** [ko-ng-nge-tsu]

goldfish **kingyo** [ki-ng-ngyo]

literature **bungaku** [bu-ng-nga-ku]

apple **ringo** [ri-ng-ngo]



The fourth pronunciation you will probably find the most difficult. The basic part of this sound is just nasalization—such as the French put on some of their vowels in words like *garçon*, *Lyons*, or *chanson*. Some Americans use simple nasalization in place of the **nt** in words like *plenty*, *twenty* [ple’y, twe’y]. If you like, you may think of this as an **n** with the tongue not quite touching the top of the mouth anywhere. This sound is heard most distinctly at the end of a word:



4. long nasalization **N** (At the end of a word)

bread **pan** [pa-N]

新聞 **shimbun** [shi-m-bu-N]

日本 **Nihon** [ni-ho-N]

金 **kin** [ki-N]

pen **pen** [pe-N]

(Before **s**, **sh**, **z**, **pink>h**, **f**, and **r**)

検査 **kensha** [ke-N-sa]

新式 **shishiki** [shi-N-shi-ki]

百歳 **banzai** [ba-N-za-i]

時間表 **jikanhyō** [ji-ka-N-hyo-o]

日本展 **Nihonfu** [ni-ho-N-fu-u]

管理 **kamie** [ka-N-ri]

Before **y**, **w**, and vowels

Before vowels, **y**, and **w**, the syllabic nasal takes on some of the color of the following sound. For example, in **hon'ya** [ho-N-ya] ‘bookshop,’ the **N** sounds like a nasalized **y**, anticipating the following, non-nasal **y**. In **hon wa** [ho-N-wa] ‘as for the book,’ the **N** sounds like a nasalized **w**, anticipating the following, non-nasal **w**. Before **i** or **e**, the syllabic nasal may also sound like a nasalized **y**: **Nihon e** [ni-ho-N-e] ‘to Japan,’ **ten-in** [te-N-i-N] ‘clerk.’ Here are some more examples:



Bakery **pan'ya** [pa-N-ya]

婚約 **kon'yaku** [ko-N-yaku]

神酒 **shinwa** [shi-N-wa]

電話 **denwa** [de-N-wa]

No **Shinle** [ki-N-e-N]

100 **sen** [se-N-e-N]

~~gold~~ ~~kin~~ ~~ro~~ [ki-N-i-ro]

~~unit~~ ~~tan~~ 'i [ta-N-i]

~~South~~ ~~nam~~ 'E [na-pN-o-o]

1.10. Accent

In English, accent refers to the way in which stress levels occur. In Japanese, the accent is the way in which PITCH LEVELS occur. When the vibrating vocal cords are drawn out long and tight, the pitch is high. When they are relaxed and shortened, the pitch is low. In English we use different pitch levels to indicate certain general types of phrases—like question (?), statement (.), suspension (...), continuation (,), and so forth. This use of pitch is called INTONATION. Japanese has intonation, too, but it is usually restricted to the last voiced syllable of a phrase. Note that in English the intonation contour extends over much more of the phrase, but the Japanese intonation occurs only with the last syllable or two. In addition to intonation, Japanese uses pitch to differentiate words and phrases from each other, like we use stress in English. It is this use of pitch that we call accent.

In different parts of Japan there are different accent patterns. More than a half of the Japanese population speaks with accent patterns rather like those of Standard Japanese—that is, the speech of Tokyo. The principal exception is Western Japan (Kyoto, Osaka, Kobe; also parts of Shikoku and southern Kyushu). There, the accent often seems just the opposite from that of Standard Japanese. Where the Tokyo speaker goes up in pitch, the Kyoto speaker often goes down. In some parts of Japan (places in northern Kyushu and in northeastern Honshu), the accent is not distinctive at all; all words have the same pattern. If you are planning to talk Japanese in Western Japan, you can completely ignore the accent marks in this section. And even if you are going to talk Japanese in Tokyo, you will be fairly well understood, even without the accent distinctions. The Japanese of today are used to hearing their language spoken with a variety of accent patterns. The important thing is that

you should always imitate the persons you hear speaking Japanese and mimic their accents, wherever you may be. However, if you wish to put the final polish on your knowledge of Standard Japanese, you may want to devote some attention to the accent.

What the accent mark represents in Standard Japanese is THE LAST SYLLABLE BEFORE A FALL IN PITCH. In **yukkuri** ‘slowly,’ there is a fall of pitch right after the syllable **ku**. In Tokyo speech EVERY SYLLABLE UP TO THE FALL OF PITCH IS HIGH EXCEPT THE FIRST OF THE PHRASE. Of course, if the first syllable is itself the last before the fall, it is high. The relative pitches in **yukkúri** ‘slowly’ and **Génki desu** ‘I’m fine’ look as below, where L stands for a low pitch and H stands for a high pitch:



[cue 01-27]

ゆーきーす。

yékkúdesu.

[yú-k-kiúdes]

H H H L L

‘slowly.’

You will be able to hear this fall of pitch most clearly when it occurs on the first of a vowel sequence—like the long vowels **ā**, **ē**, **ī**, **ō**, **ū**, or the sequences **ai**, **ei**, **oi**, **ui**—or when it occurs on a vowel followed by the syllabic nasal. This is because we tend to hear each of these double-syllables as just one syllable and we are used to hearing a fall of pitch WITHIN a syllable in English: *He saw Jóhn. Look at the bóy. Sáy. Hí! Mé. Nó. Yóu.* Listen to these examples:



[cue 01-28]

どういたしまして。

Dō itashimashite. [dó-o-i-ta-shi-ma-sh-te]

Not at all.

日本にいます。

Nihon ni imasu. [ni-hó-n-ni-i-ma-s]

He's in Japan.

青い着物をきています。

Aoi kimono o kite imasu. [a-ó-i-ki-mo-no-o-ki-te-i-ma-s]

She's wearing a blue kimono.

The range of pitch is somewhat wider in English than in Japanese. When we have a fall, it descends from higher to lower pitches than the corresponding Japanese fall. To our ears, the Japanese rises and falls in pitch are very light and often difficult to catch. They are nonetheless an important part of Japanese speech. In Standard Japanese there is just one accent—one fall of pitch—within a phrase. But a given sentence may either be broken up into a number of small phrases or read all in one big phrase. It's possible to say the sentence meaning 'Not at all; you're welcome' slowly and deliberately as three phrases: **dō itashi mashite**. It is more usual to say it as just one phrase: **dōitashimashite**. When two or more smaller phrases are said together as a larger phrase, the accent of the first phrase stays, but the accent of the later phrases disappears. Instead of **shitsúrei itashimáshita** you will more often hear **shitsúrei itashimashita** 'excuse me,' instead of **arígatō gozaimásu** you will hear **arígatō gozaimasu** 'thank you.' Since the accent mark represents the last syllable before a FALL in pitch, it never occurs right before a pause. Before a pause, you cannot tell

whether a word has a final accent or no accent at all; when you add a particle (such as the topic particle **wa**) it immediately becomes clear:



[cue 01-29]

鼻。 **Hana**. Nose.

鼻は。 **Hana wa**... As for the nose...



花。 **Haná**. Flower.

花は。 **Haná wa**... As for the flower...



The term *final accent* refers not only to an accent on the very last syllable, but also often to one on the next-to-last syllable, provided the last syllable is the second of a vowel sequence—like **kinō** [ki-nó-o] ‘yesterday,’ **chihō** [chi-hó-o] ‘region,’ **senséi** [se-n-sé-i] or [se-n-sé-e] ‘teacher,’ **kudasái** [ku-da-sá-i] ‘please (give),’ or is the syllable nasal-like **Nihón** [ni-hó-n] ‘Japan,’ **hón** [ho-n] ‘book.’ In these cases, the intonation often extends over the last two syllables.

When a vowel becomes unvoiced or dropped (like **u** in **arimásu** ‘something exists,’ **désu** ‘something equals something,’ and **itashimásu** ‘I do’), the intonation usually covers the preceding syllable and the accent really disappears: **arimasu** [a-ri-ma-s]. The accent appears again, however, if the word is followed by another word as in **Arimásu ka** ‘Are there any?’ and

Arimásu ga... ‘There are, but....’ Here are some examples of the accent on various syllables. Listen for the pitch falls. Remember, the single phrases may be joined together into longer phrases and the later accents dropped.



[cue 01-30]

いいですか。

Íi desu ka.

Is it all right?

だめです。

Damé desu.

It's no good, it won't do.

結構です。

Kékkō desu.

No, thank you.

忘れました。

Wasuremáshita.

I've forgotten (it).

分れましたか。

Wakarimáshita ka.

Did you understand?

好きですか。嫌いですか。

Sukí desu ka. Kirai désu ka.

Do you like it or not?

ちょっと来てください。

Chóttō kíte kudasái. (Chóttō kite kudasai.)

Please come here a minute.

いくらですか。

Íkura desu ka.

How much is it?

窓を開けてください。

Mádo o akete kudasái.

Please open the window.

戸を閉めてください。

To o shímete kudasái.

Please close the door.

戸を開けてください。

To o akete kudasái.

Please open the door.



[cue 01-31]

Conversation

Annie (A) is talking with Professor Tanaka (T) on campus. She sees Makoto (M), whom she hasn't seen for six months.



A. まことさん！

Makoto-san!

Makoto!

M. ああ、アニーさん。お元気ですか。

Ā, Anī-san. Ogenki desu ka.

Oh, Annie! How are you?

A. 元気です。まことさんは？

Genki desu. Makoto-san wa?

Yes, I'm fine. How about you, Makoto?

M. おかげさまで。元気です。

Okage-sama de. Genki desu.

I'm fine, too.

A. 田中先生, こちらはまことさんです。

Tanaka-sensei, kochira wa Makoto-san desu.

Profesor Tanaka, this is Makoto.

M. はじめまして。伊藤まことです。よろしくお願ひします。

Hajimemashite. Itō Makoto desu. Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.

Hello! I'm Makoto Ito. Very pleased to meet you.

T. 田中です。こちらこそよろしく。

Tanaka desu. Kochira koso yoroshiku.

I am (Ms.) Tanaka. Nice to meet you, too.

はじめまして **Hajimemashite**

Many of you might have wondered why the Japanese say **hajimemashite** when they see someone for the first time. **Hajimemashite** sounds like the **hajime** that is used at a karate dojo, doesn't it? **Hajimemashite** is a derived form of the verb **hajimeru**, which means 'begins.' It is the first phrase when you "begin" conversation with someone new. It is difficult to translate into English, but its function is to clarify that this is the first time for one to

talk to the person and also to convey one's willingness to get to know the person. Don't try to translate this phrase to English, but remember when to use it.

Exercises

I. For each of the following situations, pick the Japanese sentence which best fits.

1. You accidentally step on someone's foot getting to your seat in a movie theater.

- (a) すみません。 **Sumimasen.**
- (b) おはよう。 **Ohayō.**
- (c) じゃ、失礼いたします。 **Ja, shitsurei itashimasu.**
- (d) お願いします。 **Onegai shimasu.**

2. You don't quite understand what someone has just said.

- (a) 失礼します。 **Shitsureishimasu.**
- (b) もう一度。 **Mō ichido.**
- (c) ありがとうございます。 **Arigatō gozaimasu.**
- (d) いいえ。 **Īe.**

3. The person is talking too fast.

- (a) はい。 **Hai.**
- (b) すみません。 **Sumimasen.**
- (c) ゆっくり話してください。 **Yukkuri hanashite kudasai.**
- (d) じゃ、また。 **Ja, mata.**

4. You are about to go to bed.

- (a) ありがとう。 **Arigatō.**
- (b) じゃ、また。 **Ja, mata.**
- (c) おやすみなさい。 **Oyasumi nasai.**
- (d) すみません。 **Sumimasen.**

5. The teacher gave you a dictionary. You say:

(a) どうもありがとうございます。 **Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.**

(b) こんにちは。 **Kon'nichi wa.**

(c) おかげさまで。 **Okagesama de.**

(d) 失礼します。 **Shitsurei shimasu.**

II. Choose the correct item.

1. dog

a. 兎 **usagi**

b. 猿 **saru**

c. 犬 **inu**

d. 猫 **neko**

2. mountain

a. 湖 **mizuumi**

b. 山 **yama**

c. 馬 **uma**

d. 池 **ike**

3. ocean

a. 空手 **karate**

b. 海 **umi**

c. 馬 **uma**

d. すき焼き **sukiyaki**

4. older brother

a. お母さん **okāsan**

c. お兄さん **onīsan**

b. お父さん **otōsan**

d. お姉さん **onēsan**

III. Circle the one you hear.



[cue 01-32]

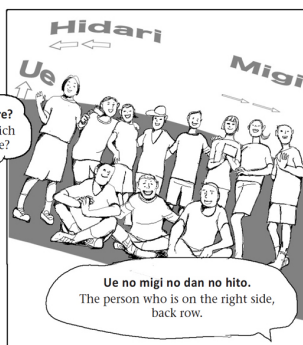
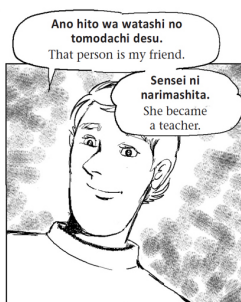
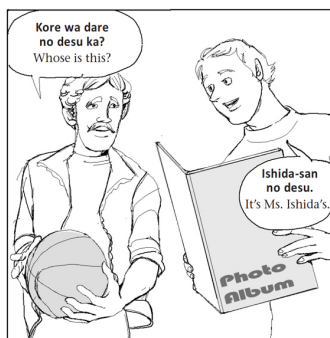
Kōkō high school
toritoridō bird
ōtonaraband sound band
Kirin'en commemoration
kakū hair
ginkin gold

Answers:

I 1. a 2. b 3. c 4. c 5. a

II 1. c 2. b 3. b 4. c

III 1. high school 2. bird 3. sound 4. commemoration 5. hair 6. gold

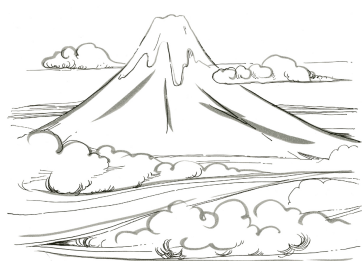


LESSON 2

What? Where? Who?

何？どこ？だれ？ **Nani? Doko? Dare?**

In this lesson you will learn how to identify people and things around you. You will learn many ways to refer to items, using the Japanese equivalent of the copular verb 'to be.'





[cue 02-1]

Basic Sentences

あれは富士山です。

Are wa Fujisan desu.

That one over there is Mt. Fuji.

2「それは何ですか。」

“Sore wa nani desu ka.”

“What is that (the thing you are holding)?”

3「あの人は何者ですか。イクさんは学生です。」

“Mata hita wa dore desu ka. Iku-san wa gakusei desu.”

“Who is that person? A student.”

4「それは何ですか。」

“Sore wa nani desu ka.”

“What is that umbrella?”

5「それは何者ですか。」

“Mata hita wa dore desu ka.”

“Which is that person’s umbrella?”

6「銀行はどこですか。」

“Ginkō wa doko desu ka.”

“Where is the bank?”

7「机の上には何がありますか。」

“Pooku no ue ni nani ari masu ka.”

“What is on the desk?”

8「銀行にはどこにいますか。」

“Ginkō ni doko ni imasu ka.”

“Where is the bank?”

9「ええ、大好きです。さんは日本の食べ物が好きですか。」

“Ee, daisuki desu. An-san wa Nihon no tabemono ga suki desu ka.”

“Yes, I love it. Do you like Japanese food?”

10「それは何ですか。」

“Sore wa nani desu ka.”

“What is so wonderful of Japanese anime?”



[cue 02-2]

Basic Vocabulary

IN MY ROOM

部屋 **heya**

table **ブル** **tēburu**

sofa **アー** **sofā**

bed **ド** **beddo**

chair **risu**

desk **sukue**

computer **hisokun** (personal computer)

TV **レビ** **terebi**

remote **omrokon**

floor/table/desk **datan** **doraito**

battery **juchanji**, charger

pencil **enpitsu**

pen **pen**

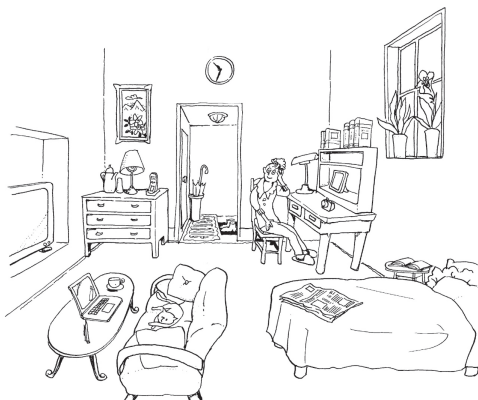
clock **tokai** **ch**

camera **カメラ** **kamera**

book **hon**

news **shinbun**

magazine **zasshi**



PLACES

駅 **eki** station

郵便局 **yūbinkyoku**

銀行 **ginkō**

病院 **byōin**

映画館 **eiōkan**

レストラン **resutoran**

咖啡店 **kōshiten**

cyber-café **netto kafe**

ATM **ei ti emu**

supermarket **sūpā**

PEOPLE

person, people **hito**

友達 **tomodachi**

student **gakusei**

teacher **sensei**

SCHOOLS

学校 **gakkō**

Netto Kafe

Internet cafés in Japan are called **netto kafe** or **nekafe**, and are found in most major cities. They are actually very complex. In addition to desktop computers, Internet access, and drinks, they offer tons of comic books, magazines, and DVDs for the customers to read and watch as much as they want during their stay. They are usually open 24/7, and the customers are charged by time. They offer some private rooms in different sizes so the customers can read or watch undisturbed by others. Some **netto kafe**s have comfortable reclining chairs, massage chairs, and shower rooms as well as billiards, karaoke, and darts. It is possible for homeless people to live in **netto kafe**s in Japan, because a one-night stay could cost as little as ten dollars, and such people are called **netto nanmin** ‘net refugees.’



COUNTRIES

England 英 Igrisu
中国 中 Chūgoku
韓国 韓 Kankoku
Australia ラリア Ōsutoraria
France ス Furansu
Germany ドイツ Doitsu
Spain イン Supein
India ド Indo
The Philippines フィリピン Filipin
Russia ロシア Roshia

PEOPLE

Japanese ニホン-jin
American 人 Amerika-jin
Chinese Chūgoku-jin
Korean Kankoku-jin
French ス人 Furansu-jin

LANGUAGES

Japanese Nihongo
英語 Eigo
中国語 Chūgokugo
韓国語 Kankokugo
French ス語 Furansugo



2.1. Nouns and pronouns

Nouns are words that name people, places, things, and concepts such as **hito** ‘person,’ **Yamada** ‘(Ms.) Yamada,’ **zasshi** ‘magazine,’ and **uchi** ‘house.’ Nouns often precede a particle like **wa**, **ga**, **no**, and **ni**, or occur before the word **desu** ‘is (equals).’

Pronouns refer to people and things. Personal pronouns refer to people. **Watashi** means ‘I’ or ‘me.’ In a formal situation **watakushi** is used instead of **watashi**. Women also say **atashi** in an informal situation. Men often say **boku** for ‘I, me’; a rougher term is **ore**. The pronoun ‘you’ in Japanese is **anata**, and a rougher term is **anta**. **Kimi** is a slightly intimate term for ‘you’; a condescending form is **omae** (sometimes used to small children). However, you should remember to avoid using these second-person pronouns (you) as much as possible: you can drop the pronoun or use the name or the title of the person. **Kare** means ‘he’ or ‘him’ and **kanojo** means ‘she’ or ‘her,’ but again, you can use the name or the title of the person as much as possible.

Demonstrative pronouns can be conveniently used for referring to items that both the speaker and the listener can see. For referring to things, use **kore**, **sore**, or **are**. For referring to locations use **koko**, **soko**, or **asoko**. (See 2.15. for related words.)

~~this~~ **kore**
~~that~~ **sore** near you
~~that~~ **are** over there
~~which~~ **dore**
~~this~~ **koko**, here
~~that~~ **soko** (near you), there
~~over there~~ **asoko**
~~where~~ **doko**

「先生、これは先生の傘ですか。」

“Sensei, kore wa sensei no kasa desu ka.”

“Professor, is this your umbrella?”

「いいえ、それはマイクさんの傘です。」

“Ie, sore wa Maiku-san no kasa desu.”

“No, it’s Mike’s.”

2.2. Prenouns

The words **kono**, **sono**, and **ano** are pre-nouns, or more commonly called demonstrative adjectives. These words precede a noun and modify its meaning, much as a noun is modified by a phrase consisting of a noun followed by the particle **no**: **kono gakkō** ‘this school,’ **watashi no gakkō** ‘my school.’

~~this~~ **kono**

~~that~~ **sono**

~~that~~ ~~over~~ **ano** there

~~which~~ **kono**

2.3. Place words (relative location)

Words such as **ue** ‘topside’ and **naka** ‘inside’ are used along with reference nouns as in **tēburu no ue** ‘on the top of the table.’ They are often used for situations we would express in English with prepositions like *in*, *on*, *under*, *behind*, *above*, and *between*.

~~前~~ **mae**

~~後~~ **ushi**ro

~~右~~ **higi**

~~左~~ **hidari**

~~上~~ **ue**

~~下~~ **shita**

~~そば~~ **soba**

~~近く~~ **(chi)kaku**

~~中~~ **naka**

~~外~~ **side**

~~隣~~ **tonari**, next position

~~間~~ **aida** (two places)

Here are some example sentences.

駅は銀行の後ろです。

Eki wa ginkō no ushiro desu.

The train station is behind the bank.

充電器はテーブルの下にあります。

Jūdenki wa tēburu no shita ni arimasu.

The charger is under the table.

2.4. Adjectival nouns

The word **suki** ‘likable’ is a special kind of noun called an adjectival noun (or copular noun, nominal adjective). It acts as an adjective describing a noun, but it patterns like a noun, being placed before some form of the copula **da/desu** ‘is (equals).’ Here are a few examples:

(好き) **likeable (da)**

(嫌い) **dislikeable (da)** liked

(好き) **meat, porky (da)** an

(好き) **chic, stylish (da)**

(静) **quiet (da)**

(静) **quiet (da)**

(重) **serious (da)**

(簡単) **easy (da)**

(駄目) **not good (da)**

Notice that the literal translation of **suki desu** and **kirai desu** is ‘(something) is liked’ and ‘(something) is disliked,’ but we freely translate them ‘(somebody) likes (something)’ and ‘(somebody) dislikes (something).’

2.5. Untranslated English words

In English we seldom say just ‘book.’ We say ‘a book,’ ‘the book,’ ‘some books,’ or ‘the books.’ In Japanese, the situation is just the other way around. Since the Japanese have another way of implying that they’ve been talking about the noun, by making it the topic with the particle **wa**, as in **hon wa** ‘the book,

the books,’ they don’t need a word to translate ‘the.’ And they usually leave it up to the situation to make it clear whether there are several things in question or just one, unless they want to focus your attention on the number itself, in which case the number word indicates just how many you are talking about. The Japanese, like everyone else, do not always bother to express things they think you already know. This doesn’t mean they lack ways to say things we do; it just means they leave implied some of the things we are used to saying explicitly. Americans tend to use **watashi** and **anata** too much. Remember to omit pronouns when the reference is clear.

2.6. Particles

In English, we usually show the relations between words in the way we string them together. The sentences ‘Jon loves May’ and ‘May loves Jon’ both contain the same three words, but the order in which we put the words determines the meaning. In Japanese, relations between words are often shown by little words called particles. This lesson will introduce you to several of these particles: **wa**, **ga**, **ka**, **no**, and **ni**.

2.7. は **wa**

The particle **wa** sets off the TOPIC you are going to talk about. If you say **Watashi wa gakusei desu** ‘I am a student,’ the particle shows you are talking about **watashi** ‘I’—what you have to say about the topic then follows. A pidgin-English way of translating this particle **wa** is ‘as for’: **Shinbun wa koko ni arimasu** ‘As for the newspaper, it’s here.’ But it is better not to look for a direct translation for some of these particles—remember they just indicate the relationship between the preceding words and those that follow.

2.8. が **ga**

The particle **ga** shows the subject. In **Eiga ga suki desu** ‘I like

movies,’ the particle **ga** shows that **eiga** ‘movies’ is the subject of **suki desu** ‘are liked.’ The difference between the particles **wa** and **ga** is one of emphasis. In English we make a difference in emphasis by using a louder voice somewhere in the sentence. We say ‘I like MOVIES’ or ‘I LIKE movies,’ depending on which part of the sentence we want to bring out. In Japanese, the particle **ga** focuses our attention on the words preceding it, but the particle **wa** releases our attention to focus on some other part of the sentence. So, **eiga ga suki desu** means ‘I like MOVIES,’ but **eiga wa suki desu** means ‘I LIKE movies.’ When there is a question word in the sentence (like **dare** ‘who,’ **dore** ‘which one,’ **dono** ‘which,’ and **doko** ‘where’), the attention usually focuses on this part of the sentence, so the particle **wa** is not used: **Dono tatemono ga eki desu ka** ‘Which building is the train station?’ Since our attention is focused on ‘WHICH building,’ the answer is **Ano tatemono ga eki desu** ‘THAT building is the train station.’ If the question is **Ano tatemono wa nan desu ka** ‘What is that building?,’ our attention is released from **ano tatemono** ‘that building’ by the particle **wa** and concentrates on ‘WHAT,’ so the answer is **Ano tatemono wa eki desu** ‘That building is a TRAIN STATION,’ or just **Eki desu** ‘It’s a train station.’ Some sentences have both a topic—or several successive topics—and a subject:

あなたは日本のアニメが好きですか。

Anata wa Nihon no anime ga suki desu ka.

Do you like Japanese anime?

あなたは日本のアニメは好きですか。

Anata wa Nihon no anime wa suki desu ka.

Do you LIKE Japanese anime?

Because the difference in meaning between **wa** and **ga** is largely one of emphasis, you can often take a sentence and change the emphasis just by substituting **wa** for **ga**. The particle **wa** can be thought of as an “attention-shifter”: the words preceding it set the stage for the sentence, and serve as scenery and background for what we are going to say. This can lead to

ambiguity. The sentence **Tarō wa Hanako ga suki desu** (literally, ‘Taro as topic, Hanako as emphatic subject, someone is liked’) can mean either ‘Taro likes Hanako’ (It’s HANAKO that Taro likes’) or ‘Hanako likes Taro’ (It’s HANAKO that likes Taro). The situation usually makes it clear which meaning is called for. If you have both **wa** and **ga** in a sentence, the phrase with **wa** usually comes first: the stage is set before the comment is made.

Sometimes two topics are put in contrast with each other: **Kore wa eigakan desu ga, sore wa ginkō desu** ‘This is a movie-theater, but that is a bank.’ (The particle **ga** meaning ‘but’ is not the same particle as the one indicating the subject.) In this case, the emphasis is on the way in which the two topics contrast—in being a theater on the one hand, and a bank on the other.

2.9. か ka

The particle **ka** is placed at the end of a sentence to show that it is a question. It is as if we were pronouncing the question mark:

あの家です。

Ano ie desu.

It’s that house.

あの家ですか。

Ano ie desu ka.

Is it that house?

A common way of asking a question in Japanese is to give two or more alternatives, one of which the answerer selects.

あの人は日本人ですか。中国人ですか。

Ano hito wa Nihon-jin desu ka. Chūgoku-jin desu ka.

Is he Japanese or Chinese? (Literally, ‘Is he Japanese. Is he Chinese?’)

Alternative questions are further discussed in Note 7.8.



2.10. の no

The particle **no** shows that the preceding noun “modifies” or “limits” the noun following. The particle **no** is often equivalent to the English translation *of*, but sometimes it is equivalent to *in* or other words.

my book **watashi no hon**

Japanese **Nihongo no hon**

my friend **watashi no tomodachi**

department **chōmei no oaka**

the place **outside** the house

the schools **kōkō no gakkō** the schools here

bank **Tōkyō no ginkō**

American **Amerika no shinbun**

company **Nihon no kaisha**

The expression NOUN + **no** is sometimes followed directly by the copula **desu** ‘is (equals),’ as in:

「石皿はだれのですか。」
“Ishidawadane no desu ka.”
“Who is the dish?”

2.11. に ni

The particle **ni** indicates a “general sort of location” in space or time, which can be made more specific by putting a place or time word in front of it. The phrase **heya ni** means ‘at the room, in the room.’ To say explicitly ‘in(side) the room,’ you insert the specific place word **naka** ‘inside’: **heya no naka ni**. Notice the difference between **gakkō ni imasu** ‘he’s at school, he’s in school’ and **gakkō no naka ni imasu** ‘he’s in(side) the school (building).’

A NOUN PHRASE + **ni** is not used to modify another noun, and it does not occur before **desu** ‘is (equals)’; it is usually followed by **arimasu** ‘(a thing) is (exists)’ or **imasu** ‘(a person) is (exists in a place).’ To say ‘the people in the room,’ you connect **heya no naka** ‘the inside of the room’ with **hito** ‘the people’ by means of the particle **no**: **heya no naka no hito**.

The particle **ni** is also used figuratively:

友達に言いました。
Tomodachi ni iimashita.
He said TO his friend.

It sometimes shows “purpose”:

散歩に行きました。
Sanpo ni ikimashita.
He went FOR a walk.

It is also used to indicate a “change of state” and after an adjectival noun, to show “manner”:

先生になりました。
Sensei ni narimashita.

He became a teacher, he turned into a teacher.

ネットカフェにしました。

Netto kafe ni shimashita.

They made it into an Internet café.

きれいに書きました。

Kirei ni kakimashita.

He wrote neatly.

Occasionally, a particle like **ni** will be used in an expression that calls for an unexpected equivalent in the English translation:

だれに日本語を習いましたか。

Dare ni Nihongo o naraimashita ka.

Who did you learn Japanese FROM?

2.12. Words meaning 'is'

In this lesson we find three different Japanese words translated as 'is' in English: **desu**, **arimasu**, and **imasu**. The word **desu** is the COPULA and it means 'equals.' Whenever an English sentence containing the word *is* makes sense if you substitute *equals* for *is*, the Japanese equivalent is **desu**.

あれは富士山です。

Are wa Fujisan desu.

That is Mt. Fuji. (That one = Mt. Fuji)

あの人は私の友達です。

Ano hito wa watashi no tomodachi desu.

That person is my friend. (That person = my friend)

それは私のです。

Sore wa watashi no desu.

That's mine. (That = mine)

Preceding the word **desu**, there is always a noun or a phrase

consisting of NOUN + **no** or some other particle, but never **wa**, **ga**, **o** (discussed in 3.6.), **de** (discussed in 3.5), or **ni**.

When an English sentence containing the word *is* makes sense if you reword it as '(something) exists,' the Japanese equivalent is **arimasu**:

ATMがあります。

ATM ga arimasu.

There is an ATM.

When the English sentence can be reworded '(something) exists in a place' or '(something) is located,' the usual Japanese equivalent is also **arimasu**:

リモコンはそこにあります。

Rimokon wa soko ni arimasu.

The remote control is there.

But often, especially if the topic is itself a place, for example, a city, a building, a street, a location, either **desu** or **(ni) arimasu** may be used:

映画館はあそこです。/映画館はあそこにあります。

Eigakan wa asoko desu./Eigakan wa asoko ni arimasu.

The movie theater is over there.

お台場はどこですか。/お台場はどこにありますか。

Odaiba wa doko desu ka./Odaiba wa doko ni arimasu ka.

Where is Odaiba?

When an English sentence containing the word *is* makes sense reworded as '(somebody) exists (in a place)' or '(somebody) stays (in a place)' or '(somebody) is located,' the Japanese equivalent is **imasu** 'stays':

「~~外~~の人はずこにいますか。」

~~“Soto ni imasu ka.”~~
“~~Where is it?~~”

~~“Where is it?”~~

There are other uses of these two verbs, **arimasu** and **imasu**, which we will examine later. It may help to think of tag meanings for these words as follows: **desu** ‘equals,’ **arimasu** ‘exists,’ **imasu** ‘stays.’ Note that ‘exists’ is the usual way of saying ‘(somebody) has (something)’:

プリンターはありますか。

Purintā wa arimasu ka.

Do you have a printer? (Does a printer exist?)

2.13. Inflected words

Words like **desu**, **arimasu**, and **imasu** are called inflected words, because their shapes can be changed (inflected) to make other words of similar but slightly different meaning. In English, we change the shapes of inflected words to show a difference of subject—‘I am, you are, he is; I exist, he exists,’ as well as a difference of time—‘I am, I was; you are, you were.’ In Japanese, the shape of an inflected word stays the same regardless of the subject: **Gakusei desu** can mean ‘I am a student, you are a student, he is a student, we are students, you are students, they are students’ depending on the situation. If you want to make it perfectly clear, you can put in a topic: **Watashi wa gakusei desu, anata wa gakusei desu, ano hito wa gakusei desu.**

2.14. Dropping subject nouns

In English, every normal sentence has a subject and a predicate. If there is no logical subject, we stick one in anyway: ‘IT rains’ (what rains?), ‘IT is John’ (what is John—it?). Sentences that do not contain a subject are limited to commands—‘Keep off the grass!’—in which a sort of ‘you’ is understood, or to a special style reserved for postcards and telegrams, for example, ‘Arrived safely. Wish you were here.’ In Japanese, the normal sentence

type contains a predicate, **Arimasu** ‘There is (some),’ **Kamera desu** ‘(It) is a camera’—and to this we may add a subject or a topic, but it isn’t necessary unless we wish to be explicit. Since the topic of a sentence is usually obvious in real conversation, the Japanese often doesn’t mention it at all, or occasionally throws it in as an afterthought.

A predicate may consist of a simple verb, **arimasu**, **imasu**, or of a noun plus the copula, **Kyōshi desu** ‘It’s (I’m) a teacher,’ but it cannot consist of the copula alone. The Japanese can talk about the equation $A = B$, that is **A wa B desu** as in **Kore wa kamera desu** ‘This is a camera,’ by dropping the topic (A) and just saying $= B$, that is **B desu** as in **Kamera desu** ‘(It) is a camera.’ But they never say just $=$ (**desu**) or give a one-sided equation like $A = (B)$. Something has to fill the blank before the word **desu**, in all cases.

2.15. Words of relative reference and question words

Notice the related shapes and meaning of the following classes of words:

あなた

anata

you

あれ

are

that one near you

あの

ano

(of) that there

あんな

onna

like that one near you

あそこ

oko

there

ああ

kō

in that way, there

The words in the column with **watashi** are used to refer to something near the speaker. The words in the column with **anata** refer to something near the person you are talking with, or to something you have just mentioned. The words in the column with **ano hito** refer to something at a distance from both you and the person you are talking with. For some situations, either those in the column with **anata** or those in the column with **ano hito** may be heard, since the reference is a relative matter. Be sure to keep **dare** ‘who’ and **dore** ‘which’ distinct. Instead of **konna**, **sonna**, **anna**, and **donna**, we often hear the more colloquial **kō iu**, **sō iu**, **ā iu**, and **dō iu**. (Note that **iu** ‘says’ is often pronounced as if spelled **yū** or ‘you.’)

その中にカメラがあります。

Sono naka ni kamera ga arimasu.

Inside it, there is a camera.

どんな本ですか。

Donna hon desu ka.

What sort of book is it?

どうですか。

Dō desu ka.

How is it?

あの人はだれですか。

Ano hito wa dare desu ka.

Who is that person?

2.16. Words for ‘restaurant’

There are a number of different words for various types of restaurant in Japan. You will often hear the word **resutoran**, from the English word of French origin. Other words include old-fashioned **shokudō** ‘dining room/hall,’ **kissa** or **kissaten** ‘a

kind of French-type café,’ and specialized restaurants or shops that end in **ya** ‘store,’ as in **sushiya** ‘a sushi restaurant,’ **sobaya** ‘a noodle restaurant,’ **yakinikuya** ‘a table-top BBQ restaurant,’ **yakitoriya** ‘a grilled chicken restaurant,’ and **izakaya**, a friendly bar that serves home-style dishes and alcoholic beverages.

はんぱい!!



Ryōtei is a rather high-class traditional Japanese restaurant. In addition, there are many American-style fast-food restaurants that serve hamburgers, donuts, and fried chicken.



2.17. Words for ‘toilet’

As in English, there are various oblique ways of talking about toilets in Japanese. Probably the most current polite terms are **otearai** ‘lavatory’ and **(o)toire** ‘toilet,’ but women may say **keshōshitsu** ‘powder room.’ So when asking where it is, you

may say **O-tearai wa doko ni arimasu ka.**



2.18. 何 nani/nan ‘what’

The word meaning ‘what’ is usually expressed by **nan** before a word beginning with **t**, **d**, or **n**, and **nani** before other words. However, **nan-** ‘how many’ never has the shape **nani-**.

何ですか。

Nan desu ka.

What is it?

何と言いましたか。

Nan to iimashita ka.

What did (he) say?

何の本ですか。

Nan no hon desu ka.

What book is it?

何がありますか。

Nani ga arimasu ka.

What is there? What do you have?

何をしていますか。

Nani o shite imasu ka.

What are you doing?

CDが何枚ありますか。

Shi dī ga nan-mai arimasu ka.

How many CDs do you have?

本が何冊ありますか。

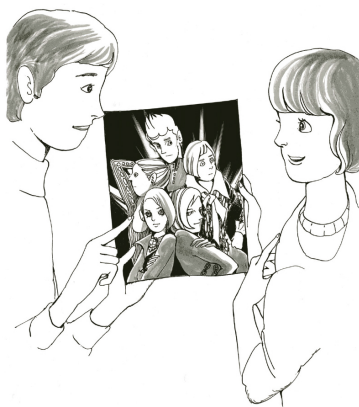
Hon ga nan-satsu arimasu ka.
How many books are there?



[cue 02-3]

Conversation

Emi (E) is a member of a rock band formed in her college. She shows a photo of the members to Masahiro (M).



M: これは恵美さんですか。

Kore wa Emi-san desu ka.

Is this you, Emi?

E: ええ。

Ē.

Yes.

M: ぜんぜん違いますね。

Zenzen chigaimasu ne.

Look so different.

E: そうですか。

Sō desu ka.

Really?

M: この人はだれですか。

Kono hito wa dare desu ka.

Who is this person?

E: 洋介です。ギタリストです。

Yōsuke desu. Gitarisuto desu.

Yosuke. He is a guitarist.

M: カッコいいですね。同じ大学の学生ですか。

Kakko ii desu ne. Onaji daigaku no gakusei desu ka.

He is cool, isn't he? Is he a student in the same college?

E: ええ。

Ē.

Yes.

M: じゃあ、この人は？

Jā, kono hito wa?

Okay, then. Who is this person?

E: ベーシストの拓也です。

Bēshisuto no Takuya desu.

He is Takuya, the bassist.

M: ドラマーはだれ？

Doramā wa dare?

Who is the drummer?

E: 私。

Watashi.

Me.

Exercises

* Do it aloud; don't write the answers down.

I. For each situation illustrated below, choose which word the speaker would use, *kore*, *sore*, *are*, or *dore*.



1



2



3



4

II. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate particles.

1. あの建物——何ですか。 **Ano tatemono** —— **nan desu ka.**
What is that building?

2. 私——学生です。 **Watashi** —— **gakusei desu.** I'm a student.

3. 私——本です。 **Watashi** —— **hon desu.** It's my book.

4. 新聞はテーブル——下にあります。 **Shinbun wa tēburu** —— **shita ni arimasu.** The newspaper is under the table.

5. どれ——あなたのですか。 **Dore** —— **anata no desu ka.**
Which one is yours?

III. Choose the appropriate item in the parentheses.

1. (あれ・あの) は富士山です。 **(Are, ano) wa Fujisan desu.**
That's Mt. Fuji.

2. (これ・この) カメラはだれのですか。 **(Kore, kono) kamera wa dare no desu ka.** Whose camera is this?

3. 「それは何ですか。」 「(それ・これ) はカメラです。」 **“Sore wa nan desu ka.” “(Sore, kore) wa kamera desu.”** “What is that?” “It's a camera.”

4. 郵便局は(あれ・あそこ)にあります。 **Yūbinkyoku wa (are, asoko) ni arimasu.** The post office is over there.

5. 銀行は(あれ・あの)です。 **Ginkō wa (are, ano) desu.**
The bank is that one over there.

IV. Fill in the blanks with one of the words です desu, あります arimasu, or います imasu.

1. あなたは学生——か。 **Anata wa gakusei —— ka.** Are you a student?

2. 銀行はどこ——か。 **Ginkō wa doko —— ka.** Where is the bank?

3. ホテルはどこに——か。 **Hoteru wa doko ni —— ka.**
Where is the hotel?

4. 犬はどこに——か。 **Inu wa doko ni —— ka.** Where is the dog?

5. 机の下には雑誌が——。 **Tsukue no shita ni wa zasshi ga ——.** There is a magazine under the desk.

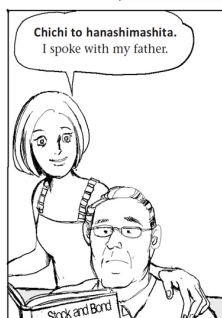
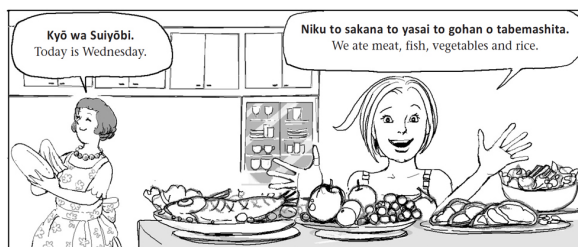
Answers:

I 1. あれ are 2. それ sore 3. これ kore 4. どれ dore

II 1. は wa 2. は wa 3. の no 4. の no 5. が ga

III 1. あれ are 2. この kono 3. これ kore 4. あそこ asoko 5. あれ are

IV 1. です desu 2. です desu 3. あります arimasu 4. います imasu
5. あります arimasu



LESSON 3

Actions! Actions! Actions!

これして！それして！あれやって！ **Kore Shite! Sore Shite! Are Yatte!**

In this lesson you will learn how to express your daily activities. It introduces basic forms of verbs as well as particles that are needed to complete the meaning of the verb.





[cue 03-1]

Basic Sentences

昨日大阪から友達が来ました。

Kinō Ōsaka kara tomodachi ga kimashita.

My friend came from Osaka yesterday.

土曜日に友達とビデオゲームをしました。

Doyōbi ni tomodachi to bideo gēmu o shimashita.

I played a video game with my friend on Saturday.

今メールを書いています。

Ima mēru o kaite imasu.

I'm writing an email now.

あしたは家族でレストランに行きます。

Ashita wa kazoku de resutoran ni ikimasu.

We will go to a restaurant as a family.

月曜日から金曜日まで働きます。

Getsuyōbi kara Kinyōbi made hatarakimasu.

I work from Monday to Friday.

うちからオフィスまで歩きます。

Uchi kara ofisu made arukimasu.

I walk from home to my office.

公園に行きます。公園で歩きます。

Kōen ni ikimasu. Kōen de arukimasu.

I go to the park. I walk in the park.

いっしょに日本語を勉強しましょう。

Issho ni Nihongo o benkyō shimashō.

Let's study Japanese together.

ボストンに住んでいます。ボストンで働いています。

Bosuton ni sunde imasu. Bosuton de hataraitte imasu.

I live in Boston. I work in Boston.

週末は掃除をして、洗濯をして、散歩をします。

Shūmatsu wa sōji o shite, sentaku o shite, sanpo o shimasu.

On weekends I do cleaning, laundry, and take a walk.

先週は仕事をしませんでした。

Senshū wa shigoto o shimasen deshita.

I did not work last week.

朝ごはんを食べてから新聞を読みます。

Asa go-han o tabete kara shinbun o yomimasu.

I eat breakfast and then read the newspaper.

駅には歩いて行きます。スーパーには自転車で行きます。

Eki ni wa aruite ikimasu. Sūpā ni wa jitensha de ikimasu.

I walk to the train station. I ride a bike to the supermarket.

高校で教師をしています。

Kōkō de kyōshi o shite imasu.

I teach at a high school.

日本の高校はアメリカの高校と違うでしょう。

Nihon no kōkō wa Amerika no kōkō to chigau deshō.

Japanese high schools are different from American high schools.



[cue 03-2]

Basic Vocabulary

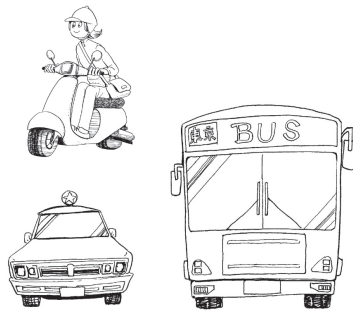
TRAVELING

飛行機 **teikō**

空港 **kūkō**

駅 **eki** station

通勤 **kōban**



TRANSPORTATION

車 **car** **kuruma**

タクシー **taxi** シー **takushī**

バス **basu**

地下鉄 **subway** **chikatetsu**

電車 **densha**

自転車 **bicycle** **jitensha**

オートバイ **motorcycle** **ōtobai**

スクーター **scooter** ター **sukūtā**

飛行機 **airplane** **hikōki**

交番 **Kōban**

A **kōban** is a neighborhood police station, usually found in a small building or in a portion of a large building, where a small contingent of police officers take turns responding to emergencies, giving directions to passersby, and patrolling the neighborhood by bicycle. In large cities, you find **kōban** every few blocks or so. The existence of **kōban** has greatly contributed to public safety in Japan.

ACTIONS

goes・行きます **iku/ikimasu**
 returns 帰ります **kaeru/kaerimasu**
 comes 来ます **kuru/kimasu**
 walks 歩きます **aruku/arukimasu**
 gets on 乗ります **noru/norimasu**
 gets off.. 降ります **oriru/orimasu**
 eats・食べます **taberu/tabemasu**
 watches 見ます **miru/mimasu**
 reads・読みます **yomu/yomimasu**
 writes 書きます **kaku/kakimasu**
 works 働きます **hataraku/hatarakimasu**
 works, gets on 勤めます **tsutomeru/tsutomemasu**
 does/します **suru/shimasu**

FUN ACTIVITIES

cosplay コスプレ **kosupure**
 video game ムビデオ ゲーム **bideo gēmu**
 computer game コンピュータ ゲーム **konpyūtā gēmu**
 bowling ボウリング **bōringu**
 billiards ビリヤード (or 玉突き) **biriyādo (or tamatsuki)**
 darts ダーツ **dātsu**
 karaoke カラオケ **karaoke**

DAYS OF THE WEEK

Monday Getsuyōbi
 Tuesday Kayōbi
 Wednesday Shuyōbi
 Thursday Mokuyōbi
 Friday Kinyōbi
 Saturday Doyōbi
 Sunday Nichiyōbi

SPOUSES

おれ's ~~kawa~~ wife
妻 ~~tsu~~man wife
おれ's ~~one~~ ~~kusa~~ wife
おれ's ~~shu~~ ~~ji~~ husband
おれ's ~~one~~ ~~go~~ ~~shu~~ ~~ji~~ husband

WORK

仕事 **shigoto**
会社 **kaisha**
教師 **kyōshi** (in form, cf. 先生 **sensei**)
医者 **isha**

Structure Notes

3.1. Time words (relative time expressions)

In the preceding lesson we found that place words like **ue** ‘topside’ and **naka** ‘inside’ are a kind of noun in Japanese. Time words are a similar sort of noun. Such words are **kyō** ‘today,’ **kyonen** ‘last year,’ and **mainichi** ‘every day.’ The general question word used to ask the time is **itsu** ‘when.’ Here are some time words you will find useful:

毎日/明日
hyōmichi **asū**
today/day
毎週
maishū
every week
毎月
maigetsu
every month
毎年
maishuhi/mainen

~~his~~ year

毎学期

~~his~~gakki

~~his~~ year ~~his~~ ni ~~his~~ term

Here are some example sentences with relative time expressions:

いつ大阪に行きますか。

Itsu Ōsaka ni ikimasu ka.

When are you going to Osaka?

来年行きます。

Rainen ikimasu.

I'll go there next year.

私は昨日ステーキを食べました。

Watashi wa kinō sutēki o tabemashita.

I ate steak yesterday.

3.2. Nouns with and without particles

Most nouns usually occur followed by a particle of some sort or by the copula—**kono hon wa...**, **go-han o...**, **byōki desu**. Some nouns occur either with or without a particle, with only a slight difference in meaning. The time words listed in note 3.1 can be followed by the particle **wa** or used alone without the particle:

毎日仕事をしません。

Mainichi wa shigoto o shimasen.

I don't work EVERY day.

毎日仕事をします。

Mainichi shigoto o shimasu.

Every day I work.

When you use the particle **wa**, you are making the time word the topic of your sentence. Often you are CONTRASTING what happens at THAT time (... **wa**) with what happens at other

times. When a noun is used without a particle, it usually modifies either the whole sentence or the verb phrase at the end; this we can call the ADVERBIAL USE of a noun.

3.3. Particles から *kara*, まで *made*, and へ *e*

After place words, the particle **kara** means ‘from,’ the particle **e** means ‘to,’ and the particle **made** means ‘to, as far as, up to.’ If you want to say ‘from Kobe to Osaka’ you can say either **Kōbe kara Ōsaka made** or **Kōbe kara Ōsaka e**, but there is a slight difference of meaning. When you use the particle **e**, you are primarily interested in the two endpoints; when you use **made**, you are also interested in the space, time, or means of travel between the two points. This difference of meaning is so subtle, however, that you can just remember that either **made** or **e** means ‘to’ when reference is to a place.

Many speakers in Eastern Japan often replace the particle **e** with the particle **ni**. So you will also hear **Kōbe kara Ōsaka ni ikimashita** ‘I went from Kobe to Osaka.’ You can say either **Uchi e kaette benkyō shimashita** or **Uchi ni kaette benkyō shimashita** ‘I went (back) home and studied.’

After **kore** ‘this,’ **sore** ‘that,’ or a time word, the particle **kara** has the meaning ‘after, since,’ for example, **sore kara** ‘after that’ and **kore kara** ‘after this, from now on.’ Compare them with **koko kara** ‘from here.’ In a similar way, the particle **made** means ‘until’: **sore made** ‘until that (happens)’ and **kore made** ‘until now (this).’ Compare them with **koko made** ‘up to here, as far as this place.’

(**Kara** with verbal expressions is discussed in notes 3.10 and 4.12. **Made** with verbal expressions is discussed in note 5.18.)

ご飯を食べて、それから映画を見ました。

Go-han o tabete, sore kara eiga o mimashita.

I had dinner and after that watched a movie.

これから毎日勉強します。

Kore kara mainichi benkyō shimasu.

From now on I'm going to study every day.

これまでマンガを読みませんでした。

Kore made manga o yomimasen deshita.

Until now I haven't been reading comic books.

昨日から病気なんです。でも、あしたからまた働きます。

Kinō kara byōki na n desu. Demo, ashita kara mata hatarakimasu.

He's been sick since yesterday. But he'll work from tomorrow (on) again.

明日の晩までその仕事をしています。

Asu no ban made sono shigoto o shite imasu.

We'll be doing that job until tomorrow night.

3.4. Particle **ね** *ne*

The particle **ne** is frequently tacked on at the end of a sentence to soften its tone. It implies that the speaker wants the hearer to agree with him, or that he wants what he is saying to agree with what the hearer might think. It is often translated by a rhetorical question (one to which an answer really isn't expected) such as '...isn't it,' '...doesn't he,' '... wasn't it,' or by something like '... you know,' '... you see.'

「~~中村~~さんは銀行員ですね。」

"Nakamura desu wa ginkōin desu ne."

~~"Mr. Nakamura is a bank clerk, isn't he?"~~

「また飛行機の新聞が~~あ~~りましたね。」

"Mata hōkōki no kōshi ga buchita aridashita ne."

~~"Your article yesterday's smashes page."~~

「あああどホテルを予約しておきますね。」

"Ā, dōteru o yoyaku shite okimasu ne."

~~"Okay, I'll reserve."~~

「まあ、でいいですね。」

"Mā, deisei desu ne."

“Yes, indeed pretty?”

「まあ遊園地に来てくつさいます。」

“Mainigato gozaitesudāsai ne.”

“Please have to visit us again, okay?”

「何が要りねすあよつと調べます。」

“Nādegaiinashukto”shirabemasu.”

“Well, I mean? I’ll check it out.”

「何かと心配してわかれなすか。」

“Baddeshinapakashitedesukanē.”

“What a what makes you a bit something.”

We all know people who can’t say three words without inserting something like ‘I mean,’ ‘you know,’ or ‘you see’: ‘Well, you see, it was Friday, you see, and, you know, that movie, you see, it was new, I mean, I hadn’t seen it, so....’ In a similar fashion, some Japanese overwork the particle **ne**, inserting it after every few words. This seems to be particularly true of the speech of women, as in **Kyō ne, sūpā ni ne, ittara ne, Yamada-san ga ne, Tanaka-san to hanashiteta no yo** ‘When I went to the supermarket today, (I saw) Ms. Yamada talking with Ms. Tanaka.’ For the foreign student, it is advisable to avoid using the particle except at the end of a sentence, as above.

3.5. Particle で **de**

The particle **de** has two quite different meanings. One is ‘by means of’:

車で来ましたか。

Kuruma de kimashita ka.

Did you come by car?

筆で名前を書きました。

Fude de namae o kakimashita.

I wrote my name with a brush.

Another meaning is ‘(an action happens) at (a place)’:

学校で勉強します。

Gakkō de benkyō shimasu.

I study at school.

You have already learned that the particle **ni** means ‘at’ in the sense of a location in space:

学校にいます。

Gakkō ni imasu.

I’m at school.

The difference in usage between **ni** and **de** depends on whether you use a verb that means something about existence—‘exists, lives, stays’—or something about activity—‘talks, works, studies, eats, sleeps.’ There are very few verbs of the inactive sort; you have had **imasu** ‘stays, (a person) exists (in a place),’ **arimasu** ‘exists,’ and **sunde imasu** ‘is living, residing.’ With other verbs you will usually hear **de** for ‘at,’ but occasionally a Japanese person will use **ni** if his attention is focused on the person’s existence rather than his action. In general, you will be doing best to remember that ‘at’ corresponds to **ni** with the verbs **imasu**, **arimasu**, and **sunde imasu** (also **tomarimasu** ‘stops or stays at’); with other verbs—alone or in a phrase with **imasu**, like **hataraitte imasu**—‘at’ corresponds to **de**.

「夏休みには何ごじまをかます。」

“Retsugasunde mite oashimasu ka.”

“What will you be doing at home during summer vacation?”

叔母が先週からうちに泊まっています。うちで母の手伝いをしてくれています。

Oba ga senshū kara uchi ni tomatte imasu. Uchi de haha no tetsudai o shite kurete imasu.

My aunt has been staying at our house since last week. She is helping my mother.

まだ東京に住んでいるんですか。大阪で働きませんか。

Mada Tōkyō ni sunde iru n desu ka. Ōsaka de

hatarakimasen ka.

Are you still living in Tokyo? Wouldn't you want to work in Osaka?

Note that the nouns that express events such as meetings, conferences, and concerts are marked by the particle **de** even though the verb is **arimasu**.

会議は品川であります。ホテルは品川にあります。

Kaigi wa Shinagawa de arimasu. Hoteru wa Shinagawa ni arimasu.

The meeting will take place in Shinagawa. The hotel is located in Shinagawa.

3.6. Particle を o

The particle **o** (written **wo** in some spelling systems, but pronounced **o**) shows that the preceding word is the direct object of the verb.

何を見ていますか。

Nani o mite imasu ka.

What are you looking at?

本を読みました。

Hon o yomimashita.

I read a book.

The meaning of **o** is the OPPOSITE of that of **ga**, which is the particle indicating the subject of the verb, of the copula, or of the adjective (as we shall see later). Notice the following sentences:

ここでだれが何をしますか。

Koko de dare ga nani o shimasu ka.

Who does what here?

だれがだれを見ましたか。

Dare ga dare o mimashita ka.

Who saw who?

誠が幸平を見ました。

Makoto ga Kōhei o mimashita.

Makoto saw Kōhei.

幸平が誠を見ました。

Kōhei ga Makoto o mimashita.

Kōhei saw Makoto.

Either **ga** or **o** can be replaced by the topic particle **wa**. That is, you can take either the subject or the object and make it the topic you are going to talk about.

誠は幸平を見ました。

Makoto wa Kōhei o mimashita.

Makoto saw Kōhei.

誠は幸平が見ました。

Makoto wa Kōhei ga mimashita.

It was Kōhei who saw Makoto.

幸平は誠を見ました。

Kōhei wa Makoto o mimashita.

Kōhei saw Makoto.

幸平は誠が見ました。

Kōhei wa Makoto ga mimashita.

It was Makoto who saw Kōhei.

Notice the shift of emphasis when one of the phrases is made the topic and released from the focus of attention. The most common focus of attention in both English and Japanese is on something other than the subject. We say ‘Makoto saw Kōhei.’ with a slightly heavier stress on ‘Kōhei.’ That is the most COLORLESS way we can say it. In a similar way, the Japanese will say **Makoto wa Kōhei o mimashita**. But in English we always have to have a subject. A Japanese sentence is complete without

a subject—**Go-han o tabemashita** ‘I’ve eaten dinner’ (heaviest stress on ‘dinner’). In this case, it is quite common to shift the emphasis over to just the verb itself, by taking the object and turning it into a topic: ‘I’ve eaten dinner’ (heaviest stress on ‘eaten’), as in **Go-han wa tabemashita**.

The particle **o** is also used to show the place where a verb of motion takes place:

道を歩きます。

Michi o arukimasu.

(He) walks (in) the street

空を飛びます。

Sora o tobimasu.

(He) flies (in) the sky.

公園を (or で) 散歩します。

Kōen o (or de) sanpo shimasu.

(He) strolls (in) the park.

うちを出ます。

Uchi o demasu.

(He) leaves the house.

Verbs that can take a direct object or a noun marked by the particle **o** are called transitive verbs. Note that not all transitive verbs in English are also transitive verbs in Japanese. The following are examples of transitive verbs in Japanese with a sample direct object in the parentheses.

drinks (coffee) 飲む (**kōhī o**) **nomu**

reads (a book) 読む (**hon o**) **yomu**

writes (a letter) 書く (**tegami o**) **kaku**

speaks (Japanese) 話す (**Nihongo o**) **hanasu**

listens (to music) 聞く (**ongaku o**) **kiku**

makes (dinner) 作る (**ban go-han o**) **tsukuru**

buys (shoes) 買う (**kutsu o**) **kau**

uses (scissors) 使う (**hasami o**) **tsukau**

washes (dishes) 洗う (**sara o**) **arau**

learns (how) to play piano (piano) oshieru
teaches (mathematics) (sugaku o) oshieru

3.7. Particle と *to*, meaning ‘with’ and ‘and’

In **ginkō to depāto no aida** ‘(the place) between the bank and the department store,’ the particle **to** means ‘and.’ This is an exhaustive ‘and’ that means you have listed everything in a series. There is also an inexhaustive ‘and’ that means you have listed only some of the things in a series; this is the particle **ya**. In an exhaustive listing of two or more things, each noun is followed by the particle **to** except the last, which is followed by whatever particle is appropriate to link the phrase up with the rest of the sentence.

肉と魚と野菜とご飯を食べました。

Niku to sakana to yasai to go-han o tabemashita.

We ate meat and fish and vegetables and rice (and that’s all).

肉や野菜を食べました。

Niku ya yasai o tabemashita.

We ate meat and vegetables (among other things).

In the phrase **watashi to issho ni** ‘together with me,’ the particle **to** means ‘with.’ You can say **watashi to kimashita** ‘he came with me,’ but with verbs of motion it is more usual to add the phrase **issho ni** ‘together,’ as in **watashi to issho ni kimashita**. Notice that just **issho ni** often corresponds to ‘with me’ or ‘with you’ or ‘with us.’

父と話しました。

Chichi to hanashimashita.

I spoke with my father.

彼女と一緒に旅行しました。

Kanojo to isshoni ryokō shimashita.

I went on a trip with my girlfriend.

(私と)一緒に行きませんか。
(Watashi to) issho ni ikimasen ka.
Why don't you come with me?

Occasionally, the particle **to** is used in expressions that call for an unexpected equivalent in the English translation:

私はあなたと違います。
Watashi wa anata to chigaimasu.
I'm different FROM you.

ここはあそこと違いますね。
Koko wa asoko to chigaimasu ne.
It's different here FROM (what it is) there, isn't it?

3.8. Expressions for accompaniment

Tanaka-san to issho ni ikimasu means 'goes with Mr. Tanaka'; **Makoto o tsurete ikimasu** means 'brings Makoto along.' You use an expression of the latter type, or an expanded form, **Makoto o tsurete issho ni ikimasu**, when the person you are 'bringing along' is younger or socially inferior to you. If the person is your equal or superior, then you say he 'comes along with' you: **Yamada-san wa (watashi to) issho ni ikimasu** 'Ms. Yamada is going along (with me).' The noun **issho** means something like 'a group (as contrasted with a single person),' so **issho ni** means 'in a group; with others'; **issho desu** means 'are together.' **Issho** refers to either people or things; **(to) tomo ni** is a less colloquial synonym.

家族で一緒に公園へ行きました。
Kazoku de issho ni kōen e ikimashita.
I went to the park with my family.

主人と一緒に料理をしました。
Shujin to issho ni ryōri o shimashita.
I cooked with my husband.

今度一緒に映画を見に行きませんか。

Kondo isscho ni eiga o mi ni ikimasen ka.

How about going to see a movie together next time?



3.9 Verbs, polite moods

You have heard forms like **ikimasu** ‘goes,’ **ikimashita** ‘went,’ and **ikimashō** ‘let’s go.’ These are various moods of the same verb. Each verb, adjective, and the copula as well, can be changed in shape to correspond to different categories we call “moods.” (Compare the English forms *go*, *went*, *gone*, *going*.)

In Japanese, each verb, like each adjective and the copula, has two sets of forms: “polite” and “plain.” So far we have seen only the polite forms of verbs and the copula. In the next lesson we have some of the plain forms of these, and plain and polite forms of the adjectives. In normal polite conversation, it is customary to end a sentence with one of these polite forms. For a further discussion on the use of polite and plain forms, see the next lesson.

In this lesson, you’ll find forms like **shite** ‘doing,’ **hanashite** ‘talking,’ **kaette** ‘returned and,’ **kite (kudasai)** ‘(please) come,’ **aruite (ikimasu)** ‘(goes) on foot,’ **tsurete (ikimasu)** ‘brings along,’ **tabete (kara)** ‘(after) eating,’ **(kuruma ni) notte (ikimasu)** ‘(goes) riding (in a car).’ These forms are called gerunds or **te-forms**.

The use of gerunds is discussed in 3.10. You need not worry about how they are formed until the next lesson. Just learn them as they occur.

Below is a list of some verbs, and the copula, many of which you have seen by now in this book. Examine the list, but no need to memorize it.

Meaning	Polite			Plain
	Imperfect	Perfect	Tentative	Gerund
eats	たべます tabemasu	たべました tabemashita	たべましょう tabemashō	たべて tabete
sees, looks	みます mimasu	みました mimashita	みましょう mimashō	みて mite
stays, exists	います imasu	いました imashita	いましょう imashō	いて ite
exists	あります arimasu	ありました arimashita	ありましょう arimashō	あって atte
walks	あるきます arukimasu	あるきました arukimashita	あるきましょう arukimashō	あるいて aruite
goes	いきます ikimasu	いきました ikimashita	いきましょう ikimashō	いって itte
swims	およぎます oyogimasu	およぎました oyogimashita	およぎましょう oyogimashō	およいで oyoide

Meaning	Polite			Plain
	Imperfect	Perfect	Tentative	Gerund
talks	はなします hanashimasu	はなしました hanashimashita	はなしましょう hanashimashō	はなして hanashite
returns	かえります kaerimasu	かえりました kaerimashita	かえりましょう kaerimashō	かえって kaette
rides, gets on	のります norimasu	のりました norimashita	のりましょう norimashō	のって notte
reads	よみます yomimasu	よみました yomimashita	よみましょう yomimashō	よんで yonde
calls	よびます yobimasu	よびました yobimashita	よびましょう yobimashō	よんで yonde
dies	しにます shinimasu	しにました shinimashita	しにましょう shinimashō	しんで shinde
buys	かいます kaimasu	かいました kaimashita	かいましょう kaimashō	かって katte
wins	かちます kachimasu	かちました kachimashita	かちましょう kachimashō	かって katte
comes	きます kimasu	きました kimashita	きましょう kimashō	きて kite
does	します shimasu	しました shimashita	しましょう shimashō	して shite
equals, is	です desu	でした deshita	でしょう deshō	で de

You will notice that the mood we call the polite imperfect ends in **-masu** for all the verbs (**-su** for the copula); the polite perfect ends in **-mashita** for all the verbs (**-shita** for the copula); and the polite tentative ends in **-mashō** for all the verbs (**-shō** for the copula). The verb forms that appear before these polite endings are called infinitives (or pre-**masu** forms), and they all end in the vowel **-e** or **-i**. See 4.3 and 4.8 for more about infinitives. The plain gerund ends in **-te** or **-de** (no ending for the copula), and there are certain changes in the verb stem itself.

3.10. Use of the gerund (or *te*-form)

The gerund is often called the **te**-form. It is used before **kudasai** ‘please’ to make a polite request, for example:

もう一度言ってください。

Mōichido itte kudasai.

Please say it again.

The gerund is used with the particle **kara** to mean ‘after (do)ing.’ For example:

ご飯を食べてから新聞を読みました。

Go-han o tabete kara shinbun o yomimashita.

After eating, I read my newspaper.

The gerund is also used alone at the end of a clause to mean ‘does/did/will do ... and...,’ for example:

オフィスへ行って、メールを読みます。

Ofisu e itte, mēru o yomimasu.

I go to the office and read my e-mails.

The gerund is used in verb phrases with some form of the verb **imasu** to mean ‘is (do)ing,’ expressing a kind of “process” or “continuing action” and focusing on the fact that the action lasts for a while. For example:

今ご飯を食べています。

Ima go-han o tabete imasu.

I’m eating now.

The simple verb form, on the other hand, focuses our attention on the action itself, either a specific act (**Nani o tabemasu ka** ‘What do/will you eat?’; **Sakuban benkyō shimashita** ‘Last night I studied’) or a series thought of as a set of specific acts (**Mainichi hatarakimasu** ‘Every day I work’) rather than as a set of continuing actions taking up a space of time (**Mainichi hataraitte imasu** ‘Every day I’M WORKING’). The exact difference between **shigoto o shimasu** and **shigoto o shite imasu** is just as subtle as that between ‘I work’ and ‘I’m working,’ and in many situations either phrase would seem appropriate. Sometimes the difference between the simple verb and the GERUND + **imasu** seems to lie in a slightly different focus of emphasis. In the sentence **Ichiji kara ni-ji made hatarakimashita** ‘I worked from 1 o’clock to 2 o’clock,’ the principal emphasis is on the fact that I worked and the time is incidental additional information. But in the sentence **Ichiji kara ni-ji made hataraitte**

imashita 'From 1 o'clock to 2 o'clock I was working,' the emphasis, while perhaps really focused on the DURATIVE nature of the action, that is, on the word **imashita**, seems to be more on the time and what I was doing during the time.

The gerund is also used in certain phrases with other verbs:

歩いて行きます。

Aruite ikimasu.

He walks (He goes walking).

車に乗って来ます。

Kuruma ni notte kimasu.

He comes by car (riding in a car).

マイクをつれて行きましょうか。

Maiku o tsurete ikimashō ka.

Shall I bring Mike along (Shall I come bringing Mike)?

Notice that the gerund has no perfect, imperfect, or tentative meaning of its own but takes on the mood of the following (or final) verb.

旅行しています。

Ryokō shite imasu.

I am traveling.

旅行していました。

Ryokō shite imashita.

I was traveling.

旅行していきましょう。

Ryokō shite imashō.

Let's keep traveling.

公園へ行って散歩しましょう。

Kōen e itte sanpo shimashō.

Let's go to the park and take a walk.

公園へ行って散歩しました。

Kōen e itte sanpo shimashita.

I went to the park and took a walk.

公園へ行って散歩しませんか。

Kōen e itte sanpo shimasen ka.

Won't you go to the park and take a walk?

3.11. Use of the imperfect, perfect, and tentative moods

The imperfect mood (sometimes called the present tense or non-past tense) indicates that an action has not been completed: it may or may not have begun, but it must be a definite, decided action. In the following sentence, we use the imperfect because I'm still sick today:

昨日から病気です。

Kinō kara byōki desu.

I've been sick since yesterday.

In the following sentence, perhaps you haven't even started to go yet, but it's definite that you will go:

どこへ行きますか。

Doko e ikimasu ka.

Where are you going?

On the other hand, the perfect mood (sometimes called the past tense) shows that the action has been completed:

田中さんは病気でした。

Tanaka-san wa byōki deshita.

Mr. Tanaka was sick (but he's well now).

どこへバスで行きましたか。

Doko e basu de ikimashita ka.

Where did you go by bus?

The tentative mood (sometimes called suggestive, future, probable future, or presumptive) is used when an action isn't

quite definite. You're not sure about it—maybe it will be, probably it will be, perhaps it has already been—or you're suggesting it for consideration.

田中さんは病気でしょう。

Tanaka-san wa byōki deshō.

Mr. Tanaka must be sick. (I'm not sure, it isn't definite, but what do you think?)

どこへ行きましょうか。

Doko e ikimashō ka.

Where shall we go? (It hasn't been definitely decided where we will go, but we will probably go some place, so what shall we consider?)

This sometimes corresponds to English *let us*:

歩いて行きましょう。

Aruite ikimashō.

Let's walk. (It isn't definite that we will walk, but I'm suggesting it.)

3.12. Negatives

The polite imperfect negative of a verb is made by changing **-masu** to **-masen**. The polite negative of the copula **desu** is the phrase **ja arimasen**. Or, often, **ja nai desu**; and **arimasen** is often **nai desu**. **Ja** in negative forms is often **de wa** in formal contexts. Do not confuse this with the word **arimasen** all by itself; this is the negative of **arimasu** and means 'there isn't any.'

The most common type of attention-focus for a negative sentence in Japanese is on the negation itself 'there ISN'T any bread.' If you want to say 'There isn't any BREAD' (that is, 'It's BREAD that we lack (rather than something else)'), then you say **Pan ga arimasen**.

The polite perfect negative is a phrase, **-masen deshita** (for the copula **ja arimasen deshita**), and similarly the polite tentative negative is **-nai deshō** (for the copula **ja nai deshō**).

This is bread.

これがあります。

~~Kore ga pan desu.~~

This is not bread.

これはありません。

~~Kore wa pan ja arimasen.~~

(これはないではありません。)

~~(Kore wa pan de wa arimasen.)~~

(これはパンじゃないです。)

~~(Kore wa pan ja nai desu.)~~

(これはパンではないです。)

~~(Kore wa pan de wa nai desu.)~~

That was bread.

それはありました。

~~Bore ga pan deshita.~~

That was no bread.

それはありませんでした。

~~Bore wa pan ja ideshita deshita.~~

(それはなかったんです。)

~~(Bore wa pan ja nakatta desu.)~~

(それはパンじゃなかったです。)

~~(Sore wa pan ja nakatta desu.)~~

(それはパンじゃなかったです。)

~~(Sore wa pan de wa nakatta desu.)~~

That (probably) was not bread (fact).

それはないでしょう。

~~Bore wa pan ja nai deshō.~~

(それはパンではないでしょう。)

~~(Sore wa pan de wa nai deshō.)~~

3.13. Words for 'work'

You have seen two ways to say 'I work.' **Shigoto o shimasu** means 'I do my job'; **hatarakimasu** means 'I work (often, but not necessarily, at something physical).' These two words can frequently be used in each other's place, with no great change of meaning. There is another word meaning 'is employed' or 'works'—**tsutomemasu**. This has a somewhat more refined

connotation.

どこで働いていますか。

Doko de hataraitte imasu ka.

Where do you work?

どこに勤めていますか。

Doko ni tsutomete imasu ka.

Where are you employed?

3.14. Verbal nouns (...する ...*suru*)

There are some nouns, like **shutchō** ‘a business trip,’ **shōkai** ‘introduction,’ and **benkyō** ‘study,’ that can be followed directly by a form of the verb **suru/shimasu** ‘does.’ These constitute a class of nouns we call “verbal nouns.” (They are also called **suru**-verbs more commonly.) Sometimes the particle **o** is inserted with expressions of this type, especially if the noun has something modifying it:

先月大阪に出張しました。

Sengetsu Ōsaka ni shutchō shimashita.

Last month I went to Osaka for a business trip.

友達に紹介しましょう。

Tomodachi ni shōkai shimashō.

Let me introduce you to a friend.

日本語を勉強しました。

Nihongo o benkyō shimashita.

I studied Japanese.

その勉強をしました。

Sono benkyō o shimashita.

I did that study.

The following are additional examples of verbal nouns followed by **suru**:

料理する **ryōri suru** cooks

掃除 ~~soji~~ (soj~~o~~)su rule cleaning
 洗濯 ~~sentaku~~ (tak~~u~~)du does laundry
 予約 ~~yoyaku~~ (ake~~su~~)ru reserves
 契約 ~~keiyaku~~ (ak~~u~~)su signs a contract
 研究 ~~kenkyū~~ (ry~~ō~~)su conducts research
 卒業 ~~sootsu~~ (gy~~ō~~)su graduates
 準備 ~~jūbi~~ (jū~~bi~~)su prepares
 旅行 ~~ryōkō~~ (r~~ō~~)su travels
 結婚 ~~kekkon~~ (sage) marries
 失礼 ~~shitsurei~~ (s~~u~~) is excused
 メール ~~mēru~~ (mē~~ru~~)su texts
 ツイート ~~tsūito~~ (s~~u~~)su tweets
 チャット ~~chatts~~ (hat~~u~~)su chats
 ログイン ~~roguin~~ (g~~o~~)su logs on
 ログアウト ~~rogauto~~ (g~~o~~)su logs out

3.15. Going in vehicles

To say ‘I went by train,’ you can say either of the following sentences:

電車で行きました。
Densha de ikimashita.
 I went there by train.

電車に乗って行きました。
Densha ni notte ikimashita.
 I went riding on a train.

The verb **norimasu** ‘gets on board, rides,’ like the verbs **imasu**, **arimasu**, and **sunde imasu**, takes the particle **ni**, here implying a change of position. **Doko de fune ni norimashita ka** ‘Where did you board the ship?’ Notice the difference between **Mainichi densha ni norimasu** ‘He rides the train every day,’ and **Mainichi densha ni notte ikimasu** ‘He goes (there) on the train every day.’ To get off (or out of) a vehicle, you use the verb **orimasu (orite)**: **Kuruma o orimashita** ‘I got out of the car.’ (**Basu o) doko de orimashō ka** ‘Where shall we get off (the bus)?’

Orimasu! ‘Coming out! Getting off!’

3.16 ‘As soon as’

A common way to say ‘as soon as’ is to use the gerund followed by **kara** ‘after ...ing,’ and then begin the next clause with **sugu** ‘right away, immediately.’ **Go-han o tabete kara sugu sanpo ni ikimashita** ‘I went for a walk as soon as (right after) I ate dinner.’ Sometimes the gerund is followed directly by the next clause without the particle **kara**. **Heya ni haitte sugu sensei ni hanashimashita** ‘As soon as I entered the room, I spoke to the teacher.’



[cue 03-3]

Conversation

Takeshi (T) and Shizuka (S) are talking.

T: 昨日は仕事をしましたか。

Kinō wa shigoto o shimashita ka.

Did you work yesterday?

S: いいえ, 休みでした。

Īe, yasumi deshita.

No, I didn’t have to work.

T: ああ, そうですか。

Ā, sō desu ka.

Oh, really.

S: ええ。仕事は月曜日から木曜日までなんです。

Ē. Shigoto wa Getsuyōbi kara Mokuyōbi made na n desu.

Right. My job is from Monday to Thursday.

T: ああ、いいですね。じゃあ、家にいたんですか。

Ā, ii desu ne. Jā, ie ni ita n desu ka.

That's nice! Then, were you at home?

S: いいえ。昨日は大阪から友達が来ていたんです。

Īe. Kinō wa Ōsaka kara tomodachi ga kite ita n desu.

No. I had a friend visiting me from Osaka yesterday.

T: 友達とどこかへ行っただけですか。

Tomodachi to dokoka e itta n desu ka.

Did you go somewhere with your friend?

S: ええ。いっしょにディズニーシーに行きました。

Ē, issho ni Dizunīshī ni ikimashita.

We went to Disney Sea together.

T: 何で行きましたか。

Nani de ikimashita ka.

How did you go there?

S: 車で行きました。

Kuruma de ikimashita.

We went there by car.

T: あしたも休みですね。

Ashita mo yasumi desu ne.

You don't have to work tomorrow, either, right?

S: ええ。あしたは秋葉原に行きます。パソコンをかうんです。

Ē. Ashita wa Akihabara ni ikimasu. Pasokon o kau n desu.

Right. I'll go to Akihabara tomorrow. I'm buying a PC.

T: 僕も行きたいな。

Boku mo ikitai na.

I want to go there, too.

S: じゃあ、秋葉原の駅の前で待ち合わせをしましょう。

Jā, Akihabara no eki no mae de machiawase o shimashō.
Okay, then let's meet in front of Akihabara train station.



Exercises

I. Fill in the blanks with either *de* or *ni*. Do it all aloud.

1. 山田さんはどこ —— 働いていますか。 **Yamada-san wa doko —— hataraitte imasu ka.**
2. 銀行 —— 勤めています。 **Ginkō —— tsutomete imasu.**
3. 会社にはバス —— 行きますか。 **Kaisha ni wa basu —— ikimasu ka.**
4. 電車 —— 乗ります。 **Densha —— norimasu.**
5. 家は東京 —— あります。主人と東京 —— 住んでいます。 **ie wa Tōkyō —— ari-masu. Shujin to Tōkyō —— sunde imasu.**

II. Fill in the blanks with either *ga* or *o*.

1. 私はアメリカの映画 —— 好きです。 **Watashi wa Amerika no eiga —— suki desu.**
2. もうご飯 —— 食べましたか。 **Mō go-han —— tabemashita ka.**

3. 何 —— ありますか。 **Nani —— arimasu ka.**
4. だれ —— 部屋の中にいますか。 **Dare —— heya no naka ni imasu ka.**
5. 何の勉強 —— しましょうか。 **Nan no benkyō —— shimashō ka.**
6. だれ —— 私のクッキーを食べましたか。 **Dare —— watashi no kukkī o tabemashita ka.**
7. どの本 —— 買いましたか。 **Dono hon —— kaimashita ka.**

III. Fill in the blanks appropriately by using verbs and the copula in negative.

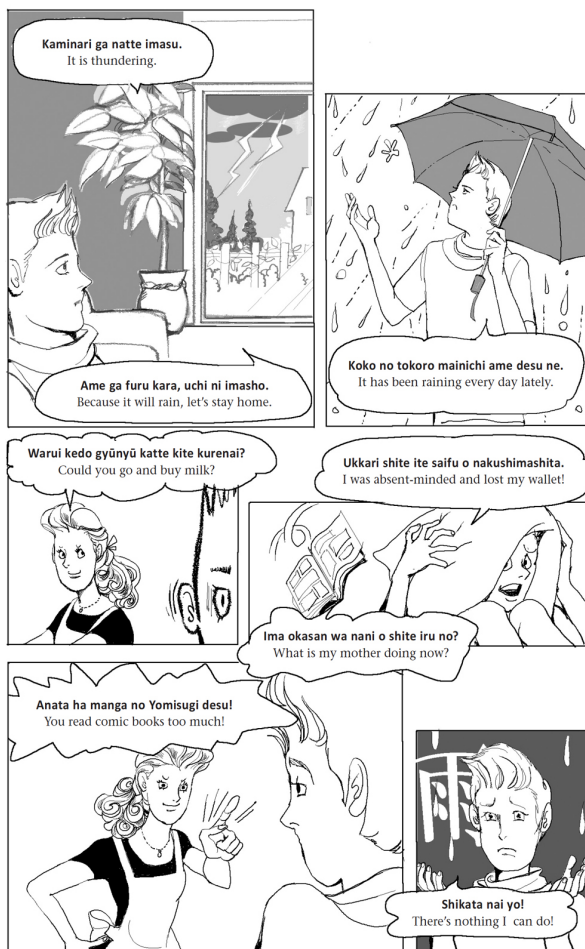
1. 「刺身を食べましたか。」 「いいえ、食べ
_____。」
“**Sashimi o tabemashita ka.**” “**Īe, tabe _____.**”
2. 「今日は勉強しますか。」 「いいえ、 _____
_____。」
“**Kyō wa benkyō shimasu ka.**” “**Īe, _____.**”
3. 「今は働いていますか。」 「いいえ、今は働
_____。」
“**Ima wa hataraitte imasu ka.**” “**Īe, ima wa hata _____.**”
4. 「あの人は病気でしょうか。」 「いいえ、病気 _____
_____。」
“**Ano hito wa byōki deshō ka.**” “**Īe, byōki _____
deshō.**”
5. 「あの人は先生ですか。」 「いいえ、先生 _____
_____。」
“**Ano hito wa sensei desu ka.**” “**Īe, sensei _____.**”

Answers:

I 1. で **de** 2. に **ni** 3. で **de** 4. に **ni** 5. に **ni**, に **ni**

II 1. が **ga** 2. を **o** 3. が **ga** 4. が **ga** 5. を **o** 6. が **ga** 7. を **o**

III 1. ...ませんでした **...masen deshita** 2. 勉強しません **benkyō shimasen** 3. ...らいていません **...raite imasen** 4. ...じゃない **...ja nai** or ...ではない **...de wa nai** 5. ...じゃありません **...arimasen** or ...ではありません **... de wa arimasen**



LESSON 4

What's the Weather Like?

天気はどう？

Tenki wa Dō

In this lesson you will learn how to describe weather and climate, how to conjugate adjectives and verbs, and the important distinction between plain forms and polite forms.





[cue 04-1]

Basic Sentences

今日は暑いです。昨日も暑かったです。明日はどうでしょう。

Kyō wa atsui desu. Kinō mo atsukatta desu. Asu wa dō deshō.

It's hot today. Yesterday was hot also. I wonder how the weather will be tomorrow.

雨が降るから、うちにいましょう。

Ame ga furu kara, uchi ni imashō.

Because it will rain, let's stay home.

雨が降ったから、うちにいました。

Ame ga futta kara, uchi ni imashita.

Because it rained, I stayed home.

天気がよくなったから、外に遊びに行きました。

Tenki ga yoku natta kara, soto ni asobi ni ikimashita.

Because the sky cleared up, I went out for fun.

山田さんは優しいし、頭がいいし、きれいだし。

Yamada-san wa yasashii shi, atama ga ii shi, kirei da shi.

Ms. Yamada is kind, smart, and pretty....

冬になると雪がよく降ります。

Fuyu ni naru to yuki ga yoku furimasu.

When the winter comes, it snows very often.

今もまだ雪が降りつづいています。

Ima mo mada yuki ga furi-tsuzuite imasu.

It is still continuing to snow now.

8「場所では雪が降りますか。」

“Does it snow on the place?”

9「スキーは好きですか。」

“Do you like skiing?”

10「はい、あそこへ行くことがありますか。」

“Kokoro ni arimasu zū ni naru koto ga arimasu ka.”

“Does this occasionally occur here?”

11 庭掃除をするつもりですか。

Itsu niwa-sōji o suru tsumori desu ka.

When do you intend to sweep the yard?

12 だんだん涼しくなってきましたね。

Dandan suzushiku natte kimashita ne.

It is gradually getting cooler.

13 冬目は曇天気は多いですか。」

“Fyōhira kumotoki irasō yōshu ka.”

“How is the twoday (winter) (in your place)?”

14 はもう結婚しています。

Ani wa mō kekkon shite imasu.

My big brother is already married.

15 田中さんはまだ来ていませんね。

Tanaka-san wa mada kite imasen ne.

Mr. Tanaka has not come yet.

16 を持っていった方がいいよ。

Kara kasa o motte itta hō ga ii yo.

It's better to bring an umbrella.

17 レビがつけてあります。

Terebi ga tsukete arimasu.

The TV is turned on.



[cue 04-2]

Basic Vocabulary

WEATHER

晴 **hara**

曇 **chōryō**

風 **kaze**
雨 **ame**
雨 **kosame**
雪 **yuki**
霧 **kiri**
雷 **kaminari**
雷 **houn**

SKY

sky **sora**
晴 **azura**
cloudy **kumori-zora**
the sky **ayūake-zora**

TEMPERATURE & HUMIDITY

寒 **samui**
暑 **atsui**
暖 **atatakai**
涼 **suzushii**
蒸 **and mushi**
暑 **atsui**



SEASONS

春 **haru**
夏 **atsu**
秋 **aki**
冬 **fuyu**

WEATHER-RELATED ITEMS

傘 **kasa**

raincoat **reinkōto**

rain boots **reinbūtsu**

gloves **tebukuro**

mitten **miton**

scarf **mafurā**

leg warmer **reggu wōmā**

ISLANDS IN JAPAN

北海道 **Hokkaidō**

本州 **Honshū**

九州 **Kyūshū**

四国 **Shikoku**

沖縄 **Okinaawa**



Weather in Japan

Japan consists of four major islands: Honshu, Hokkaido, Kyushu, and Shikoku, and nearly 7,000 islands in all, including numerous tiny islands where no one can live. The total land area of Japan is 145,902 square miles

(380,000 square kilometers), only 1/25 of the total area of the United States. Most of the land is mountainous, and the flat portion where people can live is very limited. Japan is a small country, but it is long. Japan can be seen as a chain of islands that goes northeast to southwest and measures about 1,700 miles (3,000 kilometers) in length. Japan's northern end is near 45° N., about the same as Montreal, Canada, and its southern end is near 20° N., about the same as the southern part of Florida. As might be expected, the climate is very different across the country. Everywhere in Japan except Hokkaido has a rainy season, called **tsuyu**. In Tokyo, it rarely snows, but its summer is quite muggy. Hokkaido is dry, but its winter is severe. Most of the northern areas suffer from high accumulations of snow in winter. Kyushu and the southern islands including Okinawa have very mild winters but very hot summers.



COLORS

赤 red
 青 blue
 黄 yellow
 白 white
 黒 black
 緑 green
 紫 purple
 茶 brown
 金 gold
 銀 silver

青 **blue** **aoi**
黒 **black** **kuro** color
黒 **black** **kuroi**
白 **white** **shiro** color
白 **white** **shiroi**
pink **ク pinku**
orange **ジ orenji**

SHAPES, SIZES, AND QUALITIES

丸 **circle** **maru/en**
丸 **round** **rui**
四角 **square** **shikaku**
四角 **square** **shikakui**
小 **little** **ōkii**
小 **little** **chisai**
長 **long** **agai**
短 **short** **mijikai**
良 **good**
悪 **bad** **warui**
(是)に(が) **can** **da** **do**

VERBS

(The sky) gets clear **hareru/haremasu**
(The sky) gets old **kumoru/kumorimasu**
(rain) comes down **furu/furimasu**
goes to bed **neaps/nemasu**
enjoys oneself **asobu/asobimasu**
rests・休みます **yasumu/yasumimasu**
hurries **isogu/isogimasu**
(something) gets open **akeru/akemasu**
opens (something) **akeru/akemasu**
(something) gets broke **kowareru/kowaremasu**
breaks (something) **kowasu/kowashimasu**

Structure Notes

4.1. Adjectives

There are three classes of inflected forms in Japanese: verbs, adjectives, and the copula. You have observed the similar inflections of the verbs (**shimasu**, **shimashita**, **shimashō**) and the copula (**-desu**, **-deshita**, **-deshō**). Adjectives also have inflections for the same categories:

暑 ~~い~~ **hot** す **atsui desu**
暑 ~~い~~ **was hot** でした **atsukatta desu**
暑 ~~い~~ **will (probably)** でしょう **atsui deshō**

The negative of adjectives is a phrase consisting of the plain INFINITIVE + **arimasen** (or **nai desu**) ‘does not exist.’

暑 ~~い~~ **not hot** せん **atsuku arimasen**
暑 ~~い~~ **not hot** す **atsuku nai desu**
暑 ~~い~~ **was not hot** ませんでした **atsuku arimasen deshita**
暑 ~~い~~ **was not hot** でした **atsuku nakatta desu**
暑 ~~い~~ **will (probably)** **atsuku nai deshō**

This is discussed further in 5.11.

4.2. Plain and polite forms

For the same inflectional category, like imperfect or perfect, a Japanese verb, adjective, or copula may have two forms: a plain form and a polite form. In familiar speech, only the plain forms occur. But in polite speech, the plain forms are limited in occurrence to some place other than at the end of the sentence. So, in the polite style of talking, you will say both of the following sentences:

雨が降りました。
Ame ga furimashita.

It rained.

雨が降ったから，うちにいました。

Ame ga futta kara, uchi ni imashita.

Because it rained, I stayed home.

Occasionally you will hear a polite form used somewhere other than at the end of the sentence. For instance, someone may say:

雨が降りましたから，うちにいました。

Ame ga furimashita kara, uchi ni imashita.

Because it rained, I stayed home.

In fact, before the particle **ga** meaning ‘but, and,’ the polite form is the usual thing. And before the particle **keredomo** ‘but, however,’ many people prefer to use the polite form.

The moods that occur at the end of a sentence are limited to the imperfect, perfect, and tentative. But within a sentence, there are a number of other moods, such as the gerund (see 3.9) and the infinitive (see 4.3, 4.5, 4.6, and 4.8). Here are some examples of the use of plain and polite forms within sentences:

寒いと関節が痛みます。

Samui to kansetsu ga itamimasu.

When it's cold, my joints hurt.

疲れたから，もう寝ます。

Tsukareta kara, mō nemasu.

I'm tired, so I'll go to bed now.

父は心臓病で亡くなりましたが，母は癌でなくなりました。

Chichi wa shinzōbyō de nakunarimashita ga, haha wa gan de nakunarimashita.

My father died of heart disease, but my mother died of cancer.

英語の教師だったけれども，英語を話す国に行ったことはありません。

Eigo no kyōshi datta keredomo, Eigo o hanasu kuni ni itta koto wa arimasen.

I was an English teacher, but I have never been to any English-speaking countries.

4.3. Shapes of the plain forms

Any Japanese inflected form may be broken up into a “stem” and an “ending.” (Some call stems “roots,” referring to the form without any endings.) Japanese verbs fall into two main classes: consonant verbs and vowel verbs. The consonant verbs are those with a stem that ends in a consonant; the vowel verbs are those with a stem that ends in a vowel. Vowel stems end only in **-e** or **-i**:

(1) **-i** as in 見る **mi-ru**

(2) **-e** as in 食べる **tabe-ru**

Consonant stems end in one of the following nine sounds (verbs are usually mentioned by the plain imperfect form: **kau** ‘buys’):

(1) **-t[s]** as in 勝つ **kats-u**

(2) **-r** as in 乗る **nor-u**

(3) **-y[s/w]** as in 買う **ka-u**

(4) **-d[s]** as in 貸す **kas-u**

(5) **-k** as in 書く **kak-u**

(6) **-ng** as in 泳ぐ **oyog-u**

(7) **-b** as in 呼ぶ **yob-u**

(8) **-m** as in 読む **yom-u**

(9) **-n** as in 死ぬ **shin-u**

You will notice certain peculiarities in the above list of stem-final consonants. Verbs like **kau** ‘buys’ are said to be consonant verbs, but the consonant with which they end, **w**, just doesn’t occur in Japanese except before the sound **a** (as in **watashi** ‘I’). This means that for some of the endings, like the imperfect, these **w**-ending-stem verbs don’t display this stem-final

consonant at all. That is why we put the **w** in brackets—to show that it disappears before every vowel except **a**. You will notice another sound in brackets—the **s** of the verb **katsu** ‘wins.’ This verb stem basically ends in just **-t**, but the sound **t** does not occur before the sound **u** in Japanese, so that before an ending beginning with **u**, the **t** is replaced by **ts**. In a similar way, since the combination **ti** does not normally occur in Japanese, before the infinitive ending **-i**, the **t** becomes **ch**— **kach-i** ‘wins.’ Since the sound **si** does not occur, the infinitive of **hanas-u** ‘speaks’ turns out to be **hanash-i** ‘speaking.’ There is only one verb with a stem ending in **-n**, **shinu** ‘dies,’ and this is often replaced by a euphemism **nakunaru** ‘passes away.’ The verb **shinu** is included in our list only for completeness. Here are some models showing the formation of the plain forms:

	Stem (root)	Imperfect	Perfect	Gerund	Infinitive	English
Vowel Verbs	tabe	たべる tabe-ru	食べた tabe-ta	たべて tabe-te	たべ tabe	eats
	mi	みる mi-ru	みた mi-ta	みて mi-te	み mi	sees, looks
Consonant Verbs	kat	かつ kats-u	かった kat-ta	かって kat-te	かち kach-i	wins
	nor	のる nor-u	のった not-ta	のって not-te	のり nor-i	gets on
	kaw*	かう ka-u	かった kat-ta	かって kat-te	かい ka-i	buys
	kas	かす kas-u	かした kashi-ta	かして kashi-te	かし kash-i	lends
	kak	かく kak-u	かいた kai-ta	かいて kai-te	かき kak-i	writes
	oyog	およぐ oyog-u	およいだ oyoi-da	およいで oyoi-de	およぎ oyog-i	swims
	yob	よぶ yob-u	よんだ yon-da	よんで yon-de	よび yob-i	calls
	yom	よむ yom-u	よんだ yon-da	よんで yon-de	よみ yom-i	reads
	shin	しぬ shin-u	しんだ shin-da	しんで shin-de	しに shin-i	dies

* The **w** at the end of a consonant verb is pronounced and heard only if it is followed by the vowel **a**.

The endings, then, are as follows:

Imperfect: vowel stem, **-u** after a consonant stem
(ZERO) after a vowel stem, **-i** after a consonant stem

Perfect after **-g**, **-b**, **-m**, and **-n** stems; **-ta** after all other stems

Gerund after **-g**, **-b**, **-m**, and **-n** stems; **-te** after all other stems

The ZERO ending is an ending that has no shape at all. Notice that multiple verbs might have exactly the same form, for example, the gerund forms of **katsu** ‘wins’ and **kau** ‘buys’ in the above table are both **katte**. Often the pitch accents are different in such cases, but you can always distinguish them by the context in which each is used.

4.4. Learning the forms

Now, how should one go about learning these inflectional forms? You have read a description of how they are put together, and that may be of some help to you. But in order to be able to make up the forms for a new verb you hear, you will want to compare it with a verb you already know and make its forms by analogy, using the old verb for a model. You can take the verbs used in the lists here for your models. Learn their forms well, and then make forms for other verbs on their patterns.

When you come across a new verb, the first thing you want to know is: is it a consonant verb or a vowel verb? Unless the verb ends in **-eru** or **-iru** in the imperfect, there is no doubt about it, but if the verb does end in **-eru** or **-iru**, you don’t know whether it is a consonant verb or a vowel verb until you check one of the other forms, such as the infinitive or the perfect.

In this book we will show two imperfect forms, plain and polite, in the Basic Vocabulary section, so that you can clearly tell whether any of the **-eru** and **-iru** verbs are consonant verbs or vowel verbs: if you get the same form after removing **-ru** and **-masu**, the verb is a vowel verb. For example, take **taberu** and **tabemasu** ‘eats,’ and remove **-ru** and **-masu** from **taberu** and **tabemasu**, respectively. You get exactly the same form, which is **tabe**. This means that **taberu** is a vowel verb. Do the same for

kaeru and **kaerimasu** ‘returns.’ After removing **-ru** and **-masu**, you get **kae** and **kaeri**, which are different. This means that **kaeru** ‘returns’ is a consonant verb. No need to be alert all the time. You just need to be alert if you see a verb that ends in **-eru** or **-iru**. The following are pairs of consonant verbs and vowel verbs whose plain imperfect forms are exactly the same.

Consonant Verb

iru/irimasu exists (いる)
kiru/kirimasu cuts (切る)
neru/nerimasu sleeps (寝る)
kaeru/kaerimasu changes (帰る)

Most verbs with the imperfect ending in **-eru** or **-iru** are vowel verbs, so it is a good idea to memorize a small list of **-eru/-iru** ending “consonant” verbs. The following list is not exhaustive, but is helpful.

chiru/chirimasu 散る/scatters
hairu/hairimasu 入ります/enters
hashiru/hashirimasu 走ります/runs
heru/herimasu 減ります/decreases
iru/irimasu 要ります/needs
iru/irimasu 煎ります/toasts
kaeru/kaerimasu 帰ります/returns
kagiru/kagirimasu 限ります/limits
keru/kerimasu 蹴ります/kicks
kiru/kirimasu 切ります/cuts
mairu/mairimasu 参ります/goes
majiru/majirimasu 混ぜます/mixes
nejiru/nejirimasu ねじります/twists
neru/nerimasu 寝ます/sleeps
nigiru/nigirimasu 握ります/grasps
shigeru/shigerimasu 鼓みます/strums
shikiru/shikirimasu 仕切ります/divides
shiru/shirimasu 知ります/knows
shaberu/shaberimasu しゃべります/chats
suberu/suberimasu 滑ります/slides

4.5. Irregular verbs

There are only a few common verbs that have considerable irregularities of inflection. The verbs **kuru (kimasu)** ‘comes’ and **suru (shimasu)** ‘does’ are irregular in the plain imperfect itself. (We would expect something like ***ki-ru** and ***shi-ru** if the verbs were regular.) Nearly everywhere else these verbs behave the way you would expect a vowel verb ending in **-iru** to behave:

Imperfect	Perfect	Gerund	Infinitive
くる ku-ru	きた ki-ta	きて ki-te	き ki(-zero)
する su-ru	した shi-ta	して shi-te	し shi(-zero)

The verb **ik-u** ‘goes’ is irregular only in the way the stem changes the **-k** to **-t** instead of **-i** before the **t**-endings. (We might have expected a form like ***i-ita** instead of the actual **it-ta**, if the verb were regular.) There is one other verb that is irregular in the imperfect only. This is the verb **i(w)-u** ‘says, tells.’ We write this form **iu**, but it is often pronounced **yū**.

Imperfect	Perfect	Gerund	Infinitive
いく ik-u	いった it-ta	いって it-te	いき ik-i
いう i-u (yū)	いった it-ta	いって it-te	いい i-i

Note that the perfect and gerund forms of **iu** ‘says,’ **iku** ‘goes’ and **ir-u** ‘is necessary’ are the same: **itta**, **itte**. You can tell them apart only by the rest of the sentence. (But some people pronounce **yutta** and **yutte** for ‘said’ and ‘saying.’) There are some verbs whose **masu**-forms lacks **r**. For example, the polite imperfect form of **kudasaru** is not **kudasarimasu** but **kudasaimasu**. Similarly, the polite imperfect form of **irassharu** ‘to exist’ is not **irassharimasu** but **irasshaimasu**.

4.6. Adjectives and the copula

Adjectives in Japanese end in:

ii ~~like~~ aka
 ii ~~like~~ ao
 ii ~~like~~ warui
 ii ~~like~~ ōkii

They are inflected simply by adding certain endings to the vowel before the -i, which is the imperfect ending itself:

Infinitive

く ~~like~~ katta

The copula is somewhat irregularly inflected, so the forms are best learned as separate words rather than being broken into stem and ending. The adjective ii ‘is good’ has an alternate form yoi ‘is good.’ The other forms are all based only on the form yoi.

	Imperfect	Perfect	Gerund	Infinitive
is red	赤い aka-i	赤かった aka-katta	赤くて aka-kute	赤く aka-ku
is blue	青い ao-i	青かった ao-katta	青くて ao-kute	青く ao-ku
is bad	悪い waru-i	悪かった waru-katta	悪くて waru-kute	悪く waru-ku
is big	大きい ōki-i	大きかった ōki-katta	大きくて ōki-kute	大きく ōki-ku
is good	いい・よい i-i/ yo-i	よかった yo-katta	よくて yo-kute	よく yo-ku
is nonexistent	ない na-i	なかった na-katta	なくて na-kute	なく na-ku
equals, is	-だ -da	-だった -datta	-で -de	---

Here are some examples of inflected forms of adjectives and the copula used in sentences:

山田さんは優しいし、頭がいいし、悪いところがないし、きれいだし。

Yamada-san wa yasashii shi, atama ga ii shi, warui tokoro ga nai shi, kirei da shi.

Ms. Yamada is kind, smart, no bad qualities, pretty...

10年前はまだ家も安かったし、手続きも簡単だった。

Jū-nen mae wa mada ie mo yasukatta shi, tetsuzuki mo kantan datta.

Ten years ago, houses were still cheap and (purchase) procedures were simpler.

昨日は雨が降って寒くて、最悪の天気で本当に困った。

Kinō wa ame ga futte samukute, saiaku no tenki de hontō ni komatta.

Yesterday, it rained, it was cold, and it was the worst weather, and we were in real trouble.

急に涼しくなつて、海岸も人がいなくなつて、静かになってしまいましたね。

Kyū ni suzushiku natte, kaigan mo hito ga inaku natte, shizukani natte shimaimashita ne.

It became cooler all of a sudden, people disappeared from the beaches, and it became completely quiet.

今日は天気がよくて、風もなく、洗濯物を干すには最高の日でよかった。

Kyō wa tenki ga yokute, kaze mo nakute, sentakumono o hosu ni wa saikō no hi de yokatta.

Today, the sky was clear, no strong wind, and so it was an ideal day for hanging out the wash.

4.7. Uses of the plain imperfect and perfect

Both imperfect and perfect are used before the particle **kara** with the meaning ‘because’:

~~Because it is there~~ **soko ni aru kara**

~~Because it was there~~ **soko ni atta kara**

Notice the difference in meaning between GERUND + **kara** and PERFECT + **kara**:

友達が来てから、いっしょにご飯を食べました。

Tomodachi ga kite kara, issho ni go-han o tabemashita.

After my friend came, we had dinner together.

友達が来たから，いっしょにご飯を食べました。

Tomodachi ga kita kara, issho ni go-han o tabemashita.

Because my friend came, I had dinner with him.

Before **keredomo** ‘however, but,’ both imperfect and perfect occur:

私は学校へ行ったけれども勉強しませんでした。

Watashi wa gakkō e itta keredomo benkyō shimasen deshita.

I went to school, but I didn’t study.

私は学校へ行くけれどもあまり勉強しません。

Watashi wa gakkō e iku keredomo amari benkyō shimasen.

I go to school, but I don’t study very much.

Before the particle **to** meaning ‘when,’ only the imperfect occurs:

春になると，お天気がよくなります。

Haru ni naru to, otenki ga yōku narimasu.

When it gets to be spring, the weather gets nice.

子どもは先生を見ると，すぐ部屋の中へ入りました。

Kodomo wa sensei o miru to, sugu heya no naka e hairimashita.

As soon as they spotted the teacher, the children went into the room.

雪が降ると，うちにいて遊びます。

Yuki ga furu to, uchi ni ite asobimasu.

When it snows, we stay home and enjoy ourselves (here).

Before the phrases **koto ga suki desu** ‘likes to,’ **koto ga dekimasu** ‘can,’ and **tsumori desu** ‘intends to,’ only the imperfect occurs:

泳ぐことが好きです。

Oyogu koto ga suki desu.

I like to swim.

泳ぐことが好きでした。

Oyogu koto ga suki deshita.

I used to like to swim.

泳ぐことが好きでしょう。

Oyogu koto ga suki deshō.

You must like to swim.

山へ行くつもりです。

Yama e iku tsumori desu.

I intend to go to the mountains.

山へ行くつもりでした。

Yama e iku tsumori deshita.

I intended to go to the mountains.

山へ行くつもりでしょう。

Yama e iku tsumori deshō.

You must be planning to go to the mountains.

Before the phrase **koto ga aru** ‘there exists the fact of,’ either imperfect or perfect is used, depending on the meaning. If you use the imperfect, the meaning is ‘sometimes’:

公園へ行って散歩することがあります。

Kōen e itte sanpo suru koto ga arimasu.

I sometimes go to the park and take a walk.

秋にも寒いことがあります。

Aki ni mo samui koto ga arimasu.

It is sometimes cold in autumn, too.

If you use the perfect before **koto ga aru**, the meaning is ‘has ever done, once did’:

日比谷公園へ散歩に行ったことがありますか。

Hibiya-kōen e sanpo ni itta koto ga arimasu ka.

Have you ever been (gone) to Hibiya Park for a walk?

そこへ行ったことはありません。

Soko e itta koto wa arimasen.

I’ve never been there.

神戸へ旅行したことがあります。

Kōbe e ryokō shita koto ga arimasu.

I once took a trip to Kobe.

もうそこへ行ったことがありますが，前の旅行は冬でした。

Mō soko e itta koto ga arimashita ga, mae no ryokō wa fuyu deshita.

I had already been there (once), but the trip before was (in) winter.

4.8. Uses of the infinitive

The infinitive is a noun-like form of verbs and adjectives. There is no copula infinitive, except in the impersonal style (**de ari**), where the copula is always a phrase.

Verb and adjective infinitives are used before various particles just as nouns are.

鞆を取りに行きました。

Kaban o tori ni ikimashita.

I went to pick up the suitcase.

遅くまで勉強しました。

Osoku made benkyō shimashita.

I studied till late.

For emphatic contrast, a verb infinitive is sometimes followed by the particle **wa** and some form of the verb **suru**:

泳ぎはしませんでした。遊びはよくしました。

Oyogi wa shimasen deshita ga, asobi wa yoku shimashita.

I DIDN'T do any swimming, but I DID do a lot of playing.

Similarly, an adjective infinitive is followed by **wa** and a form of the verb **aru**:

小さくはありましたけれども、悪くはありませんでした。

Chisaku wa arimashita keredomo, waruku wa arimasen deshita.

It WAS small, but it WASN'T bad.

The adjective infinitive often modifies other verb and adjective forms without any particle—this is similar to the ADVERB use of nouns without particles:

寒くなりました。

Samuku narimashita.

It got cold.

早く歩いてください。

Hayaku aruite kudasai.

Please walk fast.

髪を短くしました。

Kami o mijikaku shimashita.

I made my hair short.

The infinitive **yoku** (-ii 'is good') has three slightly different meanings: 'well; often; a lot':

よくなりました。

Yoku narimashita.

He got well.

雨がよく降ります。

Ame ga yoku furimasu.

It rains a lot.

ここは台風がよく来ます。

Koko wa taifū ga yoku kimasu.

Typhoons often come here.

The meanings ‘often’ and ‘a lot’ are similar to English ‘a good deal’ as in ‘it rains a good deal’ and ‘she goes to the movies a good deal.’

The verb infinitive is easy to find: just remove the **-masu** from the polite forms such as **tabe-masu**, **nomi-masu**, **shi-masu**, etc. The verb infinitive is used to make compound verbs. For example, you can add the verb **tsuzukeru** ‘continues something’ to any verb infinitive to make a compound verb with the meaning ‘continues to do something’:

~~continues talking~~ **hanashi-tsuzukeru**

~~goes on drinking~~ **nomi-tsuzukeru**

~~keeps on looking~~ **mitsuzukeru**

Another kind of compound verb is made with the verb **naosu** ‘repairs, fixes, cures’ added to the infinitive; this means ‘does something again (correcting one’s error)’:

~~writes again~~ **kakinaosu**

~~reads again (yomi-naosu this time)~~

Somewhat similar are compound verbs made by attaching **kaeru** ‘changes something’ (do not confuse **kae-ru** with **kaer-u** ‘returns’) to an infinitive:

~~changes train~~ **kaeru (kai-ru changes)**

~~rephrases~~ **ii-kaeru**

Still another kind of compound verb is made by adding either **hajimeru** ‘begins something’ or **dasu** ‘puts something out; starts something’ to an infinitive:

読みにReady **yomi-hajimeru**
starts to **hashiri-dasu**

A special type of compound is made by adding **sugiru** 'is in excess' to a verb infinitive (or to just the stem of an adjective, or to a copular noun):

食べ過ぎ **tabe-sugiru**
働き過ぎ **hataraki-sugiru**
遅過ぎ **ososo-sugiru**
大過ぎ **largeki-sugiru**
静か過ぎ **shizuka-sugiru**

The following sentences have compound verbs:

三日前から雨が降りだして、今もまだ降りつづけています。

Mikka mae kara ame ga furi-dashite, ima mo mada furi-tsuzukete imasu.

It started to rain three days ago, and it is still raining now.

誠は言いだしたら全然人の話を聞かない。

Makoto wa ii-dashitara zenzen hito no hanashi o kikanai.

Makoto does not listen to anyone once he starts saying something.

食べすぎないようにしなくてははいけません。

Tabe-suginai yō ni shinakute wa ikemasen.

You must try not to overeat.

品川で乗りかえてください。

Shinagawa de nori-kaete kudasai.

Please change trains at Shinagawa.

考えなおして、働きはじめました。

Kangae-naoshite, hataraki-hajimemashita.

I reconsidered, and started working.

マンガを読みすぎました。

Manga o yomi-sugimashita.

I read comic books too much.

Finally, the verb infinitive is the source of many derived nouns:

休み **yasumi** ‘vacation’ from **yasumu** (rests)

はなし **hanashi** ‘story’ from **hanasu** (speaks)

はじめ **hajime** ‘beginning’ from **hajimeru** (begins)

泳ぎ **oyogi** ‘swimming’ from **oyogu** (swims)

通り **tōri** ‘street’ from **tōru** (passes)

There are a few nouns derived from adjective infinitives like **chikaku** ‘vicinity’ from **chikaku** ‘being near,’ as in **Ginkō wa chikaku ni arimasen** ‘There is no bank in the vicinity.’

A special kind of noun is derived by adding the noun **kata** ‘manner’ to the infinitive. The meaning of these nouns is ‘way or manner of (do)ing’:

~~食~~方 **tabekata**

~~話~~方 **hanashikata**

~~写~~方 **arukikata**

~~読~~み方 **yomikata**

~~書~~き方 **kakikata**

~~仕~~方 **shikata**, means

Here are some example sentences:

犬のような食べ方をしないで、箸かフォークで食べなさい。

Inu no yō na tabekata o shinaide, hashi ka fōku de tabenasai.

Don’t eat like a dog, but eat with chopsticks or a fork.

この漢字の読み方と書き方を教えてください。

Kono kanji no yomikata to kakikata o oshiete kudasai.

Please teach me how to read and write this kanji.

「もう間に合わないね。」

“Mō maniwawanai ne.”

“We cannot make it anymore. (It’s too late.)”

「仕方がないよ。」

“Shikata nai yo.”

“There’s nothing we can do (so let’s give up).”

4.9. The plain negative

The plain form of the verb **arimasu** ‘exists’ is **aru**. The negative form of this is not a verb at all, but the adjective **nai**, ‘is non-existent (= does not exist).’ The adjective **nai**, then, is the plain adjective form corresponding to the polite verb form **arimasen**. The plain negative of other verbs are also adjectives derived from the verb stems by the addition of the suffix **-(a)nai**—this is discussed in 5.11. Here are some examples of the adjective **nai**:

車がないから電車に乗って行きます。

Kuruma ga nai kara densha ni notte ikimasu.

I don’t have a car, so I go by train.

傘がなかったから濡れてしまいました。

Kasa ga nakatta kara nurete shimaimashita.

As I did not have an umbrella, I got wet.

ここに置いておいたのに財布がなくなりました。

Koko ni oite oita no ni saifu ga nakunarimashita.

I placed it here, but my wallet disappeared
(became nonexistent).

うっかりしていて財布をなくしました。

Ukkari shite ite saifu o nakushimashita.

I was absent-minded and lost my wallet (made it
nonexistent).

Note that **nakusuru** is also treated as **nakus-u**, a consonant

verb.

4.10. Particle も *mo*

The particle **mo** means ‘even’ or ‘also.’ After numbers it is sometimes equivalent to ‘as little as’ or ‘as much as.’ When there are two phrases in a row, each ending in **mo**, the translation is ‘both... and...’ if the predicate is affirmative and ‘(n)either... (n)or...’ if the predicate is negative.

今日も雨ですね。

Kyō mo ame desu ne.

Today is also a rainy day. (It is raining again today.)

簡単な漢字も書けなくなっていました。

Kantan na kanji mo kakenaku natte shimaimashita.

I became unable to write even easy kanji characters.

お酒は一杯も飲めません。

O-sake wa ip-pai mo nomemasen.

I cannot drink even a glass of sake.

靴を5足も買ったんですか。

Kutsu o go-soku mo katta n desu ka.

You bought as many as five pairs of shoes?

ビールもワインも好きです。

Biru mo wain mo suki desu.

I like both beer and wine.

ビールもワインもウイスキーも好きです。

Biru mo wain mo uisuki mo suki desu.

I like beer, wine, and whiskey.

ビールもワインも好きじゃありません。

Biru mo wain mo suki ja arimasen.

I don't like either beer or wine.

4.11. Expressing the time of the event ‘when ...’ (... と ...*to*, ...時 ...*toki*, ...間 ...*aida*)

The particle **to** occurs after the plain imperfect with the meaning ‘when, whenever, if.’ Another way to say ‘when,’ with reference to some specific time, is to use either the imperfect (with present meaning) or the perfect (with past meaning) and follow this with the noun **toki** ‘time.’ If you mean ‘during the interval of ...,’ you can use the word **aida** ‘interval’ preceded by either the imperfect or the perfect (depending on the meaning) in the progressive form. **Aida** or **toki** can be followed by **wa**, **ni**, or **ni wa**.

窓の外を見ると雪が降っていた。

Mado no soto o miru to yuki ga futte ita.

When I looked outside through the window, it was snowing.

春になると花が咲く。

Haru ni naru to hana ga saku.

When it is spring, flowers blossom.

忙しいとあまり食べませんが、暇だといつ食べ過ぎてしまいます。

Isogashii to amari tabemasen ga, hima da to tsui tabe-sugite shimaimasu.

If I’m busy, I don’t eat much, but if I’m doing nothing, I tend to overeat before I know it.

道をわたる時には右と左をよく見てください。

Michi o wataru toki ni wa migi to hidari o yoku mite kudasai.

When crossing a street, look to your right and left carefully.

電車の中で変な荷物を見た時はすぐに車掌に言ってください。

Densha no naka de hen na nimotsu o mita toki wa sugu ni shashō ni itte kudasai.

When you see a strange package in a train, please let the conductor know as soon as possible.

小さい時から泳ぎは得意でした。

Chīsai toki kara oyogi wa tokui deshita.

I've been good at swimming since I was little.

洗濯をしている間に掃除もします。

Sentaku o shite iru aida ni sōji mo shimasu.

While doing laundry, I also clean.

冬の間は何もしません。

Fuyu no aida wa nani mo shimasen.

I don't do anything during the winter.

4.12. Particle から *kara* meaning 'since' and 'because'

The particle **kara** after a noun usually means 'from' in a physical sense: **Kōbe kara** 'from Kobe.' From this it is extended to mean 'from' or 'after' or 'since' in a temporal sense: **kinō kara** 'from yesterday, since yesterday,' **sore kara** 'from that, after that,' **Nihon e kita toki kara** 'from the time I came to Japan, since I came to Japan.' After a GERUND also, it has the meaning of 'after':

ご飯を食べてから、テレビを見ました。

Go-han o tabete kara, terebi o mimashita.

After eating, we watched TV.

However, after the plain imperfect or perfect, this particle means 'since' in the causal sense of 'because':

雨が降ったから、行けませんでした。

Ame ga futta kara, ikemasen deshita.

Because it rained, I could not go there.

You will find it convenient to translate this **kara** as 'so,' since the word so fits into English syntax at about the same point that

kara fits into Japanese syntax. The main difference is that we often pause BEFORE **so**, but the Japanese pause AFTER **kara**. The above Japanese sentence is repeated here with an English translation with **so**:

雨が降ったから、行けませんでした。

Ame ga futta kara, ikemasen deshita.

It rained, so I could not go there.

In English, we say things like ‘I HAVE BEEN ill since last night. I’ve BEEN in Japan since last year,’ using a present perfect even though we are still ill or in Japan at the time we are talking. In Japanese, the imperfect is used for these situations: **Sakuban kara byōki desu. Kyonen kara Nihon ni imasu.** Here are some examples of the uses of **kara** in a variety of contexts, in conjunction with gerund, perfect, and imperfect forms of verbs, adjectives, and the copula:

気温が急激に下がってから池の水が凍ってしまいました。

Kion ga kyūgeki ni sagatte kara ike no mizu ga kōtte shimaimashita.

As soon as the temperature dropped drastically, the pond froze.

お父さんが帰ったからゲームは隠した方がいいですよ。

Otōsan ga kaetta kara gēmu wa kakushita hō ga ii yo.

As your dad has gotten home, it is better to hide the game.

今日は寒いから厚いジャケットを着た方がいいですよ。

Kyō wa samui kara atsui jaketto o kita hō ga ii desu yo.

It is cold today, so it is better to wear a thick jacket.

雪が降ったから学校が休校になった。

Yuki ga futta kara gakkō ga kyūkō ni natta.

As it snowed, the school was closed.

梅雨だから、雨がよく降る。

Tsuyu da kara, ame ga yoku furu.

Because it is rainy season, it rains a lot.

4.13. Multiple particles

Sometimes a word is followed by more than one particle. In such cases, the meaning of the last particle restricts the meaning of the entire phrase leading up to it. For example, in the phrase **Nihon de wa**, the particle **wa** sets off **Nihon de** ‘in Japan’ as the topic. In **koko ni mo arimasu** ‘there’s some here too,’ the particle **mo** gives a special ‘also’ meaning to the phrase **koko ni** ‘in this place.’ In **Tokyō kara no densha** ‘the train from Tokyo,’ the particle **no** makes the entire phrase modify **densha** (what kind of a **densha**? the sort about which you can say **Tōkyō kara**).

Particles that occur after other particles are usually only the topic particle **wa**, the subject particle **ga**, the object particle **o**, and the intensive particle **mo**; these particles have somewhat more general meanings than those of **to** ‘with,’ **ni** ‘at, to,’ **e** ‘to,’ **de** ‘at,’ **made** ‘till,’ **kara** ‘from,’ etc. The particles **wa**, **ga**, **o**, and **mo** never occur in sequences with each other—their meanings are mutually exclusive.

田中さんとは最近話していません。山田さんともあまり話していません。

Tanaka-san to wa saikin hanashite imasen. Yamada-san to mo amari hanashite imasen.

I haven’t talked with Mr. Tanaka lately. I haven’t talked with Mr. Yamada much, either.

居酒屋にはよく行きます。カラオケボックスにもよく行きます。

Izakaya ni wa yoku ikimasu. Karaoke bokkusu ni mo yoku ikimasu.

We go to an *izakaya* bar very often. We also often go to a karaoke box, too.

12課からが難しいんです。12課からをよく勉強してください。

Jūni-ka kara ga muzukashii n desu. Jūni-ka kara o yoku benkyō shite kudasai.

Lesson 12 onwards is difficult. Please study Lesson 12 onwards carefully.

4.14. こと *koto*

The word **koto** means ‘thing (that you can’t touch or see)’; there is another word **mono** that usually means ‘thing (that you can touch or see).’ **Mono** is also a humble word for ‘person’ (= **hito**); a vulgar synonym (in both meanings) is **yatsu**. (**Kono yatsu**, **sono yatsu**, **ano yatsu**, and **dono yatsu** are usually abbreviated to **koitsu**, **soitsu**, **aitsu**, and **doitsu**, respectively.)

Sometimes the word **koto** means ‘act’ or ‘fact.’ In this lesson there are two special expressions with **koto**: (**iku**) **koto ga arimasu** ‘there exists the fact of (my going) = (I) sometimes (go)’ and (**itta**) **koto ga arimasu** ‘there exists the fact of my having (gone) = I have (gone), I once (went).’ Note that the difference in meaning between these two expressions is carried by the mood of the verb in front of **koto**: the perfect (**itta**) is used with the meaning ‘once did, ever did’ (negative ‘never did’); the imperfect (**iku**) is used with the meaning ‘sometimes does’ (negative ‘never does’). If you want to put either expression entirely in the perfect, you change the mood of the verb **arimasu**: **iku koto ga arimashita** ‘there existed the fact of my going = I sometimes went,’ **itta koto ga arimashita** ‘there existed the fact of my having gone = I had once gone.’

The relationship between the plain forms of the verb (**iku** and **itta**) and the word **koto** is that of modifier to modified, with the meaning ‘which (does or is).’ That is, a **koto** WHICH **iku** or **itta**, a **koto** ABOUT WHICH YOU CAN SAY **iku** or **itta**. The plain inflected forms in Japanese can modify a noun (like **koto**) directly, without any particle. Nouns, on the other hand, have to be followed by the particle **no** (or a modifying form of the copula **na** or **no**, see 5.3) to modify another noun. The modifier

relationship is further discussed in 5.1. More examples of expressions with **koto**:

「その本を読んだことがありますか。」

“Sono hon o yonda koto ga arimasu ka.”

“Have you (ever) read that book?”

「いいえ、ありません。」

“Ie, arimasen.”

“No, I haven’t.”

シカゴには行ったことはありません。去年までは
ニューヨークにも行ったことはありませんで
した。

**Shikago ni wa itta koto ga arimasen. Kyonen made
wa Nyū Yōku ni mo itta koto ga arimasen deshita.**

I haven’t been to Chicago yet. Until last year I had
never even been to New York.

「あの人の声が嫌だということはありません
か。」

**“Ano hito no koe ga iya da to omou koto wa
arimasen ka.”**

“Don’t you sometimes (ever) dislike his voice?”

「時々ありますね。」

“Tokidoki arimasu ne.”

“I sometimes do.”

ここでは冬はあまり寒くありませんが、雪が降るこ
ともあります。

**Koko de wa fuyu wa amari samuku arimasen ga, yuki
ga furu koto mo arimasu.**

The winter is mild here, but it occasionally snows.

アメリカでは日本のテレビを見ることはありません。
。

**Amerika de wa Nihon no terebi o miru koto wa
arimasen.**

In America we never have the chance to watch

Japanese TV programs.

Another use of the noun **koto** is in the phrases **koto ga suki desu** ‘likes to’ and **koto ga kirai desu** ‘dislikes to.’ The basic meaning of these phrases, preceded always by a plain imperfect form, is ‘the fact (of doing something) is liked’ and ‘the fact (of doing something) is disliked.’ Here are some additional examples of these phrases:

人の悪口を言うことが好きなんですか。

Hito no warukuchi o iu koto ga suki na n desu ka.

Do you like to speak ill of others behind their back?

人の名前を覚えることが苦手です。

Hito no namae o oboeru koto ga nigate desu.

I’m not good at remembering people’s names.

A further use of **koto** is in the phrase **koto ga dekimasu** ‘can (do something), is able to.’ The basic meaning of this expression is something like ‘the fact (of doing something) is produced,’ but it is the usual way to say ‘can.’ If the verb is **suru**, the whole phrase is often abbreviated to **dekiru: benkyō (suru koto ga) dekiru** ‘can study,’ **yasuku (suru koto ga) dekiru** ‘can make it cheaper.’ This is not the expression used to translate the English ‘can’ that is used for ‘may’ in the sense of permission, as in ‘Father says I can go.’ That expression is translated by a special phrase discussed in note 8.6. Instead of PLAIN IMPERFECT + **koto ga dekimasu**, sometimes you will hear a noun derived from the infinitive + **ga dekimasu**; the meaning then is something more specific like ‘knows how to’ rather than the general meaning ‘is able to’ (which includes the specific meaning).

まだ泳ぐことができません。妹もまだ泳ぎができません。

Mada oyogu koto ga dekimasen. Imōto mo mada oyogi ga dekimasen.

I still cannot swim. My little sister still cannot swim either.

まだ車を運転することができません。兄もまだ車の運転ができません。

Mada kuruma o unten suru koto ga dekimasen. Animo mada kuruma no unten ga dekimasen.

I still cannot drive a car. My big brother still cannot do so either.

もう少し早く印刷することができませんか。

Mō sukoshi hayaku insatsu suru koto ga dekimasen ka.

Could you print them a bit earlier?

安くできませんか。

Yasuku dekimasen ka.

Can you make it cheaper?

4.15. つもり *tsumori*

Tsumori is a noun with the meaning ‘intention.’ Preceded by the plain imperfect (like **suru** ‘does’) and followed by some form of the copula (like **desu** ‘is’), this noun makes a phrase with the meaning ‘it is (someone’s) intention to (do something) = someone plans to do something.’

明日天気がよければ庭掃除をするつもりです。

Asu tenki ga yokereba niwa-sōji o suru tsumori desu.

If the weather is good, I plan to sweep the yard tomorrow.

いつになったら片付けるつもりですか。

Itsu ni nattara katazukeru tsumori desu ka.

When do you intend to put (them) away?

If you want to change the tense of the expression ‘it WAS somebody’s intention to do something, someone planned to do something,’ you just change the mood of the copula: **suru tsumori deshita**.

昨日は勉強するつもりでしたけれども、 天気がよ

かったので友達と公園に行きました。

Kinō wa benkyō suru tsumori deshita keredomo, tenki ga yokatta node tomodachi to kōen ni ikimashita.

I had intended to study yesterday, but the weather was nice, so I went to the park with my friends.

However, sometimes you will hear **shita tsumori desu** ‘it is my intention to have (done)’ ‘I have tried to’:

きれいに書いたつもりです。

Kirei ni kaita tsumori desu.

I have tried to write neatly.

4.16. More adverbs

You have seen some nouns used without particles to modify predicates or whole sentences in 3.2. Here are some more adverbs you will want to know, some of which cannot function as nouns:

少し **shukoshi**, a bit

少し **shochotto** bit

毎晩 **maiban**g

毎朝 **maiasa**ing

最近 **saikin**

たくさん **takusan**

非常に **hien**awfully, terribly)

通常 **taitei**

普通 **hyōsū**

時々 **tokidoki**

時々 **tabitabi**

gradually **dandan**

quite, rather **kanakana** completely, at all

very **chūjū**bun

complete **totemo**quite

相当 **sōtō**considerably

mostly **daiibu** the most part

結構 kekkō

父は朝はたいていごはんを食べますが、時々パンを食べます。

Chichi wa asa wa taitei go-han o tabemasu ga, tokidoki pan o tabemasu.

My father usually eats rice in the morning, but he sometimes eats bread.

大変お世話になりました。

Taihen o-sewa ni narimashita.

You have helped me a lot.

漢字がなかなか書けませんでした。最近書けるようになりました。

Kanji ga nakanaka kakemasen deshita ga, saikin kakeru yō ni narimashita.

I could not write kanji very easily, but I recently learned to write it.

ずいぶん上手に話せるようになりましたね。単語も相当知っているようだし。

Zuibun jōzu ni hanaseru yō ni narimashita ne. Tango mo sōtō shitte iru yō da shi.

You have learned to speak quite well, haven't you? You seem to know a lot of vocabulary.

度々申し訳ありませんが、ちょっと質問がありまして。

Tabitabi mōshiwake arimasen ga, chotto shitsumon ga arimashite.

I'm sorry to keep bothering you, but I have some questions.

普通はとても優しくていい人なのですが、怒ると結構わがままなことを言います。

Futsū wa totemo yasashikute ii hito na no desu ga, okoru to kekkō wagamama na koto o iimasu.

Normally, he is a kind and nice person, but once he

gets angry, he says quite selfish things.

4.17. More gerund expressions

The verbs **motsu** ‘holds, has, owns’ and **toru** ‘picks up, takes’ are used in several expressions meaning ‘brings, takes, carries (things)’: **motte iku** ‘holds and goes = takes’; **totte iku** ‘picks up and goes, carries (off)’; **motte kuru** ‘holds and comes = brings’; **totte kuru** ‘picks up and comes, carries (over).’ Remember, to take or bring PEOPLE requires the verb **tsureru**, as in **hito o tsurete kuru** ‘brings someone (else),’ and it is generally used only when the person being brought is socially inferior to the one bringing. Here are some more examples:

今日は雨がふりそうだから傘を持っていった方がいいよ。

Kyō wa ame ga furi sō da kara kasa o motte itta hō ga ii yo.

It looks like rain today, so it’s better to bring an umbrella.

隣の息子は夜中に友達をたくさんうちに連れて来て大騒ぎをする。

Tonari no musuko wa yonaka ni tomodachi o takusan uchi ni tsurete kite ōsawagi o suru.

My next-door neighbor’s son brings many of his friends home at night and they make a lot of noise.

あ、お箸をわすれた。ちょっと持って来て。

A, ohashi o wasureta. Chotto motte kite.

Oh, I forgot chopsticks. Could you bring them?

In English, when someone goes on an errand and returns, we mention his GOING and DOING THE ERRAND; we usually skip saying he came back: ‘He went and got his laundry.’ ‘He went and met Taro (and came back).’ ‘I’m going to go fix the car.’ ‘Let’s go buy that book.’ The Japanese usually skip the part about going, and mention DOING THE ERRAND and COMING back:

あの部屋が空いているか見て来ましょうか。

Ano heya ga aite iru ka mite kimashō ka.

Shall I go and see whether that room is unused?

悪いけど牛乳買って来てくれない？

Warui kedo gyūnyū katte kite kurenai?

Could you go and buy some milk?

4.18. Gerund (**te-form**) + いる *iru*

In Lesson 2, we found that the verb **iru (imasu)** means ‘stays, (a living being) exists (in a place)’:

私は日本にいます。 **Watashi wa Nihon ni imasu.** I
am in Japan.

In Lesson 3, we found that a gerund (**te-form**) plus the verb **iru** means ‘(somebody or something) is doing something’:

「今お母さんは何をしていますの。」

“Ima okāsan wa nani o shite iru no?”

“What is your mother doing now?”

「隣のおばさんとしやべっているよ。」

“Tonari no obasan to shabette iru yo.”

“She is chatting with the woman next-door.”

With intransitive verbs—those that do not ordinarily take a direct object, like ‘goes, comes, gets tired, gets cloudy, clears up, becomes,’ there is another meaning for GERUND + **iru**. With intransitive verbs denoting a single, specific act, like ‘gets to be something, becomes, goes, comes, changes (into),’ the most usual meaning of this construction is the present RESULT of an action that has ALREADY taken place. So **tsukarete imasu** usually doesn’t mean ‘is getting tired,’ but more often it means just ‘is tired’ (is in a state resulting from having become tired). The idea is that you got tired and then exist.

今疲れていますから後になしてください。

Ima tsukarete imasu kara ato ni shite kudasai.

I'm tired now, so could we do it later?

兄はもう結婚しています。

Ani wa mō kekkon shite imasu.

My big brother is already married.

子どもはもう寝ています。

Kodomo wa mō nete imasu.

The children are already asleep.

父は出張で今仙台に行っています。

Chichi wa shutchō de ima Sendai ni itte imasu.

My father has gone to Sendai for a business trip.

林さんは大阪に住んでいます。

Hayashi-san wa Ōsaka ni sunde imasu.

Mr. Hayashi lives in Osaka.

マイクさんはまだ来ていませんよ。

Maiku-san wa mada kite imasen yo.

Mike has not come yet.

Remember that with the construction GERUND + **iru**, the subject can be either a living being or an inanimate object. With **iru** all by itself, the subject is ordinarily limited to a living being. Here are more examples.

ご飯はもうできています。

Go-han wa mō dekite imasu.

The meal is already ready.

空が晴れていますね。

Sora ga harete imasu ne.

The sky is clear, isn't it?

今日は曇っていますね。

Kyō wa kumotte imasu ne.

It's cloudy today.

霧がかかっています。

Kiri ga kakatte imasu.

It's foggy.

雷がなっています。

Kaminari ga natte imasu.

It is thundering.

絵がかかっています。

E ga kakatte imasu.

A picture is hung.

However, with an inanimate object, GERUND + **iru** is possible only if the verb is an intransitive verb. If it is transitive, the construction GERUND + **aru** is used instead of GERUND + **iru**.

絵がかけてあります。

E ga kakete arimasu.

A picture is hung.

4.19. 遊ぶ **asobu**

The verb **asobu** means 'enjoys oneself.' It is used for English 'plays, has fun, goes on a pleasure trip, pays a (social) call, visits (for pleasure),' and other expressions. Here are some examples:

去年北海道に遊びに行きました。

Kyōnen Hokkaidō ni asobi ni ikimashita.

Last year I went to Hokkaidō.

子どもが公園で遊んでいます。

Kodomo ga kōen de asonde imasu.

The children are playing at the park.

今晚遊びに来ませんか。

Konban asobi ni kimasen ka.

Won't you come to visit (us) this evening?



[cue 04-3]

Conversation

Alison (A) is talking with Makoto (M) at her house.

A. このところ毎日雨ですね。

Koko no tokoro mainichi ame desu ne.

It has been raining every day lately.

M. ええ。日本では6月は梅雨ですから6月になると雨がよく降るんです。

Ē. Nihon de wa rokugatsu wa tsuyu desu kara rokugatsu ni naru to ame ga yoku furu n desu.

Right. June is a rainy season in Japan, so it rains very often in June.

A. ああ, そうですか。

Ā, sō desu ka.

Oh, really.

M. 毎日雨なんて嫌ですよ。

Mainichi ame nante iya desu yo ne.

It's so annoying when it rains every day, don't you think?

A. そうですか。私は雨が好きなんです。

Sō desu ka. Watashi wa ame ga suki na n desu.

Really? I love rain.

M. え? ちょっと変わっていますね。

E? Chotto kawatte imasu ne.

What? You're weird.

A. 大雨や雷は嫌いですが、しとしと雨が降るのは好きなんです。

Ōame ya kaminari wa kirai desu ga, shitoshito ame ga furu no wa suki na n desu.

I hate heavy rain, thunder, and so on, but I love quiet rain.



M. どうしてですか。

Dō shite desu ka.

Why?

A. 何か心が落ち着いて部屋の中で仕事がよくできるんです。

Nani ka kokoro ga ochitsuite heya no naka de shigoto ga yoku dekiru n desu.

I somehow feel calm and can work in the room better.

M. ああ、確かに。天気がいいと家やオフィスにいるのが嫌になりますからね。

Ā, tashika ni. Tenki ga ii to ie ya ofisu ni iru no ga iya ni narimasu kara ne.

Oh, that's right. If the weather is good, we don't feel like staying at home or at the office, that's why.

Exercises

I. Match the illustrations and phrases:



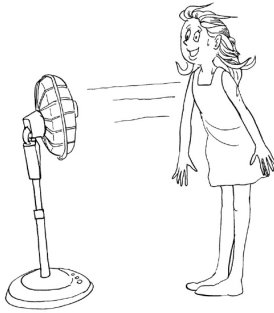
Example: さむいです
samui desu



1. _____ です
_____ **desu**



2. _____ です
_____ desu



3. _____ です
_____ desu

II. Fill in the blanks with properly inflected forms of the verbs and adjectives.

1. 何を _____ いますか。

Nani o _____ imasu ka.

What are you EATING?

2. 日本の映画を _____ ことがありますか。

Nihon no eiga o _____ koto ga arimasu ka.

Have you ever SEEN a Japanese film?

3. そこで _____ ことがありますか。

Soko de _____ koto ga arimasu ka.

Have you ever had a SWIM there?

4. 駅で横田さんに _____ つもりでした。

Eki de Yokota-san ni _____ tsumori deshita.

I intended to MEET Miss Yokota at the train station.

5. 雪が _____ からバスが遅れました。

Yuki ga _____ kara basu ga okuremashita.

Because it SNOWED, the bus was delayed.

6. 地下鉄に _____ 来ました。

Chikatetsu ni _____ kimashita.

I came here by (TAKING THE) subway.

7. お酒を _____ に行ってきます。

O-sake o _____ ni itte kimasu.

I'll go to BUY some liquor.

8. あまり早く _____ と疲れますよ。

Amari hayaku _____ to tsukaremasu yo.

If you WALK too fast, you get tired.

9. 暇 _____ と、ついテレビを見てしまいます。

Hima _____ to, tsui terebi o mite shimaimasu.

When I AM free, I tend to WATCH TV too much.

10. アメリカに _____ ときも日本語を話しました。

Amerika ni _____ toki mo Nihongo o hanashimashita.

Even when I LIVED in America, I spoke Japanese.

11. 姉はもう結婚 _____ います。

Ane wa mō kekkon _____ imasu.

My sister is married.

12. 松本さんはまだ _____ いませんか。

Matsumoto-san wa mada _____ imasen ka.

Hasn't Mr. Matsumoto COME yet?

III. Explain the difference between the two sentences in each set.

1. a. 父は東京へ行きます。 **Chichi wa Tōkyō e ikimasu.**
b. 父は東京へ行っています。 **Chichi wa Tōkyō e itte imasu.**
2. a. 晩ご飯を食べてうちに帰ります。 **Ban go-han o tabete uchi ni kaerimasu.**
b. 晩ご飯を食べにうちに帰ります。 **Ban go-han o tabe ni uchi ni kaerimasu.**
3. a. 香港に行くことがあります。 **Honkon ni iku koto ga arimasu.**
b. 香港に行ったことがあります。 **Honkon ni itta koto ga arimasu.**
4. a. きれいに書くつもりでした。 **Kirei ni kaku tsumori deshita.**
b. きれいに書いたつもりです。 **Kirei ni kaita tsumori desu.**
5. a. カメラを壊しました。 **Kamera o kowashimashita.**
b. カメラが壊れました。 **Kamera ga koware mashita.**

Answers:

I 1. あたたかい **ataakai** 2. あつい **atsui** 3. すずしい **suzushii**

II 1. 食べて **tabete** 2. 見た **mita** 3. 泳ぐ **oyogu** 4. 会う **au** 5. 降った **futta** 6. 乗って **notte** 7. 買い **kai** 8. 歩く **aruku** 9. だ **da** 10. 住んでいた **sunde ita** 11. して **shite** 12. 来て **kite**

III 1. a. My father will go to Tokyo. b. My father has gone to Tokyo. 2. a. I'll eat dinner here, and then go home. b. I'll go home to eat dinner. 3. a. I sometimes go to Hong Kong. b. I have been to Hong Kong. 4. a. I intended to write neatly. b. I think I wrote neatly. 5. a. I broke the camera. b. The camera broke down.



LESSON 5

Because It's for Business

これはビジネスだから **Kore wa Bijinesu Dakara**

In this lesson, you will learn words and phrases useful in a business context in Japan. You will also learn a variety of clauses that can be used as a modifier for a noun or a modifier for the main sentence.





[cue 05-1]

Basic Sentences

あそこに立っている人はパートの山本さんです。

Asoko ni tatte iru hito wa pāto no Yamamoto-san desu.

The person who is standing over there is Ms. Yamamoto, a part-time employee.

昨日ここへ来たのはだれですか。

Kinō koko e kita no wa dare desu ka.

Who is the one who came here yesterday?

コストの高いハードウェアは作れません。

Kosuto no takai hādouea wa tsukuremasen.

We cannot manufacture high-cost hardware.

エクセルを使うのが上手な人を探しています。

Ekuseru o tsukau no ga jōzu na hito o sagashite imasu.

I'm looking for someone who is skilled at using Excel.

英語のできる社員は3人います。

Eigo no dekiru shain wa san-nin imasu.

We have three employees who can speak English.

6 「あの人は知っていましたか。」

“Sho to iwa kashite imāsu ka.”

“Do you know that person?”

あそこの会社の株は高くなるでしょう。

Asoko no kaisha no kabu wa takaku naru deshō.

The stock value of that company will probably go up.

円高なのでアメリカで買った方がいいですよ。

Endaka na no de Amerika de katta hō ga ii desu yo.

The (Japanese) yen is strong, so it's better to buy it in the U.S.

病気なのに出勤するんですか。

Byōki na no ni shukkin suru n desu ka.

Are you going to work although you are sick?

店で売らないでネットで売るんですか。

Mise de uranai de netto de uru n desu ka.

Instead of selling them at the store, are we selling them online?

朝ごはんを食べないで出勤するんですか。

Asa go-han o tabenai de shukkin suru n desu ka.

Are you going to go to work without eating breakfast?

確認せずにメールを送ってしまいました。

Kakunin sezu ni mēru o okutte shimaimashita.

I sent the email without checking it.

18. ラウンさんは午後1時に成田に着くはずですよ。

Buraun-san wa gogo ichi-ji ni Narita ni tsuku hazu desu.

Mr. Brown is supposed to arrive at Narita at 1 p.m.

外国語は若いうちに習った方がいいですよ。

Gaikokugo wa wakai uchi ni naratta hō ga ii desu yo.

It's better to learn a foreign language while you are young.

15. この会社に勤める前は何かをしていましたか。

Kono kaisha ni tsutomeru mae wa nani o shite imashita ka.

What were you doing before you started to work for this company?

16. 仕事が終わった後どうするつもりですか。」

“Shigoto o wattawakara dodesu chotto ii desu ka.”

“Do you live just after you are done with your work?”

昨日は遅くまで仕事をしました。

Kinō wa osoku made shigoto o shimashita.

I worked until late yesterday.

Meishi (Business Cards)

Japanese business people and professionals almost always exchange their business cards when they introduce themselves. A Japanese business card, called **meishi** in Japanese, can be either horizontal or vertical and includes one's affiliation, title, and contact information. It is very important to handle a business card very respectfully when you exchange cards. When presenting your business card to someone, hand it over so that it faces him/her. When receiving a business card from someone, use both hands to accept it and bow slightly. Read the information on it

carefully, and do not put it away right away. If you are sitting, leave it on the table in front of you while you are talking with the person.



[cue 05-2]

Basic Vocabulary

BUSINESS INSTITUTIONS

会社 **kaisha** firm

店 **mise**

事務所 **jimusho**

給料 **kyūryō**

時給 **jikyū**

ボーナス **bōnasu**

PEOPLE

社員 **shain** company, employee

社員 **seishain** employee

派遣社員 **yakenshain** a temporary personnel service

パート **pāto** (mostly for housewives)

パート **pāto** (mostly for students and young people)

office workers (office lady)
boss jōshi
manager ヤー manējā
assistant アシスタント ashisutanto
company president
社長 shachō
秘書 hisho

FUNCTIONS

accountant 会計士 kaikeishi
programmer プログラムナー puroguramā
consultant コンサルタント konsarutanto
entrepreneur エンタープライゼー (起業家) antorepurenā (kigyōka)
sales 営業 eigyō
producer プロデューサー seisan
marketing マーケティング māketingu
promotion プロモーション puromōshon
advertisement 広告 kōkoku
export 輸出 yushutsu
import 輸入 yunyū

DOCUMENTS AND FILES

request 請求書 seikyūsho
receipt 領収書 ryōshūsho
Power Point プワーポイント pawāpointo
Excel エクセル ekuseru
document 書類 shorui or bunsho
file ファイル fairu

ACTIONS

is needed, wanted 必要です irimasu
borrows 借ります kariru/karimasu

lends・貸します **kasu/kashimasu**
 finds・見つけます **mitsukeru/mitsukemasu**
 searches・探します **sagasu/sagashimasu**
 checks up on・調べます **shiraberu/shirabemasu**
 uses・使います **tsukau/tsukaimasu**
 makes, manufactures・作ります **tsukuru/tsukurimasu**
 sells・売ります **uru/urimasu**
 forgets・忘れます **wasureru/wasuremasu**
 resigns, ceases doing sth・辞めます (doing something)
 employs・雇います **yatou/yatoimasu**
 analyzes・分析します **bunseki suru/bunseki shimasu**
 produces・生産します **seisan suru/seisan shimasu**

ADJECTIVES & ADJECTIVAL NOUNS

is much, are many **isogashii**
 is little, small **sukufai**
 is busy **isogashii**
 (暇) / free **hima (da)**sy

BUSINESS TRIP

新幹線 **shinkansen**
 hotel **hoteru**
 business hotel **bijinesu hoteru**
 capsule hotel **kapuseru hoteru**

POLITE PHRASES AT THE OFFICE

Thank you for your kindness always./Thank you for your
 いつもありがとうございます。
 (いつも) **itsu mo arigatou orimasu.**
 (忙) 中です。
 Gaishutsu-chū de gozaimasu.
 (会議) 中です。
 Kaigi-chū de gozaimasu.

電話中 on the phone now.

Denwa-chū de gozaimasu.

Thank you in advance. (lit., Please take care of my matter

~~for~~ **Yoroshiku o-negai itashimasu.**

Sorry, but I have to get going. Bye. (lit., Ahead.)

Thank you for your efforts. (lit., Your tiredness.)

Thank you for your efforts. (lit., Your efforts.)

Structure Notes

5.1. Modifiers

In English one noun can modify (restrict the meaning) of another noun just by standing next to it: ‘Business Action Plan Objective; Supply Closet Restocking List.’ In Japanese, when one noun modifies another, the two are usually connected by the particle **no**. In the case of book titles or names of organizations and institutions, frequently several nouns may be combined to make a COMPOUND NOUN:

基本日本語文法

Kihon-Nihongo-Bunpō

Basic Japanese Language Grammar

日本貿易株式会社

Nippon-Bōeki-Kabushiki-Gaisha

The Japan Trade Co., Inc.

But these are special cases. Ordinarily, modifying nouns are followed by **no**:

日本語の辞書 **Nihongo no jisho**

an American businessman **America no bijinesuman**

昨日の会議 **kinō no kaigi**

私のPCソコン **watashi no pasokon**

大阪市場 **Osaka no itakōjō**

The last noun is often dropped if it is not a person and is understood in the context, as below:

これは日本語の辞書です。あれは中国語の です。

Kore wa Nihongo no jisho desu. Are wa Chūgokugo no desu.

This is a Japanese dictionary. That one is a Chinese one.

Now, in English when a verb or verb phrase modifies a noun, it FOLLOWS the noun and is introduced by a word like *who*, *which*, *that*, and *when*, as in ‘the man who came yesterday; the book, which is on the table; the movie that I saw; that time when we were in Osaka.’ Notice that sometimes the introductory word may be omitted in English: ‘the movie I saw, that time we went to Osaka.’ Japanese verbs and verb phrases “precede” the noun they modify and have no introductory word or linking particle:

昨日ここへ来た人

kinō koko e kita hito

the person who came here yesterday

机の上にある書類

tsukue no ue ni aru shorui

the documents that are on the desk

去年行ったところ

kyonen itta tokoro

the place I went last year

大阪にいた時

Ōsaka ni ita toki

the time we were in Osaka

You have already had expressions like:

行ないふ **iku itsumori**

the act of doing something (the act of doing something; doing something)

~~the fact of thinking~~
the fact of thinking (the occasion for me to be there)

These are examples of modifier expressions.

The modifying expression preceding a noun phrase may be very short, or it may be quite long. It will always make a complete sentence by itself except that the predicate part is in the plain form, and you would want to change this to the polite form to use as a complete sentence. Notice that the meaning of the juxtaposition between the modifying verb and the noun may be either that of a “subject” or an “object” relationship:

~~the person who~~
the person who saw (it)
~~the person~~
the person (someone) saw

The relationship is usually made clear by the particles in the rest of the clause:

~~the person who saw~~
the person who saw **some eiga o mita hito**
~~the person~~
the person **Iwata kushi ga mita hito**

The subject of a modifying clause is never followed by **wa**—that would make it the topic for the entire sentence, not just the modifying clause. It is marked either by **ga** (emphatic) or by **no** (non-emphatic). If you like, you may think of **no** as replacing the particle **wa** in modifying clauses:

あの人はその映画を見ました。
Ano hito wa sono eiga o mimashita.
He saw THAT MOVIE.

あの人の見た映画はそれです。
Ano hito no mita eiga wa sore desu.
THE MOVIE (that) he saw is that one.

あの人がその映画を見ました。
Ano hito ga sono eiga o mimashita.
HE saw that movie.

あの人が見た映画はそれです。

Ano hito ga mita eiga wa sore desu.

The movie (that) HE saw is that one.

In other words, only sentences have topics; clauses have subjects (or objects). The particle used for the non-emphatic subject of a clause is **no**; the particle used for the emphatic subject is **ga**. If the modifying clause is quite long and the subject is separated from the verb by a number of words, the emphatic subject particle **ga** is usually used.

私の行ったゴルフ場は安いところです。

Watashi no itta gorufujō wa yasui tokoro desu.

The golf course I went to is an inexpensive place.

私に加藤部長と先週行ったゴルフ場は結構よかったです。

Watashi ga Katō buchō to senshū itta gorufujō wa kekkō yokatta desu.

The golf course where I went last week with Mr. Kato, the division manager, was quite good.

When you hear long modifier clauses in actual conversation, you may be confused as to the breaking point where the modifier stops and the part modified begins. Listen for the “plain” imperfect and perfect forms, forms like **suru**, **shita**; **iku**, **itta**; **kuru**, **kita**; **taberu**, **tabeta**: unless followed by a particle like **keredomo** or **kara**, they probably modify the word or phrase that follows. At the breaking point, stick in a ‘which,’ and then make mental switch of the two parts around to the usual English order. This is just a first-aid measure, of course. After you get used to modifier clauses, you will be putting them in quite naturally like a Japanese person, without worrying about the fact that in English you would reverse the order. Remember: everything up to the breaking point modifies the following noun expression. Notice the breaking points (indicated by a forward slash) in the following examples. But try to avoid pausing: the BREAKING POINT is in your head, not on your tongue.

データ入力とプログラミングのできる/方を募集しています。

Dēta nyūryoku to puroguramingu no dekiru/kata o boshū shite imasu.

We are looking for someone who can do data inputting and programming.

料理になれていない人が作った/食べ物はあまり食べたくない。

Ryōri ni narete inai hito ga tsukutta/tabemono wa amari tabetaku nai.

I don't want to eat dishes prepared by someone who is not used to cooking.

5.2. Modifier clauses made with adjectives

Recall that the full meaning of real adjectives in Japanese is not just 'good, bad, white, red' and the like but 'IS good, IS bad, IS white, IS red' etc.:

~~because it is good~~
~~it was bad, but~~ **warukatta keredomo**
~~it is nice and white~~ **irokute ii kara**

Just as verbs can have a subject in Japanese, so can adjectives. And in modifier clauses, the particle that follows the subject is either **ga** (emphatic) or **no** (non-emphatic):

天候が悪いところ
tenkō ga warui tokoro
a place where the WEATHER'S bad

天候の悪いところ
tenkō no warui tokoro
a place where the weather's BAD

Here are some additional examples of adjectives in sentences:

プログラミングの経験のない人は採用しません。

Puroguramingu no keiken no nai hito wa saiyo shimasen.

We are not going to hire people who do not have programming experience.

店は人の多いところにある方がいいです。

Mise wa hito no ōi tokoro ni aru hō ga ii desu.

As for stores, it's better for them to be in a location (that is) heavily trafficked.

カプセル・ホテルは会社が多くて、駅に近いところに沢山あります。

Kapuseru hoteru wa kaisha ga ōkute, eki ni chikai tokoro ni takusan arimasu.

Capsule hotels are located where there are lots of companies and close to a train station.



5.3. Modifier clauses made with a copula

Something special happens when a copula clause, like **sakka desu** ‘he is a writer,’ is used as a modifier clause. To mean ‘my friend, who is a writer,’ they do not say **sakka da tomodachi** but **sakka no tomodachi**. Now, this **no** is not the particle that shows that one noun modifies another—it isn’t ‘a writer’s friend,’ it is ‘my friend, WHO IS a writer.’ This **no** is a special form of the copula, an alternant, or the alternate form, of the word **da** that occurs whenever a copular clause is put in the modifier position before a noun phrase. You can see the difference between the

particle **no** and the copula-alternant **no** (= **da**) here:

作家の友達 ~~Sakka~~ **no** tomodachi

作家の友達 ~~Sakka~~ **no** tomodachi

Since the two expressions sound just alike, you have to tell from the context or situation which **no** it is you are hearing. Most of the time, there is little doubt. Here are additional examples:

母親が60歳以上の学生は全体の30%だった。

Hahaoya ga rokujus-sai ijō no gakusei wa zentai no sanjūp-pāsento datta.

The students whose mothers are over sixty years old constituted 30 percent of entire student body.

うちの会社には出身が九州の男性が3人いる。

Uchi no kaisha ni wa shushin ga Kyūshū no dansei ga san-nin iru.

There are three men whose birthplace is Kyushu in our company.

5.4. Modifier clauses made with adjectival nouns

In the previous section, you have seen that **no** is an alternant of **da**. However, **no** is not the only alternant of **da**. There is also an alternant **na** that occurs after adjectival nouns. Adjectival nouns are a special sort of nouns that do not often occur before particles like **wa**, **ga**, **o** but occur before some form of the copula (**desu**, **da**, **na**) or before the particle **ni**. When these adjectival noun clauses, like **kirei desu** ‘is pretty,’ occur in modifier position, the expected form **da** occurs in the alternant form of **na** as in:

きれいな女の人

kirei na onna no hito

women WHO ARE pretty, or pretty women

In citing nouns it is convenient to note the ones that are

adjectival nouns by adding in parentheses (**na**). Here are some common ones:

~~foot, (for) liaka~~ (**na**)
~~strong, rough~~ (**na**)
~~pretty, nice~~ (**na**)
~~humble~~ (**na**) **shitsurei** (**na**)
~~polite~~ (**na**) **teinei** (**na**)
~~liked, liked~~ (**na**)
~~greatly (liked)~~ **daisuki** (**na**)
~~terrific, terrible~~ (**na**) **ite a...**
~~disliked, disliked~~ (**na**)
~~greatly (disliked)~~ **kirai** (**na**)
~~excellent~~ **suteki** (**na**)
~~comfortable~~ (**na**)
~~splendid, rippling~~ (**na**)
~~quiet~~ (**na**) **shizuka** (**na**)
~~excellent~~ **kenki** (**na**) **dry**
~~healthy~~ **genki** (**na**) **spited**
~~skillful~~ **gōzu** (**na**)
~~friendly~~ **benri** (**na**)
~~unskillful~~ **heta** (**na**)
~~inconvenient~~ (**na**)
~~famous~~ **yūmei** (**na**)
~~pleasant~~ (**na**)
~~lively, bustling~~ **gigaya** (**na**)
~~queer~~ **keshi** (**na**)
~~safe~~ (**na**) **daijōbu** (**na**)

Most nouns belong to the ordinary class that have **no** for the copula alternant (**byōki no hito**, **puroguramā no Tanaka-san**). Some nouns belong to either class: ordinary **no** or adjectival nouns. An example is **iroiro**: you can say either **iroiro no** or **iroiro na** (commonly pronounced **iron-na**) to mean ‘various, of various sorts’:

~~various~~ **iroiro** **peskatachi**
~~various~~ **iroiro** **peskatachi**

There are a few adjectives that may have **na** instead of the ending **i** when placed before a noun.

大きい船屋 ~~大なる船~~ 部屋
ōkīshīme ya ōkichāna heya
a big shipom

When you have two adjectival nouns modifying the same noun phrase, the first takes the gerund of the copula **de** ‘is and’: **shizuka de kirei na tokoro** ‘a place that is quiet and (is) pretty.’

Here are some examples of adjectival nouns in sentences:

大変なことをしてしまいました。
Taihen na koto o shite shimaimashita.
He did something terrible.

この仕事は大変ですよ。
Kono shigoto wa taihen desu yo.
This job is tough.

パソコン操作が得意な人は有利です。
Pasokon sōsa ga tokui na hito wa yūri desu.
Those who are good at using computers will have some advantage.

きれいでやさしい人は好かれます。
Kirei de yasashii hito wa sukaremasu.
Those who are pretty and kind are liked by others.

働くのが嫌いな人は雇いません。
Hataraku no ga kirai na hito wa yatoimasen.
We will not hire those who do not like to work.

Before the verb **naru** ‘becomes,’ the particle **ni** occurs just as after any other noun:

病気になりました。
Byōki ni narimashita.
He got sick.

元気になりました。

Genki ni narimashita.

He got his health back.

With other verbs, the particle **ni** makes the meaning of the adjectival noun ‘in such a manner’:

静かにしてください。

Shizuka ni shite kudasai.

Please be quiet (behave in a quiet way).

毎日元気にしています。

Mainichi genki ni shite imasu.

I’m in good spirits every day (behave in a good-spirited manner).

あの人は英語を上手に話しますね。

Ano hito wa Eigo o jōzu ni hanashimasu ne.

That person speaks English well.

5.5. The noun の *no*

You have seen two kinds of **no**: the particle and the copula-alternant. There is yet a third kind of **no** that is a noun. This noun has two somewhat different meanings, ‘one WHO’ and ‘fact THAT.’ In some expressions this word is used much like **hito** ‘person’:

あそこに座っているのはだれですか。

(or あそこに座っている人はだれですか。)

Asoko ni suwatte iru no wa dare desu ka.

(or **Asoko ni suwatte iru hito wa dare desu ka.**)

Who is the person who is sitting over there?

In some expressions, the noun **no** is used like **koto** ‘fact’:

アメリカの映画を見るのが好きです。

(or アメリカの映画を見るのが好きです。)

Amerika no eiga o miru no ga suki desu.

(or **Amerika no eiga o miru koto ga suki desu.**)

I like to see American movies.

5.6. ...の(ん)です ...**no (n) desu**

The noun **no** followed by the copula makes a special expression meaning ‘it is a fact that...,’ but it is not easily translated in English. This is a very common formula in Japanese: it may be tacked on at the end of any sentence (with the verb, adjective, or copula in either plain imperfect or plain perfect), giving an additional refinement. When **no desu** is pronounced softly with a contraction, as in **n desu**, it somewhat softens the directness of the statement, elicits the listener’s response and makes the dialog more interactive.

「実は来月結婚するんです。」

~~It is a fact that I will get married next month.~~
“**It is a fact that I will get married next month.**”

~~What? I'm getting~~
“**What? I'm getting**” married next month.”

N(o) desu is somewhat more common when the sentence is not completed but left dangling with a particle like **kedo... (ga...)** ‘but...’ or **kara... ‘so...’**

「あ、うすみませたバコはこまるんですけど。」

~~Ansukokasentabako wa komaru n desu kedo.~~
“**Ansukokasentabako wa komaru n desu kedo.**”

~~Oh, smoking here is a bit of problem, but....~~
“**Oh, smoking here is a bit of problem, but....**”

「何ですかお願いがあるんですが。」

~~What is it?~~
“**What is it?**” or to ask, but...”

If uttered with a firm intonation, with or without the contraction, **no desu** makes the expression somewhat more formal.

「毎日3時間は練習するのです。いいですね。」

~~Maichichi san-jikan wa renshū suru no desu.~~
“**Maichichi san-jikan wa renshū suru no desu.**”

“**Yes,**” must practice (at least) for three hours every day.”

「~~それを~~どこどこに書いてあるのですか。」

“~~Sono~~ **ma koto doko ni kaite aru no desu ka.**”

“~~Well,~~ a ‘thing, where is it written?’”

Notice the use of the copula forms **datta** and **na** (= **da**). Before the noun **no**, the plain imperfect copula appears in the form **na** regardless of whether preceded by an ordinary noun or an adjectival noun:

前はパートだったんですが、今は正社員なんです。

Mae wa pāto datta n desu ga, ima wa seishain na n desu.

I was a part-time worker but am a full-time employee now.

父はデパートの地下が好きなんです。

Chichi wa depāto no chika ga suki na n desu.

My father loves the basement of a department store.

5.7. Verb + でしょう *deshō*

Many people go a step further and drop the **no** completely from the expressions discussed above: **Doko e iku desu ka?** ‘Where’s he going?’, **Otearai ni itta desu** ‘He went to the men’s room.’ As a general thing, this usage is frowned upon by speakers of Standard Japanese and should perhaps be avoided by the student. However, certain forms that have become a part of Standard Japanese originated in this dropping of the **no**: the polite forms of the adjective **atarashii desu**, **ii desu** came from the forms **atarashii no desu**, **ii no desu**. Some older Japanese still consider it poor style to say **atarashii desu**, **ii desu**, preferring at least **atarashii n desu**, **ii n desu**—but most people use the forms without even the **n** constantly, so that they are now a part of Standard Japanese. This helps explain the existence of two polite forms for the perfect adjective at one point: **ii deshita** and **yokatta desu**. They come from the expressions **ii no deshita** ‘it

was a fact that it is good' and **yokatta no desu** 'it is a fact that it was good.' The latter type of phrase, **yokatta desu**, is the currently accepted form.

In a similar way, expressions consisting of imperfect or perfect adjectives plus **no deshō** 'will probably be the fact that...; must be...' created the now Standard forms **ii deshō** 'it must be good' (compare **Tanaka-san deshō** 'It must be Mr. Tanaka') and **yokatta deshō** 'it must have been good' (compare **Tanaka-san datta no deshō** 'it must have been Mr. Tanaka').

There already existed a polite tentative for verbs: **ikimashō**, **hanashimashō**, **asobimashō**. These polite tentatives once had the meaning 'will probably do' just as the polite copula **deshō** still has the meaning 'will probably be.' Sometimes the tentatives of verbs are still used with the 'probably' meaning. For example, in modern writings you will see **arō** (= **aru darō**), **narō** (= **naru darō**), **dekiyō** (= **dekiru darō**), **ieyō** (= **ieru darō** 'probably can say') and also tentative adjectives in **-karō** (= **-i darō**) such as **yokarō** (= **ii darō**) and **nakarō** (= **nai darō**).

For the meaning 'probably,' a plain form of the verb is used, either imperfect or perfect, depending on the meaning, followed by the tentative copula **deshō** (from **no deshō** 'it's probably a fact that' with the **no** dropped). This is quite standard usage and often has the flavor of English 'must (be), I bet that..., I'll bet..., ' Sometimes **kitto** or **tabun** 'no doubt, probably' is added, often at the very beginning of the sentence, just to emphasize the probability. For example:

「これから株価が上がるでしょう。」

"Kore kara kabuka ga agaru deshō."

"I guess the stock will go up from now on."

「たぶんそうでしょう。」

"Tabun sō deshō."

"It will probably do so."

5.8. ...かね ...*ka ne*

The combination of the final particles **ka** and **ne** means something like ‘I wonder’ or ‘is it, do you think.’ It is often preceded by a tentative expression:

この企画は成功するでしょうかね。

Kono kikaku wa seikō suru deshō ka ne.

I wonder whether this project will be successful.

どうして失敗したんでしょうかね。

Dōshite shippai shita n deshō ka ne.

I wonder why it failed.

「たぶんエンジンが悪かったんでしょう。」

“Tabun enjin ga warukatta n deshō.”

“I guess the engine was bad.”

「そうでしょうかね。」

“Sō deshō ka ne.”

“I wonder whether it is the case.”

5.9. ので *no de*

The expression VERB (or ADJECTIVE or COPULA) + **no de** ‘it being a fact that; it is a fact that... and’ has a special meaning of ‘because’ or ‘since.’ This is similar to the meaning of **kara**. In most places **no de** and **kara** seem interchangeable, but there is a slight difference of meaning: **no de** emphasizes the “reason,” **kara** emphasizes the “result”:

去年は病気でたくさん仕事を休んだので、休暇をとることができませんでした。

Kyonen wa byōki de takusan shigoto o yasunda no de, kyūka o toru koto ga dekimasen deshita.

Because I took many days off due to sickness last year, I could not take vacation.

去年は病気でたくさん休んだから、休暇をとることができませんでした。

Kyonen wa byōki de takusan yasunda kara, kyūka o

toru koto ga dekimasen deshita.

I took many days off due to sickness last year, so I could not take vacation.

As in the case of **n(o) desu** discussed in this lesson, the plain imperfect copula appears in the form **na** when followed by **no de**. Here are some additional examples:

私はパートなので週に３日しか働きません。

Watashi wa pāto na no de, shū ni mikka shika hatarakimasen.

Because I'm a part-time employee, I work only three days per week.

あの人はきれいなのでモデルにもなれるでしょう。

Ano hito wa kirei na no de moderu ni mo nareru deshō.

That person is pretty, so she can also be a model.

来月から働くのでスーツを買わなくてははいけません。

Raigetsu kara hataraku no de sūtsu o kawanakute wa ikemasen.

Because I'll start working beginning next month, I need to buy a suit.

ここは禁煙なのでおタバコはご遠慮願います。

Koko wa kin'en na no de otabako wa goenryo negaimasu.

Because it is a non-smoking area, please refrain from smoking.

5.10. のに **no ni**

After a verb in the imperfect mood, the expression **no ni**, literally 'to the fact that, at the fact that,' has two different meanings: 'in the process of doing, for the purpose of doing, in order to do' and 'in spite of the fact that...' The two meanings

are distinguished by context. Often the particle **wa** follows **no ni** in the first meaning, and the whole expression is frequently followed by a phrase indicating something is necessary ('in the process of doing something'). Here are some examples of the first meaning 'in the process of':

日本語を勉強するのに(は)いい本が要ります。

Nihongo o benkyō suru no ni (wa) ii hon ga irimasu.

We need a good book in order to study Japanese.

アパートを借りるのに5万円かかります。

Apāto o kariru no ni goman-en kakarimasu.

To rent an apartment costs 50,000 yen.

Here are some examples of the second meaning 'in spite of the fact that':

勉強したのに，いい成績がもらえませんでした。

Benkyō shita no ni, ii seiseki ga moraemasen deshita.

Although I studied, I could not get a good grade.

まずいのに食べるんですか。

Mazui no ni taberu n desu ka.

Are you going to eat it even though it is not delicious?

As in the case of **n(o) desu** discussed in this lesson, the plain imperfect copula appears in the form **na** when followed by **no ni**:

まだ学生なのに高い車を使い回しているんです。

Mada gakusei na no ni takai kuruma o nori-mawashite iru n desu.

Although he is still a student, he drives an expensive car.

どうして好きなのに好きだって言えないんですか。

Dōshite suki na no ni suki datte ienai n desu ka.

Why can't you say you love her although you love

her?

The first meaning of **no ni** ‘in the process of, for the purpose of, with the aim of’ is usually expressed by the noun **tame** ‘sake,’ which is often followed by **ni** and sometimes by **wa** or **ni wa**. The expression **tame (ni) (wa)** may be preceded by a plain imperfect verb form or by a NOUN + **no**:

日本語を勉強するためにはいい本が要ります。

Nihongo o benkyō suru tame ni wa ii hon ga irimasu.

We need a good book for studying Japanese.

日本語の勉強のためにいい本が要ります。

Nihongo no benkyō no tame ni ii hon ga irimasu.

We need a good book for the study of Japanese.

何のために大阪に行くんですか。

Nan no tame ni Ōsaka ni iku n desu ka.

Why are you going to Osaka?

The word **tame** is also used after a modifying phrase by many speakers as a virtual equivalent of **kara** ‘because’:

地震があつたため電車が遅れた。

Jishin ga atta tame densha ga okureta.

The train was delayed due to an earthquake.

英語ができないため困りました。

Eigo ga dekinai tame komarimashita.

I had difficulties because I couldn’t speak English.

5.11. Plain negative ...ない ...*nai*

The polite negative ends in **-masen** for verbs, as in **hanashimasen** and **ikimasen**, and consists of a special construction for the copula **ja arimasen**, and for adjectives, infinitive (**-ku**) + **arimasen**.

The plain negative of ‘exists’ is a completely different word, the adjective **nai** ‘is non-existent.’ The plain negative of the

copula is **ja nai**; of adjectives it is **ku nai**. And, in colloquial usage, **(ja) nai desu** is often used for **(ja) arimasen**, **ku nai desu** for **ku arimasen**. The plain negative of every other verb is an adjective made by adding the ending **-(a)nai** to the stem of the verb: add **-nai** to the consonant-ending stem; add **-nai** to the vowel-ending stem.

	Plain Affirmative (Imperfect)
Verb	tabe-na-i
Adjective	na-i
Consonant Verbs	koi-na-i
	noke-na-i
	kawana-i
	hane-na-i
	kake-na-i
	oyog-na-i
	yob-na-i
	yomu-na-i
	shin-na-i
Irregular Verbs	ko-na-i
	shi-na-i

Notice how the ‘disappearing’ **w** disappears in forms like **kau** but does not disappear in forms like **kawana-i**. Also notice the ‘appearing’ **s** appears in forms like **katsu** but not in forms like **katanai**. Each of the negative verbs is conjugated like any other adjective—for example the adjective **nai** ‘is non-existent’ or **akai** ‘is red’:

	Imperfect	Perfect	Gerund	Infinitive
Adjective	aka-i	aka-katta	aka-kute	aka-ku
Nai	na-i	na-katta	na-kute	na-ku
Vowel Verb	tabe-na-i	tabe-nakatta	tabe-na-kute	tabe-na-ku
Consonant Verb	kaw-ana-i	kaw-ana-katta	kaw-ana-kute	kaw-ana-ku
Irregular Verb	ko-na-i	ko-na-katta	ko-na-kute	ko-na-ku
	shi-na-i	shi-na-katta	shi-na-kute	shi-na-ku

あの製品はあまり売れなかったでしょう。
Ano seihin wa amari urenakatta deshō.
I guess that product did not sell very well.

父が帰って来なくて困っています。

Chichi ga kaette konakute komatte imasu.

I'm troubled because my father hasn't come home.

部長は最近あまりしゃべらなくなりました。

Buchō wa saikin amari shaberanaku narimashita.

The division manager stopped speaking lately.

5.12. Negative infinitive ...ず ...zu

In addition to the regular negative infinitive as in **shaberanaku naru** 'gets so he doesn't talk' in the above example, there is a derived adjectival noun with similar meaning but different uses. This form has the ending **-azu**, after a consonant-ending stem, **-zu** after a vowel-ending stem.

	Meaning	Plain Affirmative (Imperfect)	Negative Infinitive with -ku	Negative Infinitive with -(a)zu
Vowel Verbs	eats	tabe-ru	tabe-naku	tabe-zu
	sees	mi-ru	mi-naku	mi-zu
Consonant Verbs	wins	kats-u	kat-anaku	kat-azu
	rides	nor-u	nor-anaku	nor-azu
	buys	ka-u	kaw-anaku	kaw-azu
	speaks	hanas-u	hanas-anaku	hanas-azu
	writes	kak-u	kak-anaku	kak-azu
	swims	oyog-u	oyog-anaku	oyog-azu
	calls	yob-u	yob-anaku	yob-azu
	reads	yom-u	yom-anaku	yom-azu
	dies	shin-u	shin-anaku	shin-azu
Irregular Verbs	comes	ku-ru	ko-naku	ko-zu
	does	su-ru	shi-naku	se-zu

Notice that the irregular verbs are **ko-zu** 'not coming' and **se-zu** 'not doing': **ko-zu** is similar in its irregular vowel to **ko-nai**, but **se-zu** is different from **shi-nai**. The appropriate form for **nai** is **arazu**, but it is not used in speech. The **-(a)zu** form is usually limited to a set expression with the particle **ni** meaning either 'instead of doing' or 'without doing,' depending on the context. Here are some examples where **-(a)zu ni** means 'instead':

大阪に行かずに岡山に行った。

Ōsaka ni ikazu ni Okayama ni itta.

Instead of going to Osaka, he went to Okayama.

クレジットカードを使わずに現金で払います。

Kurejitto kâdo o tsukawazu ni genkin de haraimasu.

Instead of using my credit card, I pay by cash.

(Another way to say ‘instead’ is to use two full sentences, with the second beginning **sono kawari (ni)** ‘instead of that,’ as in **Hon wa kawanakatta desu. Sono kawari ni zasshi o kaimashita.** ‘He didn’t buy books; instead, he bought magazines.’)

Here are some examples where **-(a)zu ni** means ‘without’:

朝ごはんを食べずに家を出た。

Asa go-han o tabezu ni ie o deta.

He left home without having breakfast.

よく確認せずに請求書を送ってしまった。

Yoku kakunin sezu ni seikyûsho o okutte shimatta.

Without checking it carefully, I mailed out the bill.

5.13. Imperfect negative + **de ...ないで ...nai de**

Instead of using **-(a)zu ni** to say ‘instead of doing’ or ‘without doing,’ you can use the plain imperfect negative **-(a)nai** + the copula gerund **de** ‘being.’ This construction is also sometimes used with **kudasai** in direct negative requests: **Amari hanasanai de kudasai** ‘Please don’t talk too much.’

大阪に行かないで岡山に行った。

Ôsaka ni ikanai de Okayama ni itta.

Instead of going to Osaka, he went to Okayama.

朝ごはんを食べないで急いで家を出た。

Asa go-han o tabenai de isoide ie o deta.

He left home in a rush without having breakfast.

ここでタバコを吸わないでください。

Koko de tabako o suwanai de kudasai.

Please do not smoke here.

運転しなくてはいけないのでお酒を飲まないで
きます。

**Unten shinakute wa ikenai no de o-sake o nomanai
de okimasu.**

As I have to drive, I won't drink (so I can drive
later).

5.14. はず *hazu*

Hazu is a NOUN meaning something like NORMAL EXPECTATION or OBJECTIVE CONCLUSION. Being preceded by a modifier clause and followed by some form of the copula, it means 'is (supposed) to, is expected to,' but not 'supposed to' in the sense of obligation 'ought to.'

Note the **hazu** expresses what is generally expected, and usually refers to what the speaker expects of "other" people or things; it is sometimes close to ...**ni chigai nai** 'there is no doubt that.' To make the negative, you usually say **hazu wa nai** (rather than **hazu ja nai**); or, you can make the preceding verb negative: **Tanaka-san wa kuru hazu wa arimasen**, or ...**konai hazu desu** 'Mr. Tanaka surely won't come.' Also note that the predicates before **hazu** are in the prenominal form (the form required when placed before a noun) because **hazu** is a noun.

田中さんはしっかりしていますから、きっと確認
をとったはずです。

**Tanaka-san wa shikkari shite imasu kara, kitto
kakunin o totta hazu desu.**

Mr. Tanaka is very reliable, so he must have
checked it.

あの人はお金をもらおうとすぐ使うから、お金があ
るはずがありません。

**Ano hito wa o-kane o morau to sugu tsukau kara, o-
kane ga aru hazu ga arimasen.**

That person uses up all the money he has (each
time), so there is no way for him to have money
(now).

あの人は生活保護を受けているから収入は高くないはずです。

Ano hito wa seikatsu hogo o ukete iru kara shūnyū wa takaku nai hazu desu.

He is on social welfare, so his income cannot be high.

今、1ドルは110円のはずです。

Ima, ichi-doru wa hyaku-jū-en no hazu desu.

I suppose a dollar is 110 yen now.

伊藤さんはよく居酒屋に行きますから、お酒が好きなはずです。

Itō-san wa yoku izakaya ni ikimasu kara, o-sake ga suki na hazu desu.

Mr. Ito often goes to izakaya bars, so he must like liquor.

来るはずの人が来ないと困ります。

Kuru hazu no hito ga konai to komarimasu.

When people who are expected to come don't come, we get into trouble.

5.15. ところ *tokoro*

The noun **tokoro** 'place' has several special uses. When you speak of going to a person, doing something at a person's (place), coming from a person, in Japanese you usually say 'to, from, or at the PLACE of that person.' In fact **tokoro** is used when you are going to anything that is not itself a place.

クライアントのところまで車で行きました。

Kuraianto no tokoro made kuruma de ikimashita.

I went to my client's place by car.

Tokoro can also refer to time as well as place. It then means 'the time or occasion when something is (was) happening,' and it is followed by the copula or by a particle. Here are some of the expressions that result:

読むところです。

Yomu tokoro desu.

He is (just) about to read.

読むところでした。

Yomu tokoro deshita.

He was (just) about to read.

読んだところです。

Yonda tokoro desu.

He has just (now) read.

読んだところでした。

Yonda tokoro deshita.

He had just (then) read.

読んでいるところです。

Yonde iru tokoro desu.

He is just (now) reading.

読んでいるところでした。

Yonde iru tokoro deshita.

He was just (then) reading.

読んでいたところです。

Yonde ita tokoro desu.

He has just been reading.

読んでいたところでした。

Yonde ita tokoro deshita.

He had just been reading.

Instead of the copula, you can have the particle **e** followed by some clause that INTERRUPTS the action of the clause preceding **tokoro**:

賄賂を受け取ったところをカメラで撮った。

Wairo o uketotta tokoro o kamera de totta.

I took a photo of the moment when he received the bribe.

ネットカフェへ入って行くところを見ました。

Netto kafe e haitte iku tokoro o mimashita.

I saw them enter the Internet café.

弁当を食べているところへ加藤さんが来ました。

Bentō o tabete iru tokoro e Katō-san ga kimashita.

Mr. Kato came just when I was eating my boxed lunch.

There are occasional opportunities for ambiguity. **Jidōsha o tsukutte iru tokoro o mimashita** could mean either ‘I saw them making cars’ or ‘I saw the place where they make cars.’

Bentō

Bentō is a single-serving meal in a box purchased at a **bentō** shop or prepared at home. Some business people eat lunch at a restaurant near their office, but others bring **bentō** to their office daily. It saves them time and money, and is healthier. There are many cute **bentō** boxes sold in Japan.



5.16. Verbs for leaving

The usual verb for ‘leave’ is **deru**. There is a compound verb **dekakeru** consisting of the infinitive of **deru** (**de**) + **-kakeru** ‘begins to, starts to.’ This is often used when a person leaves on an errand, with the implication that he gets started on his way.

ちょっと出かけてきますね。

Chotto dekakete kimasu ne.

I'll go out (for an errand), okay?

If a person leaves town on a trip, you use a special verb, **tatsu**, which means 'leaves' or 'takes off (airplane),' but you can use **deru** 'leaves' instead. The place you leave is followed by the object particle **o**. The verb for 'arrives' is **tsuku**; the particle for the place is **e** or **ni** 'to.'

新幹線こだま5号が今東京駅を出ました。

Shinkansen Kodama go-gō ga ima Tōkyō eki o demashita.

Shinkansen (bullet train) Kodama #5 has just left Tokyo station.

明日パリへ発ちます。パリに午後3時に着きます。

Ashita Pari e tachimasu. Pari ni gogo san-ji ni tsukimasu.

I'll leave for Paris tomorrow. I'll arrive at Paris at three p.m.

5.17. ...前に ...*mae ni* and ...後で ...*ato de*

To say 'before something happens' or 'before something happened,' you use the imperfect mood followed by **mae ni** 'in front of..., in advance of....' To say 'after something happens' or 'after something happened,' you use the perfect mood followed by **ato ni** 'being after....' Note that **ato ni** can also be substituted by **ato de**. (**Ato de** sounds more colloquial than **ato ni**.)

晩ご飯を食べる前に山田さんに電話をしました。

Ban go-han o taberu mae ni Yamada-san ni denwa o shimashita.

Before eating dinner, I called Ms. Yamada.

晩ご飯を食べた後に/で映画を見に行きました。

Ban go-han o tabeta ato ni/de eiga o mi ni ikimashita.

After eating dinner, I went to see a movie.

Notice that you always use the same mood in front of these two expressions regardless of the English translation:

IMPERFECT + **mae ni**

PERFECT + **ato ni**

The differences of tense in English are mostly conditioned by the tense of the verb in the final clause, and this is all indicated by the mood of the final verb in the Japanese sentence.

Now you have had two ways to say ‘after doing something’: GERUND (-te) + **kara** and PERFECT (-ta) + **ato ni/de**. The principal difference of use is that the **-te kara** construction refers to actions IN SEQUENCE (either time sequence or logical sequence), whereas **-ta ato ni** is used for actions not necessarily in immediate sequence, just separated in time. **Go-han o tabete kara, eiga o mi ni ikimashita** ‘I went to see a movie after eating’ implies that there is a direct sequence, with nothing else of importance happening between the time I ate and the time I saw the movie: I saw the show right after dinner. **Go-han o tabeta ato ni, eiga o mi ni ikimashita** ‘I went to see a movie after I had eaten’ does not imply this sequence. Perhaps I did the dishes, studied for a while, and then went for a walk before taking in a late show. Additional examples:

新幹線が出る前にホームで駅弁とお茶を買いました。

Shinkansen ga deru mae ni hōmu de ekiben to o-cha o kaimashita.

I bought a (station) lunchbox and tea at the platform before the train left.

会議が終わった後に部長と食事をしました。

Kaigi ga owatta ato ni buchō to shokuji o shimashita.

After the meeting had ended, I dined with the division manager.

仕事が終わってから居酒屋に行きます。

Shigoto ga owatte kara izakaya ni ikimasu.

I go to izakaya after finishing my work.

There are two other things to notice about **mae** and **ato**. **Mae** refers either to space or to time—‘before’ or ‘in front of.’ **Ato** usually refers only to time ‘after’—for space you ordinarily use **ushiro** ‘behind.’ The second thing is that **mae** and **ato** are nouns and may be modified by pre-nouns (**kono**, **sono**, **ano**, etc.) or by a noun + the particle **no**. For example: **kono mae** ‘before this,’ **sono ato** ‘after that,’ **sensō no mae** ‘before the war,’ **go-han no ato** ‘after the meal.’

この前にどこにいましたか。

Kono mae ni doko ni imashita ka.

Where were you before?

少し後でいいですか。

Sukoshi ato de ii desu ka.

Is it all right (if I do it) a little later?

後で見てください。

Ato de mite kudasai.

Please look at it later.

前にも後ろにもありますよ。

Mae ni mo ushiro ni mo arimasu yo.

We have some both in front and behind.

5.18. まで *made* and うち *uchi*

The particle **made** after a noun means ‘as far as, up to’; after the imperfect mood of a verb or the infinitive (**-ku**) of some adjectives, it means ‘until something happens or is’:

次の電車が来るまで駅で待ちましょう。

Tsugi no densha ga kuru made eki de machimashō.

Let’s wait at the train station until the next train comes.

次の電車が来るまで駅で待ちました。

Tsugi no densha ga kuru made eki de machimashita.

I waited at the train station until the next train

came.

毎日遅くまで仕事をします。

Mainichi osoku made shigoto o shimasu.

Every day I work until very late.

The noun **uchi** means ‘interval, inside’ (the derived meaning ‘house’ is a specialized example of this). Following a verb or an adjective in the imperfect mood, it means ‘while someone/ something is/was doing something or in a certain way.’ **Uchi** may be followed by **ni**, **wa**, or **ni wa** and is used when there is a benefit of doing some action in the specified period. In many cases **uchi** and **aida** seem interchangeable, both meaning ‘(during) the interval.’ However, **aida** does not have any implication about the benefit that is implied by **uchi**.

子供が寝ているうちに新聞を読みます。

Kodomo ga nete iru uchi ni shinbun o yomimasu.

While the children are asleep, I’ll read a newspaper.

明るいうちに運転しましょう。

Akarui uchi ni unten shimashō.

Let’s drive while it is still light.

若いうちに頑張りなさい。

Wakai uchi ni ganbari nasai.

Work hard while you are young.

After a negative, **uchi** means ‘while something (still) doesn’t happen; as long as something (still) isn’t so,’ and this is a common Japanese way to say ‘before something happens, before something is so’:

忘れないうちに薬を飲みましょう。

Wasurenai uchi ni kusuri o nomimashō.

Let’s take medicine before we forget.

警察が来ないうちに逃げよう。

Keisatsu ga konai uchi ni nigeyō.

Let's run away before the police come.

暗くならないうちに帰った方がいいよ。

Kuraku naranai uchi ni kaetta hō ga ii yo.

It's better to go home before it gets dark.

5.19. Verbs meaning 'know'

There are two verbs often translated 'knows': **shiru** and **wakaru**. **Shiru** takes a direct object. When affirmative, it is most often used together with **iru**.

このことを知っていますか。

Kono koto o shitte imasu ka?

Do you know this (fact)?

In the negative, it occurs without the **iru**:

知りません。

Shirimasen.

I don't know.

This verb is used for knowing specific facts and people:

「小林さんを知っていますか。」

"Kobayashi-san o shitte imasu ka."

"Do you know Ms. Kobayashi?"

「いいえ、知りません。」

"Ie, shirimasen."

"No, I don't know (her)."

「駅前に新しい喫茶店ができたのを知っていますか。」

"Eki mae ni atarashii kissaten ga dekita no o shitte imasu ka."

"Do you know that a new coffee shop opened in front of the train station?"

「ええ、知っています。」

“Ē, shitte imasu.”

“Yes, I know.”

The verb **wakaru** means ‘is distinguished, is understood.’ This verb does not take a direct object—the word corresponding to the English object is the subject (just like **eiga ga suki desu** ‘I like movies’):

「この言葉の意味が分かりますか。」

“**Kono kotoba no imi ga wakari masu ka.**”

“Do you understand the meaning of this word?”

「いいえ，分かりませんね。」

“**Īe, wakarimasen ne.**”

“No, I don’t get it.”

「日本語が分かりますか。」

“**Nihongo ga wakarimasu ka.**”

“Do you know (understand) Japanese?”

「はい。」

“**Hai.**”

“Yes.”

Interestingly, **wakaru** can also be used to mean ‘know.’

「田中さんの電話番号は分かりますか。」

“**Tanaka-san no denwa bangō wa wakarimasu ka.**”

“Do you know Mr. Tanaka’s telephone number?”

「すみません。ちょっと分かりません。」

“**Sumimasen. Chotto wakarimasen.**”

“Sorry. I don’t know.”

「あの人はだれですか。」

“**Ano hito wa dare desu ka?**”

“Who is that person over there?”

「すみません。ちょっと分かりません。」

“**Sumimasen. Chotto wakarimasen.**”

“Sorry. I don’t know.”

In addition, **wakaru** can also be used to respond to an instruction.

「この書類をコピーしてください。」

“**Kono shorui o kopi shite kudasai.**”

“Please make a copy of this document.”

「はい、分かりました。」

“**Hai, wakarimashita.**”

“Certainly.”

5.20. Talking a language

To say ‘he speaks English,’ you usually say in Japanese ‘as for him, English is produced,’ using the verb **dekiru**.

あの人は英語ができます。

Ano hito wa Eigo ga dekimasu.

That person can speak English.

「日本語ができますか。」

“**Nihongo ga dekimasu ka.**”

“Do you speak Japanese?”

「はい、少しできます。」

“**Hai, sukoshi dekimasu.**”

“Yes, a little bit.”

日本語があまりできないので、英語でお願いします。

Nihongo ga amari dekinai no de, Eigo de onegai shimasu.

I cannot speak/understand Japanese well, so please speak in English with me.

To say ‘understands English,’ you can use the verb **wakaru**:

誰か英語が分かる人はいませんか。

Dare ka Eigo ga waku hito wa imasen ka.
Is there anyone who understands English?



[cue 05-3]

Conversation

Mr. Tanaka, an employee at Yamato Chemical, makes a phone call to Japan Electric.

Receptionist: 日本電気でございます。

Nihon Denki de gozaimasu.

Japan Electric.

Tanaka: 大和ケミカルの田中ですが，いつもお世話になっております。

Yamato Kemikaru no Tanaka desu ga, itsu mo o-sewa ni natte orimasu.

I'm Mr. Tanaka from Yamato Chemical. Thank you always for your help and kindness.

Receptionist: こちらこそいつもお世話になっております。

Kochira koso itsu mo o-sewa ni natte orimasu.

Likewise, we are indebted to you.

Tanaka: あのう，渡辺部長はいらっしゃいますでしょうか。

Anō, Watanabe buchō wa irasshaimasu deshō ka.

Umm, is Division Chief Watanabe there?

Receptionist: 只今席をはずしておりますが。

Tadaima seki o hazushite orimasu ga.

I'm sorry, but he is away from his desk right now.

Tanaka: ああ，そうですか。じゃあ，また後ほどお電話させ

ていただきます。

Ā, sō desu ka. Jā, mata nochi hodo o-denwa sasete itadakimasu.

Well, I'll call again later.

Receptionist: 申し訳ございません。宜しく願いいたします。

Mōshiwake gozaimasen. Yoroshiku onegai itashimasu.

Sorry for the trouble. Thank you.

Tanaka: それでは失礼いたします。

Soredewa shitsurei itashimasu.

Okay, goodbye.

Receptionist: 失礼いたします。

Shitsurei itashimasu.

Goodbye.

Business Telephone Conversations

When you make a phone call or receive one in a business context, talk in slightly higher pitch than usual and use polite language. **O-sewa ni natte orimasu** is almost always used at the beginning of a telephone conversation in a business context. **Sewa** means 'care' or 'assistance,' and the phrase literally means that 'I am always being taken care of by you.' It sounds very awkward when translated into English. Japanese tend to be apologetic in phone conversation and email communications in a business context, but it is their way of being extremely courteous. See Lesson 9 about polite language.



Exercises

I. Match the items that form a pair as contrasting or opposite items in the same category.

- i. 領収書 **ryōshōsho**
- ii. 輸入 **yubū**
- iii. 秘書 **shishō**
- iv. 請社員 **seikyōsho**

II. Make a grammatical sentence by reordering the items in the parentheses, and translate the sentences.

1. (立って・人・あそこ・いる・に) は田中さんです。
(tatte, hito, asoko, iru, ni) wa Tanaka-san desu.

2. (食べ物・な・父・好き・の) はすしです。
(tabemono, na, chichi, suki, no) wa sushi desu.

3. 店は (人・多い・の・ところ) がいいです。
Mise wa (hito, ōi, no, tokoro) ga ii desu.

4. うちの会社には (いません・が・人・できる・の・英語)。
Uchi no kaisha ni wa (imasen, ga, hito, dekiru, no, Eigo).

5. (飲んで・の・いる・あの・は・人・が) お酒です。
(nonde, no, iru, ano, wa, hito, ga) o-sake desu.

III. Fill in the blanks.

1. アイスクリームを _____ ところです。

Aisukurīmu o _____ tokoro desu.



2. アイスクリームを _____ ところです。

Aisukurīmu o _____ tokoro desu.



3. アイスクリームを _____ ところです。

Aisukurīmu o _____ tokoro desu.



IV. Change the form of the underlined part to make the sentence grammatical.

1. 日本に行きます前に日本語を勉強します。

Nihon ni ikimasu mae ni Nihongo o benkyō shimasu.

2. ご飯を食べます後に電話をします。

Go-han o tabemasu ato ni denwa o shimasu.

3. 新しい部長はあの人はずです。

Atarashii buchō wa ano hito desu hazu desu.

4. 部長はカラオケが好きですはずです。

Buchō wa karaoke ga suki desu hazu desu.

5. 病気ですのに会社に行くんですか。

Byōki desu no ni kaisha ni iku n desu ka.

6. 私の父はイギリス人ですんです。

Watashi no chichi wa Igirisu-jin desu n desu.

Answers:

I a-ii, b-iv, c-iii, d-i

II 1. あそこに立っている人は田中さんです。 **Asoko ni tatte iru hito wa Tanaka-san desu.** The person who is standing over there is Mr. Tanaka.

2. 父の好きな食べ物は寿司です。 **Chichi no suki na tabemono wa sushi desu.** The food that my father likes is sushi.

3. 店は人の多いところがいいです。 **Mise wa hito no ôi tokoro ga ii desu.** Stores are better (to be) located at heavily trafficked places.

4. うちの会社には英語のできる人がいません。 **Uchi no kaisha ni wa eigo no dekiru hito ga imasen.** There is no one who can speak English at our company.

5. あの人が飲んでいるのはお酒です。 **Ano hito ga nonde iru no wa o-sake desu.** The thing that person is drinking is sake.

III 1. たべる **taberu** 2. 食べている **tabete iru** 3. 食べた **tabeta**

IV 1. 行く **iku** 2. 食べた **tabeta** 3. の **no** 4. な **na** 5. な **na** 6. な **na**



LESSON 6

Going Shopping Again?

また買い物？ **Mata Kaimono?**

In this lesson you will learn how to describe your experiences about shopping as well as how to express quantities, amounts, and numbers.





[cue 06-1]

Basic Sentences

古本屋でマンガをたくさん買いました。

Furuhonya de manga o takusan kaimashita.

I bought a lot of comic books at a used-book store.

りんごを3つ下さい。それから、バナナを3本下さい。

Ringo o mit-tsu kudasai. Sore kara, banana o san-bon kudasai.

Please give me three apples. In addition, please give me three bananas.

うちには犬が3匹います。それから、猫が1匹います。

Uchi ni wa inu ga san-biki imasu. Sore kara, neko ga ip-piki imasu.

We have three dogs. In addition, we have a cat.

2に3を足すといくつになりますか。

Ni ni san o tasu to ikutsu ni narimasu ka.

How much is 2 + 3? (When you add 3 to 2, how many does it become?)

9から4を引くと5になります。

Kyū kara yon o hiku to go ni narimasu.

9 - 4 is 5. (When you subtract 4 from 9, it becomes 5.)

店員が2, 3人いました。

Ten'in ga ni san nin imashita.

There were 2 or 3 salesclerks.

今日は全て3割引きですよ。

Kyō wa subete san-wari biki desu yo.

Today, everything is 30% off!

父の生年月日は1951年6月23日です。

Chichi no seinengappi wa sen kyūhyaku gojū ichi-nen Rokugatsu nijū san-nichi desu.

My father's date of birth is June 23rd, 1951.

バラやゆりなどを買いました。

Bara ya yuri nado o kaimashita.

I bought roses and lilies and the like.

10. うれん草を1束か2束買いましょう。

Hōrensō o hito-tabā ka futataba kaimashō.

I guess I'll buy 1 or 2 bunches of spinach.

11. うれん草とねぎを一束ずつ買いました。

Hōrensō to negi o hito-tabā zutsu kaimashita.

We bought one bunch each of spinach and green onions.

12. 今何時ですか。」

“Ima nantoki desu ka.”

13. “What time is it now?”

14. 中さんだけに言いました。

Tanaka-san dake ni iimashita.

I only told Mr. Tanaka.

15. 中さんにしか言いませんでした。

Tanaka-san ni shika iimasen deshita.

I only told Mr. Tanaka.

16. 茶はいかがですか。

O-cha wa ikaga desu ka.

How about some tea?

17. このクラスの四分の三は男子です。

Kono kurasu no yonbun no san wa danshi desu.

Three-fourths of (the students in) this class are boys.



[cue 06-2]

Basic Vocabulary

STORES

département store (百貨店) **depāto** (or **hyakkaten**)

supermarket **sūpā**

convenience store **konbini**

bookstore (書店) **hon'ya** (or **shoten**)

cashier **rei**

store **tena**

store **tenchō**

customer, shoppers **kyaku**

Convenient *Konbini*

In Japan, convenience stores are called **konbini**. Wherever you are, in Japan, you can see some **konbini** such as 7-Eleven, Lawson, or FamilyMart. In cities, you can find one every few blocks. Like the 7-Elevens in the U.S., **konbini** sell prepared foods, drinks, toiletries, over-the-counter drugs, and stationery, but they offer more. You can buy tickets for shows and sports games, do simple banking, send a fax, make copies, and pay utility bills. **Konbini** stores usually serve as stations for popular delivery services called **takuhaibin**. When you go to an airport, you can drop off your suitcase at a **konbini** on the previous day and have it delivered to the airport when you check in. This is a common practice, because the Japanese do not think it's cool to roll big suitcases in a train station. **Konbini** stores sell popular Japanese-style hot meals, (including **oden**, a Japanese hot-pot), snacks, and cigarettes. Because they are open 24/7, you never have to be hungry or thirsty as long as you have a small amount of money. They also sell magazines and comic books, so you can go there at any time, even at midnight, whenever you feel bored.



THINGS AT THE SUPERMARKET

肉 **niku**

魚 **sakana**

野菜 **yasai**

果物 **kudamono**

豚 **gyūniku, bifu**

鶏 **tori(niku), chikin**

牛 **butaniku, pōku**

lettuce **retasu**

scallion **negi green onion**

spinach **hōrensō**

apple **ringo**

tangerine **mikan**

peach **momo**

cashier シヤー **kyasshā**

shopping bag **kaimono kago**

Depachika

If you want to explore Japanese food culture, visit **depachika**, a department store's food floor in its basement. The word **depachika** is an abbreviation of **depāto** 'department store' and **chika** 'basement.' At **depachika**, they usually sell processed, baked, or cooked foods including ham, roasted meat, bento lunch boxes, sushi rolls, pickles, dumplings, and pastries. Most of them are from well-known makers, hotels, or restaurants, and some of them are prepared on-site. They also sell fresh fruit, seafood, and meat from special areas, like Kobe beef and Yubari melon that could cost a fortune. The presentation of foods is done meticulously, with elaborate lighting and showcases. Sales staff are very informative and courteous.



ONLINE SHOPPING

credit card カード **kurejitto kādo**

Internet shopping グ **netto shoppingu**

shopping cart **kaimono kato**

rank キング **rankingu**

Internet auction ヨン **netto okushon**

free shipping **sōgyō-muryō**

click ック **kurikku**

商品 **shōhin**, item

ATM TERMS

ATM **ei ti emu**

deposit **れ o-azukeire**

withdrawal **れ o-hikidashi**

balance inquiry **り zandōka-shōkai**

PIN number **り banshō-bangō**

debit card **カード debitto kādo**

TIME DURING THE DAY

朝 **asa**

日 **hiru**

晩 **ban**

夜 **yoru**

dusk **yūgata**

dawn **akegata**

ADJECTIVES

高 **takai** expensive

安 **yasui** easy

欲 **hoshii** is wanted

美味 **ishii** is delicious

素晴 **sugoi** wonderful

FASHION

(is) elegant (だ) **eleganto (da)**

(is) chic (だ) **shikku (da)**

(is) shabby **hade (da)**

(is) conservative **jimie (da)**

is childish **kodomoppoi**

is adult like **otonappoi**

はcuteい **kawaii**

はcoolいい **kakkoii**

きれいprettyだ **kirei (da)**

VERBS

買ys・買います **kau/kaimasu**

売ls・売ります **uru/urimasu**

数ms, 数meates **kazoeru/kazoemasu**

takes (time, cost) **takekasi/kakimasu** required

Structure Notes

6.1. Numerals and numbers

In Japanese there are two classes of words corresponding to English number words: “numerals” and “numbers.” A number is a compound word consisting of a numeral (like **ichi** ‘one’) plus a counter (like **-mai**, the counter for flat, thin objects). You use simple numerals when you are talking about figures in the abstract, as in an arithmetic problem, where you are not counting anything in particular; you use numbers when your figures apply to something more definite, like a certain number of books, pencils, or people, or a certain quantity of water, distance, time, or money. To ask ‘how many...,’ you attach either **iku-** or (more often) **nan-** to the counter, as in **iku-tsu** ‘how many pieces’ or **nan-mai** ‘how many sheets (of flat items).’

6.2. Other quantity words

In addition to numbers there are some other words that indicate quantity or amount in a more general way. These words are nouns but are often used as adverbs, just like the numbers. Here are some you will find useful:

lots, **takusan**, many
 a little, **sukoshi**, a bit
 many, **ōzei** (used only for people)
 all/every, **minna**, everybody

The word **minna** only has the meaning ‘everybody’ when used as a noun with some particle: **Minna ga kimashita** ‘Everybody came’ or **Minna kimashita** ‘(They) all came.’ When used as an adverb it means ‘all’ or ‘every’ and can refer to people or things: **Gakusei ga minna kimashita** ‘The students all came.’ Here are some examples of these words in sentences:

洋服を沢山買いました。
Yōfuku o takusan kaimashita.
 I bought a lot of clothes.

この店は子供服も少しあります。
Kono mise wa kodomo fuku mo sukoshi arimasu.
 This store has some children’s clothes.

お客さんが大勢来ました。
O-kyaku-san ga ōzei kimashita.
 Many shoppers came.

この店の漫画はみんな読んだことがあります。
Kono mise no manga wa minna yonda koto ga arimasu.
 I have read all the comic books in this store.

6.3. Use of numbers and quantity words

Numbers and quantity words occur as ordinary nouns, connected by **no** to the nouns they modify. They occur also as adverbs without any particle following, and in this case they usually follow the NOUN + PARTICLE expression to which they refer, although sometimes they are put at the very beginning as if modifying the whole sentence, and sometimes you hear them in other positions.

If the particle after the noun is any particle other than **wa**,

ga, or **o**, the number or quantity word must precede as a regular modifying noun: **futari no hito kara** ‘from two people,’ **takusan no gakkō e** ‘to many schools.’ But if the particle after the noun is **wa**, **ga**, or **o**, the number or quantity word can either precede with **no**, or follow as an adverb with no particle at all. There is a slight difference of meaning. If the quantity word or number is used as an adverb, the noun is referred to in an “indefinite” fashion: **enpitsu ga ni-hon** ‘two pencils (some or any two pencils),’ **o-cha ga sukoshi** ‘a little bit of tea.’ If the quantity word or number is used as a modifying noun, the reference is more “definite”: **ni-hon no enpitsu ga** ‘THE two pencils,’ **kono sukoshi no o-cha ga** ‘this little bit of tea.’

This is about the only place where Japanese maintains the English distinction between ‘A man’ (**hito wa hitori**) and ‘THE man’ (**hitori no hito wa**), and it is possible only when the particle involved is **wa**, **ga**, or **o**. When a number or quantity word is used as an adverb with no particle following, it’s as if the meaning were ‘to the extent of ...’: **tegami o ni-tsū kakimashita** ‘I wrote letters to the extent of two’ = ‘I wrote two letters’; **tegami o takusan kakimashita** ‘I wrote letters to the extent of a lot’ = ‘I wrote a lot of letters.’ Here are more examples:

この二人のアメリカ人は私の友達です。

Kono futari no Ameriki-jin wa watashi no tomodachi desu.

These two Americans are my friends.

昨晚学生が二人遊びに来ました。

Sakuban gakusei ga futari asobi ni kimashita.

Last night two students came to call on me.

二人の学生は日本語ができますか。

Futari no gakusei wa Nihongo ga dekimasu ka.

Do the two students know Japanese?

日本語が少しできます。

Nihongo ga sukoshi deki masu.

They know a little Japanese.

「何曲ダウンロードしましたか。」

“Nankyoku daunrōdo shimashita ka.”

“How many pieces of music did you download?”

「3曲ダウンロードしました。」

“San-kyoku daunrōdo shimashita.”

“I downloaded three.”

6.4. Primary and secondary numerals

The numeral system of Japanese includes a primary set, most of which was borrowed from the Chinese—and a secondary set, consisting of early native Japanese elements. The secondary system is used only for counting certain things, and is virtually limited to the first ten number and quantity words. After ten, even those things counted with the secondary set take the primary numerals, and some people use primary numerals for figures lower than ten. A given numeral or number often has variant forms. In the chart on the following page, the more common variant is given first. In certain combinations, only one of the given variants may occur, but in general they are used interchangeably.

6.5. Primary numerals

From one to ten, the digits are simple words. From ten to twenty they are compound words consisting of **jū** ‘ten’ plus one of the other digits. The even tens (twenty, thirty, forty, etc.) are compound words consisting of one of the digits plus **jū** ‘ten.’ In other words, the Japanese reads 13 as ‘ten-three’ and 30 as ‘three-ten.’ The hundreds and thousands work like the tens: 300 is 3 x 100 (**san-byaku**), 3000 is 3 x 1000 (**san-zen**). You will notice some changes in the pronunciation of the individual elements when they occur in certain compounds. These are summarized below in note 6.8. Other numerals (like 21, 103, 1007, 2326) consist of a phrase of several words: **sanzen sanbyaku sanjū san** ‘3333.’ Here is a list of the primary

numerals. Some of the numbers have more than one possible form, as you can see below. The more frequently used one is listed first, but the choice among variants depends on the context and individual preference.

Primary Numerals

~~0~~0; zero 〇

ichi 一

ni 二

san 三

~~yo~~yon; shi 四

go 五

roku 六

nana; shichi 七

hachi 八

kyū; ku 九

jū 十

jūichi 十一

jūni 十二

jūsan 十三

jūyon; jūshi 十四

jūgo 十五

jūroku 十六

jūnana; jūshichi 十七

jūhachi 十八

jūkyū; jūku 十九

20 jū 二十

21 jūichi 二十一

22 jūni 二十二

23 jūsan 二十三

24 jūyon; jūshī 二十四

25 jūgo 二十五

26 jūroku 二十六

27 jūnana; jūshichi 二十七

28 jūhachi 二十八

29 jūkyū; jūkū 二十九

30 sanjū 三十

~~san~~ ~~san~~ ~~san~~ さん

~~yonjū~~; ~~shijū~~; しじゅう

~~yonjū~~ ~~yon~~ さん さん

~~gōjū~~ ゆう

~~gōjū~~ ~~go~~ さん

~~roku~~ ~~jū~~ ゆう

~~roku~~ ~~jū~~ ~~roku~~ ろく

~~nana~~ ~~jū~~ ゆう

~~nana~~ ~~jū~~ ~~nana~~ なな

~~hachi~~ ~~jū~~ ゆう

~~hachi~~ ~~jū~~ ~~hachi~~ ち

~~kyū~~ ~~jū~~ じゅう

~~kyū~~ ~~jū~~ ~~kyū~~ ゆう きゅう

~~hyaku~~

~~hyaku~~ ~~ichi~~ ち

~~hyaku~~ ~~kyū~~ ~~jū~~ ~~kyū~~ ゆう きゅう

~~an~~ ~~hyaku~~

~~san~~ ~~an~~ ~~hyaku~~

~~yon~~ ~~an~~ ~~hyaku~~

~~gō~~ ~~an~~ ~~hyaku~~

~~hachi~~ ~~an~~ ~~hyaku~~

~~nana~~ ~~an~~ ~~hyaku~~

~~hachi~~ ~~an~~ ~~hyaku~~

~~kyū~~ ~~an~~ ~~hyaku~~ やく

~~sen~~ ~~sen~~

~~an~~ ~~sen~~

~~san~~ ~~sen~~ さん

~~yon~~ ~~sen~~ さん

~~gō~~ ~~sen~~

~~roku~~ ~~sen~~

~~nana~~ ~~sen~~

~~hachi~~ ~~sen~~ さん

~~kyū~~ ~~sen~~ せん

~~ichi~~ ~~nan~~

~~an~~ ~~nan~~

~~san~~ ~~nan~~

~~hachi~~ ~~nan~~

~~100,000~~ 10まん
~~500,000~~ 50まん
~~1,000,000~~ 100まん
~~10,000,000~~ 1000万円
~~100,000,000~~ 10000万円
~~1,000,000,000~~ 100000万円
~~10,000,000,000~~ 1000000万円

* The number 0 can also be pronounced as **maru**, which literally means a circle.

6.6. Arithmetic

To ask the price of things, you can say, for example:

How much is it? **Ikura desu ka.**
 How much does it become? **Ikura ni narimasu ka.**
 How much does it cost? **Ikura shimasu ka.**

To ask the quantity of things, you can say:

How many is it? **Ikutsu desu ka.**
 How many does it become? **Ikutsu ni narimasu ka.**

Common arithmetic problems are said as follows:

2に3を足すといくつになりますか。

Ni ni san o tasu to ikutsu ni narimasu ka.

How much is 2 + 3? (When you add 3 to 2, how many does it become?)

9から4を引くと5になります。

Kyū kara yon o hiku to go ni narimasu.

9 - 4 is 5. (When you subtract 4 from 9, it becomes 5.)

8に7を掛けるといくつになりますか。

Hachi ni nana o kakeru to ikutsu ni narimasu ka.

How much is 8 x 7? (When you multiply 8 by 7, how much does it become?)

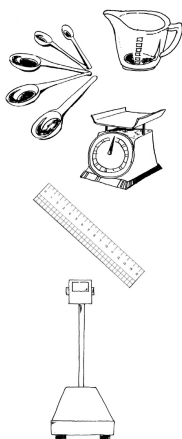
36を3で割ると12になります。

Sanjū roku o san de waru to jūni ni narimasu.

36 ÷ 3 is 12. (When you divide 36 by 3, it becomes 12.)

6.7. Counters

There are three kinds of counters: “unit counters” (like 3 pounds, 2 hours, 4 years), “class counters” (like 400 head of cattle, a loaf of bread, 2 sheets of paper), and “ordinal counters.” Unit counters are used to refer to a quantity of something divisible like water, time, money, and distance. Class counters are used for general classes of things that aren’t ordinarily divisible, like animals, people, pencils, and books. Ordinal counters are used to specify the place in some order in time, place, and hierarchy.



Here is a list of some common unit counters:

- グラム ~~grams~~ -guramu
- キログラム (キロ) ~~kilograms~~ -kiro(guramu)
- メートル ~~meters~~ -mētoru
- キロメートル (キロ) ~~kilometers~~ -kiro(mētoru)
- センチメートル (センチ) ~~centimeters~~ -senchi(mētoru)
- ミリメートル (ミリ) ~~millimeters~~ -miri(mētoru)

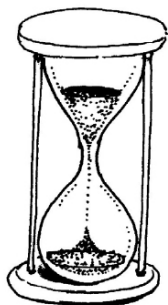
㊦.リテール **-rittoru**
 ㊦.マイル **-mairu**
 ㊦.インチ **inchi**
 ㊦.ドル **doru**
 ㊦.円 **yen** (Japanese currency unit)
 ㊦.ポンド **pōndo** (English weight or money)
 ㊦.時間 **jikan**
 ㊦.週間 **shūkan**
 ㊦.月間 **gagetsu**

Here is a list of some common class counters:

㊦.台 **chidai**, mounted machines
 ㊦.個 **kon** **thai**erfuls
 ㊦.本 **hon** objects (pencils, tubes, sticks, cigarettes,
 bottles, flowers)
 ㊦.張 **hai** **thai**n objects (sheets, newspapers,
 handkerchiefs, dishes)
 ㊦.冊 **satsu** volumes (books, magazines)
 ㊦.個 **kon** **thai**ngs
 ㊦.頭 **tetsū**
 ㊦.頭 **tō** animals (horses, cows)
 ㊦.匹 **hiki**, fish, insects
 ㊦.種 **shū** **thai**ses

Here's a list of some commonly used ordinal counters:

㊦.時 **jikoku**
 ㊦.階 **kai**oor
 ㊦.月 **gatsu** names (e.g. January, February)
 ㊦.頁 **peiji** (page 46)



6.8. Sound changes

There are a few irregularities when certain numerals are combined with counters. These are summarized below.

1. The last syllable of **ichi** and **hachi** is usually replaced by **p** before **p**, **t** before **t** or **ch**, **s** before **s** or **sh**, and **k** before **k**:

~~ip~~ ~~pō~~ ~~jē~~

~~it~~-~~tō~~imal

~~it~~-~~te~~ter

~~it~~-~~ch~~aku

~~is~~-~~sa~~ir old

~~ik~~-~~ke~~nding

~~hāp~~ ~~pō~~ ~~jē~~

~~hā~~~~it~~ōimals

~~hā~~~~te~~ter

~~hā~~~~ch~~aku

~~hā~~-~~sa~~ir old

~~hā~~~~k~~ ~~ke~~ndings

2. The numeral **jū** is usually replaced by **jup** before **p**, **jut** before **t** or **ch**, **jus** before **s** or **sh**, **juk** before **k**. Some speakers use **jip-**, **jit-**, **jis-**, and **jik-** instead of the forms with the vowel **u**.

~~jup~~ ~~pō~~ ~~jē~~s

~~jū~~-~~tō~~imals

10 letters
 10 chaku
 10 years old
 10 ken

3. The numerals **san** and **yon** and the element **nan-** ‘which, how many’ are pronounced as **sam-**, **yom-**, **nam-** before **b**, **p**, or **m** to assimilate the place of articulation. In this book, they are still written with ‘n’ instead of ‘m.’ So, **san-pēji** ‘3 pages’ will pronounced as **sam-pēji**. This change to **m** in the spelling works for any **n** before **b**, **p**, or **m** within a word, so **sen** ‘1,000’ becomes **sem-**, **man** ‘10,000’ becomes **mam-**.

4. Before some counters beginning with a voiced sound, the number **yon** ‘4’ appears in the form **yo-**:

4 円 **yo-en**
 4 年 **yo-nen**
 4 冊 **yo-jik**
 4 時間 **yo-jikan**

Compare **yon-byō** ‘4 seconds,’ **yon-jū** ‘40,’ **yon-man** ‘40,000.’ For some words, where both forms are heard, the longer is to be preferred: **yo(n)-ban** ‘number 4,’ **yo(n)-retsu** ‘4 rows.’

5. Counters beginning with **h** or **f** (including the numeral **hyaku** ‘hundred’ when the second element in a compound numeral) replace this by **p** after **ichi-** (**ip-**), **hachi-** (**hap-**), **jū** (**jup-**). After **san-**, **nan-**, counters change initial **h** to **b**, initial **f** to **p**. After **yon**, a majority of speakers keep the initial **h** intact, but many people say **yon-pun** rather than **yon-fun** ‘4 minutes.’

	hyaku	hon	hai	hiki	fun
1	--	一本 ip-pon	一杯 ip-pai	一匹 ip-piki	一分 ip-pun
8	八百 hap-pyaku	八本 hap-pon	八杯 hap-pai	八匹 hap-piki	八分 hap-pun

	hyaku	hon	hai	hiki	fun
10	--	十本 jup-pon	十杯 jup-pai	十匹 jup-piki	十分 jup-pun
3	三百 san-byaku	三本 san-bon	三杯 san-bai	三匹 san-biki	三分 san-pun
how many	何百 nan-byaku	何本 nan-bon	何杯 nan-bai	何匹 nan-biki	何分 nan-pun
1,000	--	千本 sen-bon	千杯 sen-bai	千匹 sen-biki	(千分) (sen-pun)
4	四百 yon-hyaku	四本 yon-bon	四杯 yon-hai	四匹 yon-hiki	四分 yon-pun

6. The numerals **roku-** and **hyaku-** become **rop-** and **hyap-** before counters beginning with **h** or **f**; the counters replace **h** or **f** by **p**. Some speakers use **rop-** and **hyap-** before counters beginning with a basic **p** also. Some speakers maintain the basic forms **roku-h-** and **roku-f-**, **hyaku-h-** and **hyaku-f-**, instead of **rop-p-** and **hyap-p-**.

~~hyap-pon, hyaku-hon~~
~~hyap-pai, hyaku-hai~~
~~hyap-piki, hyaku-hiki~~
~~hyap-pun, hyaku-fun~~
~~hyakupēji, hyoppēji~~

7. The numerals **roku-** and **hyaku-** become **rok-** and **hyak-** before counters beginning with **k-**: **rok-ken** ‘6 buildings’, **hyak-ken** ‘100 buildings.’

8. After **san-** ‘3’ and **nan-** ‘how many,’ the elements **-sen** meaning ‘thousand,’ **-kai** ‘floor,’ and **-ken** ‘buildings’ are respectively **-zen**, **-gai**, and **-gen**.

san-zen
 三,000 many thousand
san-gen
 三 buildings

9. With most counters, either **ku** or **kyū** may be used for ‘9,’ either **shichi** or **nana** for ‘7,’ either **shi** or **yon (yo-)** for ‘4.’ For some counters only one of the forms occurs: **Shigatsu** ‘April,’ **Shichigatsu** ‘July,’ **Kugatsu** ‘September’; **yo-ji** ‘4 o’clock,’ and **ku-ji** ‘9 o’clock.’

6.9. Secondary numerals

The secondary set of numerals consists of early native Japanese elements. They run from 1 to 10, and for each digit there are two forms: a long form, used when the numeral is a word by itself, and a short form, used when the numeral is combined with a counter. In addition, there are a few special short forms, used on enumerative occasions, like ‘counting off’ in gym or in the military.

	As a Word	In a Number	Counting Off
1	ひとつ hitotsu	hito-	hi, hī, hito
2	ふたつ futatsu	futa-	fu, fū, futa
3	みっつ mittsu	mī-	mī, mī
4	よっつ yottsu	yo-	yo, yō
5	いつつ itsutsu	itsu-	i, ī, itsu
6	むっつ muttsu	mu-	mu, mū
7	ななつ nanatsu	nana-	nā, nā, nana
8	やっつ yattsu	ya-	ya, yā
9	ここのつ kokonotsu	kokono-	koko, kono, kō
10	とお tō	to-, tō-	to, tō
How many?	いくつ ikutsu	iku-	---

The secondary numerals are used with certain counters. They are also used by themselves to count words that do not take any special counter: **kaban ga hitotsu** ‘one suitcase,’ **futatsu no mado ga** ‘the two windows,’ **mittsu no tsukue** ‘3 desks.’ For counting above 10, the primary numerals can be used by themselves, but they are often followed by the counter **-ko**: **kaban ga jūgo** or **kaban ga jūgo-ko** ‘15 suitcases.’

The secondary numerals are also commonly used to give ages: **Ano kodomo wa itsutsu deshō** ‘That child must be five (years old).’ **Watashi wa kotoshi sanjū desu** ‘I’m 30 this year.’ **Okāsama wa o-ikutsu desu ka?** ‘How old is your mother?’ There is a special word for ‘20 years old,’ **hatachi**. A somewhat more formal way of stating ages is with the primary numerals + the counter **-sai** ‘years of age’:

「**二十歳は何歳ですか。**」
“Nijūto wa nansai desu ka.”
“How old are you?”

6.10. Secondary counters

Here are some counters often used with the secondary numerals. Some speakers use the secondary numerals only for the first few numbers, then switch to the other set; other speakers do not switch to the primary set of numerals until eleven.

neighbor **hōban**

bag **fukuro**

box **hako**

room **heya**

slices, **-kire**, pieces

group **gumi** (of matched objects)

room **ma**

plate **sara**

spoon **suji**

slice **-soroe**

month **taba**

month **tsuki** (= -kagetsu used with primary numerals)

一晩ボストンのホテルに泊まった。

Hitoban Bosuton no hoteru ni tomatta.

I stayed at a hotel in Boston for one night.

このうちには寝室が二間しかない。

Kono uchi ni wa shinshitsu ga futama shika nai.

This house only has two bedrooms.

6.11. Counting people

There are some irregularities in the set of numbers used to count people. Most of the numbers are made up of primary numbers + the counter **-nin**, but there are different forms for 1, 2, and 4. (The expected forms ***ichi-nin**, ***ni-nin** do occur in some compounds, for example, **ichinin-mae** ‘food order for one person.’)

11 per **hitori**

2 people **futari**
 3 people **sannin**
 4 people **yōnin**
 5 people **gōnin**
 6 people **rokkunin**
 7 people **shichinin, shichi-nin**
 8 people **yachinin**
 9 people **kyūnin, ku-nin**
 10 people **jūnin**
 11 people **jūichinin**
 how many people?
 222 people **hiyaku nijū ni-nin**

この店には店員が2人います。

Kono mise ni wa ten'in ga futari imasu.

There are two clerks in this store.

その3人のダンサーはアメリカ人です。

Sono san-nin no dansā wa Amerika-jin desu.

Those three dancers are Americans.

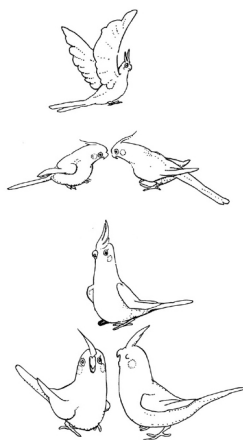


6.12. Counting birds

The usual counter for birds, any kinds of bird including sparrows, cranes, ducks, and chickens, is **-wa**, which has the forms **-pa** and **-ba** after certain numerals:

ichibuwa

~~ni-wa~~
~~san-pa, san-wa~~
~~yo-pa~~
~~go-wa~~
~~ro-pa, roku-wa~~
~~nana-wa, shichi-wa~~
~~happ-pa, hachi-wa~~
~~kyu-wa~~
~~jipp-pa, jip-pa~~
~~nan-pa~~ many birds?



6.13. Counting days

There are a number of irregularities in counting days. The numbers mean either 'so-and-so many days' or 'the so-and-so many-th day of the month,' except that these two meanings are distinguished for the first number: **ichi-nichi** '1 day,' **tsui-tachi** '1st day.'

1st day ~~tsui-tachi~~
 1 day ~~ichinichi~~
 2 days ~~futsuka~~
 3 days ~~mikka~~
 4 days ~~yokka~~

5 days ~~itsuka~~ **itsuka** day
 6 days ~~muika~~ **muika** day
 7 days ~~sanaka~~ **sanaka** day
 8 days ~~yoka~~ **yoka** day
 9 days ~~kocho~~ **kocho** day
 10 days ~~sokoth~~ **sokoth** day
 11 days ~~jūichinichi~~ **jūichinichi**
 12 days ~~jūhichinichi~~ **jūhichinichi**
 13 days ~~jūsaninichi~~ **jūsaninichi**
 14 days ~~jūyokka~~ **jūyokka** day
 15 days ~~jūgōchinichi~~ **jūgōchinichi**
 16 days ~~jūroku-nichi~~ **jūroku-nichi**
 17 days ~~jūshichinichi~~ **jūshichinichi**
 18 days ~~jūhachinichi~~ **jūhachinichi**
 19 days ~~jūkyūchinichi~~ **jūkyūchinichi**
 20 days ~~hatsuka~~ **hatsuka** day
 21 days ~~niichinichi~~ **niichinichi**
 22 days ~~niinichi~~ **niinichi**
 23 days ~~niisaninichi~~ **niisaninichi**
 24 days ~~niyokka~~ **niyokka** day
 25 days ~~niyōgochinichi~~ **niyōgochinichi**
 26 days ~~niyorokunichi~~ **niyorokunichi**
 27 days ~~niyūshichinichi~~ **niyūshichinichi**
 28 days ~~niyūhachinichi~~ **niyūhachinichi**
 29 days ~~niyūkyūchinichi~~ **niyūkyūchinichi**
 30 days ~~sanjūchinichi~~ **sanjūchinichi**
 31 days ~~sanjūchinichi~~ **sanjūchinichi**

How many days, which day of the month?

Most of the numbers are made up of primary numerals + the counter **-nichi** (in rapid speech sometimes pronounced **-nchi**), but the numbers from 2 through 10, 14, 20, and 24 contain elements from the set of secondary numerals + the counter **-ka**.

6.14. Names of the months

The names of the months are made by adding the counter **-gatsu** to the primary numerals:

January	一月 Ichigatsu
February	二月 Nigatsu
March	三月 Sangatsu
April	四月 Shigatsu
May	五月 Gogatsu
June	六月 Rokugatsu
July	七月 Shichigatsu
August	八月 Hachigatsu
September	九月 Kugatsu
October	十月 Jūgatsu
November	十一月 Jūichigatsu
December	十二月 Jūnigatsu

Notice that the older variants for 4, 7, and 9 (**shi-**, **shichi-**, and **ku-**) are always used in the month names instead of the more common forms **yon-**, **nana-**, and **kyū**. There is also another word for January, **Shōgatsu**. Be sure to differentiate **Nigatsu** ‘(the second month =) February’ from **ni-kagetsu** ‘two months.’ To ask ‘which month’ you say **nan-gatsu**; to ask ‘how many months’ you say **nan-kagetsu**.

6.15. Giving dates

To say which year it is, you attach the counter **-nen** to the appropriate numerals as in **sen kyūhyaku gojū ni-nen** ‘1952.’ If you add the month, it follows this, and then comes the day of the month—and, if you like, the day of the week and the time of day. For example:

1 9 5 2 年 6 月 2 3 日 月曜日 午後 3 時
sen kyūhyaku gojū ni-nen Rokugatsu nijū san-nichi
getsuyōbi gogo san-ji
 3 p.m., Monday, 23 June 1952

6.16. Telling time

To say it is such-and-such o'clock, you use a primary numeral + the counter **-ji**: **go-ji desu** 'it's 5 o'clock.' If you want to say 'it's five minutes past five (5:05)' you say **go-ji go-fun desu** or **go-ji go-fun sugi desu**—the word **sugi** means 'exceeding, more than.' To say 'it's five minutes before five (4:55)' you say **go-ji go-fun mae desu**. **Mae**, of course, means 'before, in front of.' Or you can say **yo-ji gojū-go-fun desu** just as you can say 'four fifty-five' in English. To say 'at' a certain time, you use the particle **ni**: **go-ji ni kimashita** 'he came at five.'



If you want to add 'a.m.' and 'p.m.,' you put the words **gozen** 'before-noon' and **gogo** 'after-noon' in front of the time expression. So 'from 9 a.m. to 9 p.m.' is **gozen ku-ji kara gogo ku-ji made**.

To say 'half-past ten' or the like, you just add **-han** 'and a half' at the end of the time expression: **gogo roku-ji han** 'half past six in the evening.'

Notice the difference between **san-ji** '(the third hour =) 3 o'clock' and **san-jikan** '3 hours.' To ask 'what time (= which hour, what o'clock)' you say **nan-ji**. To ask 'how much time, how long (= how many hours)' you say **nan-jikan**.

「今何時ですか。」

“**Baa-ji iya-ji deso-ka**” desu.”

“What time is it now?”

6.17. -ぐらい **-gurai** / -ごろ **-goro**

The particle **gurai** means 'approximate quantity, about so much.' **Gurai** is often written (and sometimes pronounced) **kurai**. There

is a related noun **kurai** that means ‘position, rank.’ Notice also the idioms **kono-kurai** (or **kono-gurai**) and **kore-kurai** (= **kore gurai**) ‘this much, to this extent.’

4時間ぐらいに來てくれますか。

Yo-jikuguraitokitekuremasika ka.

Could you come for at least 4 p.m?

これぐらいのことで文句を言ってはいけません。

Koregurai no koto de monku o itte wa ikemasen.

You should not complain about this kind of thing.

(It's not a big deal.)

By contrast, the particle **goro** means ‘approximate point in time, about then’ and cannot be used for quantity. The idiom **kono-goro** means ‘recently’ (= **chikagoro**). Compare the related noun **koro** ‘time, era, period,’ as in **ano koro wa** ‘at that time (period).’

4時ごろに来てくれませんか。

Yo-ji goro ni kite kuremasen ka.

Could you come at around 4 p.m?

あの頃は日本はまだ貧しい国でした。

Ano koro wa Nihon wa mada mazushii kuni deshita.

Japan was still a poor country at that time.

6.18. Particle や **ya**

The particle **ya** is used to make an incomplete enumeration. When you list several things but have not exhausted all the items on your list, you use **ya**. If you do exhaust the list, giving all the items, then you connect the items with the particle **to**. Notice that the particles **to** and **ya** usually occur after every item in the list except the last. After the last item, you use whatever particle is appropriate to show the relationship between the whole phrase and the rest of the sentence.

お酒やビールやワインを買いました。

O-sake ya bīru ya wain o kaimashita.

I bought things like sake, beer, and wine.

お酒とビールとワインを買いました。

O-sake to bīru to wain o kaimashita.

I bought sake, beer, and wine.

6.19. など *nado*, なんか *nanka*

The particle **nado** is used after a noun, with or without other particles (including **ga**, **o**, and **wa**) following. The English equivalent is often ‘and the like, et cetera, and so on, or something of the sort.’ The force of the particle is to make the limits of the preceding phrase somewhat more vague. It often occurs after a group of nouns that are usually connected to each other by the particle **ya**, but sometimes the particle is omitted.

Tシャツやセーターなどを買いました。

Tishatsu ya sētā nado o kaimashita.

I bought T-shirts and sweaters and the like.

兄弟と喧嘩なんかしますか。

Kyōdai to kenka nanka shimasu ka.

Do you do such a thing as fight with your siblings?

Occasionally the particle **nado** occurs after a verb or adjective in the plain imperfect or perfect:

イギリスに留学するなどと言っています。

Igirisu ni ryūgaku suru nado to itte imasu.

He’s talking of going to study abroad in England and the like.

The particle **nanka** means ‘the likes of’ with negative or deprecatory implications:

私なんかそんなことはできません。

Watashi nanka sonna koto wa dekimasen

A person like me wouldn’t be able to do such a

thing.

英語なんか知りません。

Eigo nanka shirimasen.

I don't know any English (it's too hard for me)!

6.20. Particle か *ka* meaning 'or'

You have learned the particle **ka** as a sort of audible question mark. It also occurs after a noun with the meaning '(either...) or....' Here are some examples:

本か雑誌を買って読みましょう。

Hon ka zasshi o katte yomimashō.

I guess I'll buy a book or magazine to read.

あしたかあさって行くでしょう。

Ashita ka asatte iku deshō.

I expect he'll go either tomorrow or the next day.

ほうれん草を1束か2束買いましょう。

Hōrensō o hito-tabā ka futa-tabā kaimashō.

I guess I'll buy 1 or 2 bunches of spinach.

青木さんか鈴木さんが来ます。

Aoki-san ka Suzuki-san ga kimasu.

Mr. Aoki or Mr. Suzuki (or someone) will come.

Notice the difference in meaning between these two sentences:

お茶かコーヒーは好きですか。

O-cha ka kōhī wa suki desu ka.

Do you like tea or coffee? (either one)

お茶が好きですか。コーヒーが好きですか。

O-cha ga suki desu ka. Kōhī ga suki desu ka.

Do you like tea? Or, do you like coffee? (which one)

6.21. Particles は *wa* and を *o* with いかがですか *ikaga desu ka*

If you want to offer a person some tea, you usually say:

お茶はいかがですか。

O-cha wa ikaga desu ka.

How about some tea?

In this expression, the particle used is **wa**. If you use a quantity word, however, the particle must be **o**.

お茶をも杯少いかがですか。

O-cha o ipōsūkagaji desu ka.

How about a little of tea?

6.22. ひとつ *hitotsu*

Sometimes the word **hitotsu** is used, not to mean ‘one’ of something but to mean ‘just,’ ‘a little,’ ‘some,’ or ‘once’:

中華料理を一ついかがですか。

Chūka-ryōri o hitotsu ikaga desu ka.

How about some Chinese food?

では、田中さんに一つ協力してみましょう。

Dewa Tanaka-san ni hitotsu kyōryoku shite mimashō.

Okay then, let me collaborate with Mr. Tanaka a little.

6.23. Only: -だけ *-dake* and -しか *-shika*

There are two common ways to say ‘only’ in Japanese: **dake** and **shika**. **Dake** is a particle that means something like ‘to the extent of’ and ‘to the limit of.’ When following a noun that would ordinarily take the particle **ga** or **o**, usually only **dake** occurs; but if the noun is followed by some particle other than **ga** or **o**, then both **dake** and the particle occur—usually in that order. Here are some examples of **dake**:

昨日の晩は私だけ映画を見に行っただけです。

Kinō no ban wa watashi dake eiga o mi ni itta n desu.

Last night I was the only one who went to see the movie.

この雑誌だけ読みませんでした。

Kono zasshi dake yomimasen deshita.

This is the only magazine I didn't read.

これは先生だけに言ってください。

Kore wa sensei dake ni itte kudasai.

Please tell this only to the teacher.

Dake sometimes occurs after a verb or adjective with the meaning 'as much as': **hoshii dake** 'as much as you desire (as is desired),' **dekiru dake** 'as much as possible.' Examples:

あきただけ食やま書きました。

~~Dake dake~~ **Aki dake** tabemashita.

~~I ate everything there was.~~

The other common way to say 'only' is to use the particle **shika** 'but only.' This particle is always followed by the negative; **shika** + the negative has about the same meaning as **dake** + the affirmative: **Kudamono dake kaimashita** = **Kudamono shika kaimasen deshita** 'I only bought fruit; I bought nothing but fruit.' The basic meaning of **shika** is something like '(nothing) but, except for.' So **Tanaka-san shika kimasen deshita** means something like 'except for Mr. Tanaka (somebody) didn't come,' that is: 'ONLY Mr. Tanaka came.'

The particle **shika**, like the particle **dake**, usually does not occur together with the particles **ga** or **o**. If it occurs with other particles, the others precede **shika**. With **dake** it is more common for the other particles to follow:

先生だけに言いました。

~~Sensei dake~~ **Sensei** ni iimashita.

I told only the teacher.

If you want to use ‘only’ + a negative in English (‘Only the teacher I didn’t tell’), you have to use **dake** in Japanese, since **shika** + the negative would give just the opposite meaning:

先生だけに言いませんでした。

Sensei dake ni iimasen deshita.

The teacher is the only one I didn’t tell.

Both **shika** + the negative (but with an affirmative meaning in the English translation) and **dake** with either the negative (with negative meaning in English) or the affirmative are used to translate English ‘only’ after an ordinary noun. After a number or quantity word, just **shika** + the negative is used to mean ‘only.’ **Dake** means ‘just, neither more nor less than’:

十時間かかりました。

Jū-jikan kakarimashita.

It took ten hours.

十時間だけかかりました。

Jū-jikan dake kakarimashita.

It took just ten hours. (Which seems neither long nor short.)

十時間しかかかりませんでした。

Jū-jikan shika kakarimasen deshita.

It took only ten hours. (Which seems short.)

6.24. Approximate numbers

Two consecutive numbers can often be combined to mean ‘about 2 or 3, about 3 or 4’, etc. These are then added to a single counter.

店員が二年ばかりかかると言う。

Rekūnigachi-san-wa kakashitadeshō.

~~They will take 2 or 3 years~~ clerks.

Not all possible combinations occur. For instance, none

occur with the counter **-ji** ‘o’clock’ or **-gatsu** ‘month.’ In such cases, you can use two full words connected by the particle **ka** ‘or’:

3時から4時に来るでしょう。

Shigijitsu ka-yōgatsu deshō.

He will come April and May 4 o’clock.

The secondary numerals usually do not combine in the same way. Instead, the two consecutive numbers are connected by **ka**:

バラを1束か2束買います。

Bara o hito-tabu ka futa-tabu kaimasu.

I will buy one or two bunches of roses.



6.25. Fractions

To express ordinary fractions, like $\frac{3}{4}$, the Japanese say something like ‘three of four parts’ using the counter **-bun** ‘part.’ For ‘one-half’ there is the special word **hanbun**, and for ‘so-many and a half’ the regular number takes the suffix **-han** ‘and a half’:

このクラスの四分の三は男子です。

Kono kurasu no yonbun no san wa danshi desu.

Three-quarters of this class are boys.

武さんはもらったお金の半分を私にくれました。

Takeshi-san wa moratta o-kane no hanbun o watashi ni kuremashita.

Takeshi gave me half of the money he received.

水を3カップ半入れてください。

Mizu o san-kappu han irete kudasai.

Please add 3½ cups of water.

月曜日の朝，11時半にここへ来てください。

Getsuyōbi no asa, jūichi-ji han ni koko e kite kudasai.

Please come here at 11:30 a.m. on Monday morning.

21は63の三分の一です。

Nijū-ichi wa rokujū-san no sanbun no ichi desu.

21 is one-third of 63.

6.26. Percentage

The old-fashioned way of expressing percentage in Japanese is to use three different counters: **-rin** ‘.001 (0.1 percent),’ **-bu** ‘.01 (1 percent);’ and **-wari** ‘.10 (10 percent).’ In-between percentages are given by combining these numbers: **niwari sanbu ichirin** ‘.231 (23.1 percent).’ To say ‘200 is 25 percent of 800’ you say **Nihyaku wa happyaku no ni-wari go-bu desu**. However, **pāsento** ‘percent’ is more commonly used in modern Japanese. For example, the same sentence can be said as:

200は800の25%です。

Nihyaku wa happyaku no nijū go-pāsento desu.

200 is 25 percent of 800.

%

Other examples:

今日は全て3割引きですよ。

Kyō wa subete san-wari biki desu yo.

Today, everything is 30% off!

この会社の20パーセントの社員はタバコを吸い

ます。

Kono kaisha no nijup-pāsento no shain wa tabako o suimasu.

Twenty percent of the employees in this company smoke.

6.27. Multiples

To express ‘two times (as much or as big, etc., as something else), three times, four times’ and so forth, you use the counter - **bai** ‘multiple.’

それはその2倍倍です。

Rokujū wa sonijūni baidobai desu.

~~This is 23 times as~~ much as) that.

To state simple multiplication problems, you can say, for example:

20に3を掛けると60になります。

Nijū ni san o kakeru to rokujū ni narimasu.

$20 \times 3 = 60.$

6.28. ずつ **zutsu**

The particle **zutsu** is placed immediately after a number (numeral + counter) to mean something like ‘distributively.’ For the English translation you will find its equivalent as ‘each, every, at a time, apiece.’ The exact reference of the phrase NUMBER + **zutsu** is sometimes in doubt. The sentence **Hito-tabai zutsu kaimashita** could mean (1) Everybody bought one bunch; (2) We bought one bunch of each (vegetable); (3) We bought one bunch at a time. The total information actually supplied to us by the sentence is: somebody bought, one bunch was the extent, and there was a distributive relationship between the buying and the one bunch. The NATURE of the relationship of ‘each of us,’ ‘each (vegetable),’ and ‘at a time’ has to be inferred from the context or the situation. Often a few additional words

in the sentence will help indicate which of the three distributive relationships is referred to:

みんなが一束ずつ買いました。

Minna ga hito-tabu zutsu kaimashita.

Everybody bought one bunch apiece.

ほうれん草とねぎを一束ずつ買いました。

Hōrensō to negi o hito-tabu zutsu kaimashita.

We bought one bunch each of spinach and green onion.

毎朝一束ずつ買いました。

Maiasa hito-tabu zutsu kaimashita.

We bought one bunch (at a time) every morning.

These sentences, too, could be construed with the other meanings, but the additional contexts make the given meanings more probable. There is a similar ambiguity with the English word ‘each.’ Here are some additional examples of **-zutsu**:

昨晚6人の友達に手紙を1通ずつ書きました。

Sakuban roku-nin no tomodachi ni tegami o ittō zutsu kakimashita.

Last night I wrote each of my six friends a letter.

授業時間にことわざを一つずつ習いました。

Jugyō-jikan ni kotowaza o hitotsu zutsu naraimashita.

We learned one proverb in each class.

6.29. ごとに **goto ni**, おきに **oki ni**

The expression **goto ni** is added to a noun or noun phrase to give the meaning ‘every so many, each and every’: **ni-jikan goto ni** ‘every two hours,’ **san-nen goto ni** ‘every three years.’ The expression **oki ni** (from the infinitive of **oku** ‘puts aside’) means ‘regularly skipping’: **ichi-nichi oki ni** ‘every other day,’ **san-gen oki ni** ‘every fourth house.’

赤ん坊が生まれたら、夜中に2, 3時間ごとにおこされた。

Akanbō ga umaretara, yonaka ni ni san-jikan goto ni okosareta.

After the baby was born, I had to wake up every 2 to 3 hours at night.

3ヶ月おきに、エンジンオイルを交換します。

San-kagetsu oki ni, enjin oiru o kōkan shimasu.

I change the engine oil every three months.

1週間ごとに携帯の充電をします。

Is-shūkan goto ni keitai no jūden o shimasu.

I charge my cell phone every week.

6.30. Stores that end in 屋 *ya*

We can refer to some types of stores by a friendly term that ends in **ya**. For example, bookstores are called either **hon'ya** or **shoten**. The former sounds friendly, but the latter sounds formal. In addition, **-ya** can also mean the person who is in the profession in some instances.

bookstore 本屋 **hon'ya**

鞋屋 **kutsuya**

toy store 玩具屋 **omochaya**

flower 花屋 **hanaya**

liquor 酒屋 **sakaya**

fish 魚屋 **sakaya** fish seller

肉屋 **niku ya**

beer 啤屋 **nomiya**

bakery 餅屋 **pan'ya**

electronic 電器屋 **denki ya**

ramen shop ラーメン屋 **rāmen'ya**

sushi 寿司屋 **sushiya**

Japanese 日本屋 **izakaya** bar

bebecue 焼肉屋 **yakiniku ya** bebecue restaurant



[cue 06-3]

Conversation

Nana (N) and Akiko (A) are talking.

N: 日曜日は何をしましたか。

Nichiyōbi wa nani o shimashita ka.

What did you do on Sunday?

A: 渋谷に買い物に行きました。

Shibuya ni kaimono ni ikimashita.

I went to Shibuya to shop.

N: 一人ですか。

Hitori de desu ka.

By yourself?

A: いいえ, 2人の友達と3人で行きました。

Īe, futari no tomodachi to san-nin de ikimashita.

No, I went there with two of my friends—three of us went there.

N: 何を買いましたか。

Nani o kaimashita ka.

What did you buy?

A: ショルダーバッグと靴を二足買ったんです。

Shorudā baggu to, kutsu o ni-soku katta n desu.

I bought a shoulder bag and two pairs of shoes.

N: 安かったんですか。

Yasukatta n desu ka.

Were they cheap?

A: ええ。セールだったんです。すべて50%オフ！

Ē. Sēru datta n desu. Subete gojup-pāsento ofu.

Yes. They had a sale. Everything was 50 percent off!

N: 半額ですか。

Hangaku desu ka.

Half price?

A: ええ。友達はドレスや，コートを買っていました。

Ē. Tomodachi wa doresu ya kōto o katte imashita.

Yes. My friends were buying dresses, coats, and things.

N: いいですね。

li desu ne.

That's great!

A: お昼はイタリア料理のレストランで食べました。

O-hiru wa Itaria ryōri no resutoran de tabemashita.

We had lunch at an Italian restaurant.

N: どうでしたか。

Dō deshita ka.

How was it?

A: まあまあ美味しかったです。

Māmā oishikatta desu.

It was quite delicious.



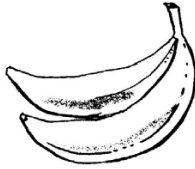
Exercises

I. Read the following numbers.

1. 56
2. 397
3. 8,800
4. 1,290
5. 13,500

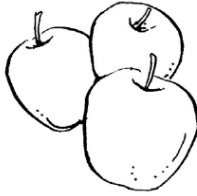
II. Following the example, say how many items there are.

Example:

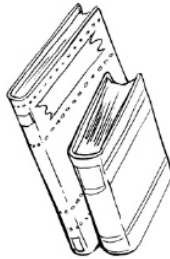


バナナ banana (bananas)

バナナが2本あります。 **Banana ga ni-hon arimasu.**



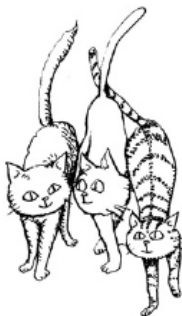
1. りんご **ringo** (apples)



2. 本 **hon** (books)



3. 切手 **kitte** (stamps)



4. ねこ **neko** (cats)



5. 子ども **kodomo** (children)

III. Say the following in Japanese.

1. 3:15 p.m.
2. January 1st
3. Monday, April 9th
4. July 10, 1987
5. September 20, 2012

IV. Choose the appropriate item in the parentheses.

1. 3時（ごろ・など）に来てください。
San-ji (goro, nado) ni kite kudasai.
2. 5に3を（ひく・たす）といくつですか。
Go ni san o (hiku, tasu) to ikutsu desu ka.

3. コーヒーを5杯（ごろ・ぐらい）飲みます。

Kōhī o go-hai (goro, gurai) nomimasu.

4. 300円しか（あります・ありません）。

Sanbyaku-en shika (arimasu, arimasen).

5. (2時・2時間)ごとに電車があります。

(Ni-ji, Ni-jikan) goto ni densha ga arimasu.

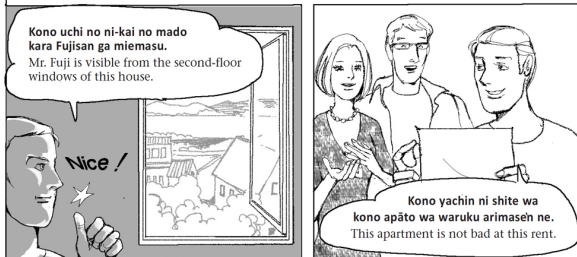
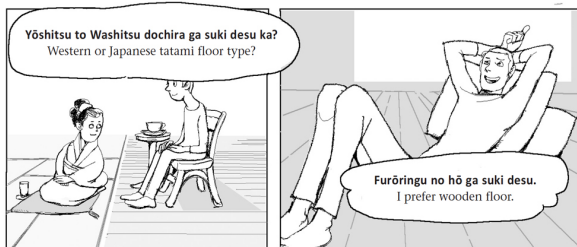
Answers:

I 1. ごじゅうろく **gojū roku** 2. さんびゃくきゅうじゅうなな **sanbyaku kyūjū nana** 3. はっせんはつびゃく **hassen happyaku** 4. せんにひゃくきゅうじゅう **sen nihyaku kyūjū** 5. いちまんさんぜんごひゃく **ichiman sanzen gohyaku**

II 1. りんごが三つあります。 **Ringo ga mittsu arimasu.** 2. 本が二冊あります。 **Hon ga ni-satsu arimasu.** 3. 切手が四枚あります。 **Kitte ga yon-mai arimasu.** 4. 猫が三匹います。 **Neko ga san-biki imasu.** 5. 子どもが二人います。 **Kodomo ga futari imasu.**

III 1. 午後3時15分 **gogo san-ji jūgo-fun** 2. 1月1日 **Ichigatsu tsuitachi** 3. 4月9日月曜日 **Shigatsu kokonoka Getsuyōbi** 4. 1987年7月10日 **sen kyūhyaku hachijūnana-nen Shichigatsu tōka** 5. 2012年9月20日 **nisen jūni-nen Kugatsu hatsuka**

IV 1. ごろ **goro** 2. たす **tasu** 3. ぐらい **gurai** 4. ありません **arimasen** 5. 2時間 **ni-jikan**



LESSON 7

Have You Been in a Japanese

House?

日本の家に入ったことある？

Nihon no ie ni Haitta Koto Aru?

In this lesson you will learn vocabulary items that refer to the types, properties, and parts of houses in Japan. You will also learn additional verb forms, particles, and structures so you can express your opinions and convey your understandings more effectively.





[cue 07-1]

Basic Sentences

和室と洋室と、どちらの方が好きですか。

Washitsu to yōshitsu to, dochira no hō ga suki desu ka.

Between Japanese-style rooms and Western-style rooms, which ones do you like better?

和室には床の間というところがあります。

Washitsu ni wa tokonoma to iu tokoro ga arimasu.

In a Japanese-style room, there is a place called a tokonoma.

床の間にはたいてい掛け軸が掛けてあります。

Tokonoma ni wa taitei kakejiku ga kakete arimasu.

In the tokonoma a scroll is usually hung.

和室は居間として使えますし、寝室としても使えます。

Washitsu wa ima to shite tsukaemasu shi, shinshitsu to shite mo tsukaemasu.

Japanese-style rooms can be used as a living room, and also as a bedroom.

家を建てたばかりです。

Ie o tateta bakari desu.

I just built a house.

今週は住むところを探そうと思っています。

Konshū wa sumu tokoro o sagasō to omotte imasu.

I'm thinking of finding a place to live this week.

下なる部屋に入るときには、玄関で靴を脱いでください。」

“Nerumodoka ni hairu toki ni wa, genkan de kutsu o nuide kudasai.”

“When you enter a house, please take off your shoes in the foyer.”

家賃を払うのを忘れないようにしてください。

Yachin o harau no o wasurenai yō ni shite kudasai.

Try not to forget to pay the rent.

靴を履いたまま家の中に入らないようにしてください。

Kutsu o haita mama ie no naka ni hairanai yō ni shite kudasai.

Try not to enter a house with your shoes on.

そんなに大変ではありませんから、心配しないでください。

Sonna ni taihen de wa arimasen kara, shinpai shinaide kudasai.

It's not that hard, so don't worry.

トイレは風呂場と同じところにありますか。それとも、違うところにありますか。

Toire wa furoba to onaji tokoro ni arimasu ka. Soretomo, chigau tokoro ni arimasu ka.

Is the toilet in the same place as the bathroom? Or is it in a different place?

窓から富士山が見えます。

Mado kara Fujisan ga miemasu.

We can see Mt. Fuji through the window.

今度は遊びに行ってみます。

Kondo asobi ni itte mimasu.

I'll try visiting there next time.



[cue 07-2]

Basic Vocabulary

HOUSING

house

condominium ~~マンション~~ apartment in neat-looking residential buildings that usually have at least three stories

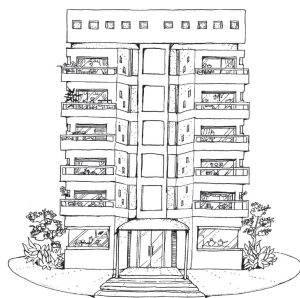
apartment ~~アパート~~ residential buildings that usually have one or two stories

company ~~会社~~ housing

company ~~会社~~ territory

Manshon

The English word *mansion* refers to a huge, gigantic house like the one that Michael Jackson lived in. However, the Japanese word **manshon** refers to a condominium or an apartment in a relatively neat-looking, new, and tall apartment building. So, anyone with a decent job can rent or buy a **manshon** in Japan. On the other hand, the word **apâto** refers to an apartment in a relatively old and at most two-story building. An **apâto** definitely doesn't have an elevator, whereas a **manshon** usually does have one. The rent for an **apâto** is often much cheaper than that for a **manshon**.



PARTS OF A HOUSE

玄関 **genkan** /yer

West **yoshitsu** room

和室 **washitsu** room

寝室 **shinshitsu**

Kitchen / **kitchin**

toilet / **toire**

風呂場 **furoba**

窓 **mado**

壁 **kabe**

屏風 **byōbu**

道 **dō**

障子 **shōji** sliding paper doors

障子 **shōji** sliding paper doors

床の間 **tokonoma** recess used for ornamental purposes and as a sort of family shrine

THINGS IN A HOUSE

絵 **e** paintings, drawings, illustrations

花瓶 **kabin**

スリッパ **surippa**

電子レンジ **denshi renji**

洗濯機 **sentakukie**

乾燥機 **kansōki**

冷蔵庫 **reizouko**

* Also see Basic Vocabulary in Lesson 2.

VERBS

着 **kiru** wears (7.25.)

履 **haku** wears (7.25.)

脱 **nugu** 脱ぎます **nugu/nugimasu**

着 **tsuku** 着きます **tsuku/tsukimasu**

探 **sagasu** 探します **sagasu/sagashimasu**

借 **kariru** 借ります **kariru/karimasu**

開 **akeru** 開けます **akeru/akemasu**

閉 **shimeru** 閉めます **shimeru/shimemasu**

入 **hairu** 入ります **hairu/hairimasu**

出 **deru** 出ます **deru/demasu**

坐 **suwaru** 座ります **suwaru/suwarimasu**

着 **tsukeru** 着けます **tsukeru/tsukemasu**

脱 **tsukeru** 脱ぎます **tsukeru/tsukemasu**

違 **chigau** 違います **chigau/chigaimasu**

hangs ・ 掛けます **kakeru/kakemasu**
hangs ・ 掛かります **kakaru/kakarimasu**

ADJECTIVES

is wide **hirosai**
is narrow **semai** not spacious
is bright **akarui**
is dark **kurai**
is dirty **kitanai**
is new **atarashii**
is old **furui**
is noisy **urusai**

ADJECTIVAL NOUNS

quiet **shizuka (da)**
kind **beni (da)**
concrete **koncrete (da)**

Structure Notes

7.1. Quotations

When you want to quote what somebody says, asks, thinks, believes, writes, etc., you either do it directly by quoting his exact words, or indirectly by giving the gist of what he says. So you can say either, “Kenji said, ‘I’m going to see a movie,’” or “Kenji said that he was going to see a movie.” The former is a direct quotation, and the latter is an indirect quotation. The equivalent Japanese sentences are as follows:

健二は「映画を見に行く。」と言いました。
Kenji wa “Eiga o mi ni iku.” to iimashita.

Kenji said, “I’m going to see a movie.”

健二は映画を見に行くと言いました。

Kenji wa eiga o mi ni iku to iimashita.

Kenji said that he was going to see a movie.

Notice how the tense of English verbs sometimes changes when we shift a direct quotation to an indirect quotation while it doesn’t in Japanese, as shown above. The Japanese quotation marks are 「 and 」, but the particle **to** shows that the preceding word, phrase, or clause is a quotation, either direct or indirect.

When the content of a quotation is a question, it ends in **ka**, and the particle **to** is optionally placed after **ka**:

健二は私に映画を見に行くか(と)聞きました。

**Kenji wa watashi ni eiga o mi ni iku ka (to)
kikimashita.**

Kenji asked me if I was going to see a movie.

It is more common to use a PLAIN form before the quoting particle **to**, but sometimes you will hear the POLITE form, especially if the speaker is trying to quote the exact words (direct quote). Sometimes you can’t tell how much of the sentence is to be included in the quotation, except by context. The sentence **Watashi wa kyōshi da to iimashita** can mean either ‘I said that (somebody) is a teacher’ or ‘(somebody) said that I am a teacher.’ Unless the situation indicated otherwise, the topic **watashi wa** would probably be taken to refer both to the subject of the quotation and to the person who said it: ‘I said that I was a teacher.’

The quoting particle **to**, not to be confused with the particle meaning ‘with’ or ‘and,’ or with the particle meaning ‘whenever, if,’ is often pronounced with a special high pitch and an abruptly clipped vowel. You will sometimes hear this special high pitch used with other words. It shows that the speaker is injecting an added liveliness, a special color, to his words. Japanese often make a slight pause before, and sometimes after, the quoting particle.

In quoting a question, you use the verb **kiku** ‘asks’ or the phrase **kiite miru** ‘tries asking, asks to see, finds out.’ The verb **kiku** also means ‘listens, hears’:

マネージャーからききました。

Manējā kara kikimashita.

I heard it from the manager.

音楽をききました。

Ongaku o kikimashita.

I listened to music.

お巡りさんにききました。

Omawari-san ni kikimashita.

I asked the police officer.

原さんにききました。

Hara-san ni kikimashita.

I heard from Miss Hara.

The plain copula **da** is usually omitted before **ka**. If you are quoting a question like **shihainin desu ka** ‘is it the manager,’ which includes the polite copula, instead of replacing **desu** with the plain form **da**, you usually omit the copula altogether: **Shihainin ka to kikimashita** ‘He asked if it was the manager.’ If an adjective is used, of course, you just put it in the plain form.

建築家です。/ 建築家だと言いました。

Kenchikuka desu. / Kenchikuka da to iimashita.

He is an architect. / He said that he is an architect.

建築家ですか。/ 建築家かと聞きました。

Kenchikuka desu ka. / Kenchikuka ka to kikimashita.

Are you an architect? / I asked if he is an architect.

部屋は大きいです。/ 部屋は大きいと言いました。

Heya wa ōkii desu. / Heya wa ōkii to iimashita.

The room is big. / He said the room was big.

部屋は大きいですか。/ 部屋は大きいかと聞きました。

た。

Heya wa ōkii desu ka. / Heya wa ōkii ka to kiki mashita.

Is the room big? / He asked if the room was big.



The meaning of the quotation particle **to** is something like ‘close quotes’ or ‘end of quotation,’ but it gets translated various ways in English: he said THAT he’d come, she asked IF there was any, I thought (ZERO) I’d go. Here are some more examples of quotations:

どの建物が郵便局か聞いてみましょう。

Dono tatemono ga yūbinkyoku ka kiite mimashō.

Let’s ask which building is the post office.

30分歩くと疲れると言うんです。

Sanjup-pun aruku to tsukareru to iu n desu.

He says that he gets tired when he walks for a half-hour.

主人は出かけるときに、すぐ帰ると言ったのです。

Shujin wa dekakeru toki ni, sugu kaeru to itta no desu.

My husband said he’d be right back when he went out.

田中さんが来たとき、切符をもう買ったかと聞きました。

Tanaka-san ga kita toki, kippu o mō katta ka to kikimashō.

When Mr. Tanaka arrives, let’s ask him if he has

already bought the tickets.

不動産屋に話すべきだと言いました。

Fudōsanya ni hanasu beki da to iimashita.

He said that I should talk with a real estate agent.

その仕事をしたくないと言った人は解雇されました。

Sono shigoto o shitaku nai to itta hito wa kaiko saremashita.

The people who said that they did not want to do that job were fired.

無駄だと言ったんですが、なんとか家賃を安くできないかと聞いてみると言いました。

Muda da to itta n desu ga, nantoka yachin o yasuku dekinai ka to kiite miru to iimashita.

I said that it's useless, but he said that he will ask them if they can make the rent cheaper somehow.

7.2. と言う *to iu*

When a phrase ending in **to iu** (**to yuu**) modifies a noun, there are several possible meanings. If the noun refers to a message or the like, the part preceding **to iu** may be a quotation or paraphrase of the content.

田中さんが結婚したという噂を聞きました。

Tanaka-san ga kekkon shita to iu uwasa o kikimashita.

I heard the rumor that said that Mr. Tanaka got married.

If the part preceding **to iu** is a name, the expression means 'which is called, which is named':

田中次郎という男の人を知っていますか。

Tanaka Jirō to iu otoko no hito o shitte imasu ka.

Do you know a man called Jiro Tanaka?

妹は高田町という町に住んでいます。

Imōto wa Takada-chō to iu machi ni sunde imasu.

My sister lives in a neighborhood called Takada-cho.

花というレストランで食べました。

Hana to iu resutoran de tabemashita.

I ate at a restaurant called Hana.

If the noun modified is **kotoba** ‘word,’ **sentensu** or **bunshō** ‘sentence,’ or **ji** ‘written character,’ the expression **to iu** means something like ‘which is said, which is read,’ that is, it refers directly to the word, sentence, or character.

オタクという言葉は今はだれでも知っています。

Otaku to iu kotoba wa ima wa dare de mo shitte imasu.

The word “otaku” is known by everyone now.

花よりだんごという諺を聞いたことがありますか。

Hana yori dango to iu kotowaza o kiita koto ga arimasu ka.

Have you ever heard the proverb “Hana yori dango”? (*Lit.*, “Flowers rather than dumplings.”)

心という漢字はきれいな形ですね。

Kokoro to iu kanji wa kirei na katachi desu ne.

The kanji character “kokoro” is such a pretty shape, isn’t it?

To say ‘How do you say this word in Japanese?,’ you say **Kono kotoba wa Nihongo de nan to iimasu ka.** To say ‘How do you say this sentence in Japanese?,’ you usually just say **Kore wa Nihongo de dō iimasu ka.** To say ‘How do you write this sentence in Japanese?,’ you say **Kore wa Nihongo de dō kakimasu ka.**

If the expression is followed by **koto** or **no** ‘fact,’ the meaning is something like ‘the fact that.’ This sort of expression is often used with verbs of knowing or informing.

家賃が払えないということは、お金がないということですね。

Yachin ga haraenai to iu koto wa, o-kane ga nai to iu koto desu ne.

The fact that you cannot pay the rent means you do not have money, right?

母がよく怒るのはストレスのせいだろう。

Haha ga yoku okoru no wa sutoresu no sei darō.

The fact that my mother often gets angry is due to stress.

The expression **nan to iu** before a noun sometimes has the flavor of ‘just what, just which.’ It’s a somewhat less specific way to inquire than using **dono** ‘which’:

何の本で本を読みますか。

Nandohon de hon o yomimasu ka.

With which book is it?

If you have a certain limited number of possibilities in mind when you ask ‘which’ or ‘what,’ you will probably say **dono**, but if the field is wide open for an answer, you are more likely to say **nan to iu**. This expression is sometimes used as a sort of exclamation ‘What a...!’:

何といういいお天気でしょうね。

Nan to iu ii otenki deshō nē.

My, what a nice day (it seems to be)!

7.3. The plain tentative

When you embed a sentence like **iku deshō** ‘he’ll probably go’ or **itta deshō** ‘he probably went,’ you usually change the polite tentative copula **deshō** into the corresponding plain form **darō**:

行くだろうと思います。

Iku darō to omoimasu.

I think he’ll probably go.

行っただろうと思います。

Itta darō to omoimasu.

I think he must have gone.

The word preceding **darō** may be a verb form, as above, or it may be a noun or an adjective. For instance, to embed the sentence **Kyōshi deshō** 'He must be a teacher,' you say something like **Kyōshi darō to omoimasu** 'I think he must be a teacher.' To embed the sentence **kodomo wa nemui deshō** 'The child is probably sleepy,' you say something like **Kodomo wa nemui darō to omoimasu** 'I think the child is sleepy.' And to embed the sentence **Kodomo wa nemukatta deshō** 'The child must have been sleepy,' you say something like **Kodomo wa nemukatta darō to omoimasu** 'I think the child must have been sleepy.' In rapid speech the form **-katta darō** is usually contracted to **-kattarō**, so you will hear **Kodomo wa nemukattarō to omoimasu**.

Just as there is a form **darō** corresponding to **deshō**, there is a plain tentative form corresponding to the polite tentative form of each verb. The polite tentative forms, you will recall, end in **-mashō**. The plain tentative forms end in **-yō** for vowel verbs, and in **-ō** for consonant verbs. The plain tentative forms for **kuru** and **suru** are irregularly **koyō** and **shiyō**. The plain tentative forms for verbs are also called VOLITIONAL FORMS because they mean 'let's do...' or 'wants and intends to do....' Here are some example verbs in these forms:

	Meaning	Imperfect -(r)u	Plain Tentative (volitional) -(y)ō	Polite tentative -mashō
Vowel Verbs	eats	tabe-ru	tabe-yō	tabe-mashō
	looks at	mi-ru	mi-yō	mi-mashō
Consonant Verbs	returns	kaer-u	kaer-ō	kaer-i-mashō
	wins	kat(s)-u	kat-ō	kach-i-mashō
	talks	hanas-u	hanas-ō	hanash-i-mashō
	buys	ka(w)-u	ka-ō	ka-i-mashō
	writes	kak-u	kak-ō	kak-i-mashō
	swims	oyog-u	oyog-ō	oyog-i-mashō
	calls	yob-u	yob-ō	yob-i-mashō
	reads	yom-u	yom-ō	yom-i-mashō
Irregular Verbs	dies	shin-u	shin-ō	shin-i-mashō
	comes	kuru	koyō	kimashō
	does	suru	shiyō	shimashō

These plain tentative verbs are used when you want to embed a sentence that would, if not embedded, end in the polite tentative with the meaning ‘let’s do so-and-so’ or ‘I think I’ll do so-and-so.’ For example, if a friend says to you **Kōen e sanpo ni ikimashō** ‘Let’s go to the park for a walk,’ you could report his suggestion this way: **Taro wa koen e sanpo ni ikō to iimashita** ‘Taro suggested we go to the park for walk.’ If you are thinking **Go-han o tabete kara sugu benkyō shimashō** ‘I’ll study right after eating,’ you will probably say **Go-han o tabete kara sugu benkyō shiyō to omoimasu** ‘I’ll think I’ll study right after eating.’ Of course, if you’re really talking to yourself, you won’t use polite forms at all; you’ll use plain style instead. Here are some further examples of the plain tentative:

5時半ごろに家へ帰ろうと思っていましたが、帰
れませんでした。

**Go-ji han goro ni uchi e kaerō to omotte imashita ga,
kaeremassen deshita.**

I was thinking I would return home around half
past five, but I couldn’t.

あした不動産屋に行ってみようと思います。

Ashita fudōsan’ya ni itte miyō to omoimasu.

I’m thinking of going to the realtor’s office
tomorrow.

あしたは雨はふらないだろうと言っていました。

Ashita wa ame wa furanai darō to itte imashita.

(He) was saying that it wouldn't rain tomorrow.

田中さんはそんな物は買わなかったろうと思います。

Tanaka-san wa sonna mono wa kawanakatta rō to omoimasu.

I don't think Mr. Tanaka would have bought such a thing.

兄はいっしょにテニスをしようと言いました。

Ani wa issho ni tennis o shiyō to iimashita.

My brother suggested we play tennis together.

7.4. Tentative (volitional) + とする *to suru*

The plain tentative (or volitional) sometimes occurs followed by the particle **to** and some form of the verb **suru** 'does.' This sort of expression has two different meanings. One meaning is 'is about to do something.' This expression is usually in a non-final clause, followed by a clause that tells of something that happened. For example:

出かけようとしたときに、友達が遊びに来たんです。

Dekakeyō to shita toki ni, tomodachi ga asobi ni kita n desu.

When I was about to go out, a friend dropped in for a visit.

This usage may be combined with the use of **tokoro** to mean 'just':

掃除をしようとしているところです。

Sōji o shiyō to shite iru tokoro desu.

I'm just on the point of cleaning.

掃除をしようとしているところでした。

Sōji o shiyō to shite iru tokoro deshita.

I was just on the point of cleaning.

出かけようとしたところに、友達が遊びに来たんです。

Dekakeyō to shita tokoro ni, tomodachi ga asobi ni kita n desu.

Just as I was about to go out, a friend dropped in for a visit.

The other meaning of the tentative + **to suru** is “attempt” with the usual implication that the attempt was unsuccessful.

うそをつこうとしましたが、つけませんでした。

Uso o tsukō to shimashita ga, tsukemasen deshita.

I tried to lie, but I couldn't.

泥棒して逃げようとしたところを警備員に見つかりました。

Dorobō shite nigeyō to shita tokoro o keibiin ni mitsukarimashita.

A security guard found me when I was about to run away after stealing.

(Compare **to suru** (attempt) ‘try to do...’ with **-te miru** (trial) ‘try doing...’ discussed in 7.6.)

7.5. Noun + として **to shite** / にして **ni shite**

When a noun is followed by **to shite** or **to shite wa**, the English equivalent is ‘as,’ ‘for,’ or ‘considered as’ in expressions like ‘for a renter,’ ‘as an assistant.’ The particle **ni** usually substitutes for **to** when the characteristic is more permanent: ‘for an American,’ ‘as a woman,’ ‘being a child,’ etc.

マンションの管理人としてここで働いています。

Manshon no kanrinin to shite koko de hataraitte imasu.

I'm working as a caretaker of this *manshon*

(apartment building) here.

教師としてはこんな映画をクラスで見せるわけにはいきません。

Kyōshi to shite wa konna eiga o kurasu de miseru wake ni wa ikimasen.

I cannot show such a movie in class as a teacher.

アメリカの人にしては日本語が上手ですね。

Amerika no hito ni shite wa Nihongo ga jōzu desu ne.

His Japanese is quite good for an American, isn't it?

この家賃にしてはこのアパートは悪くありませんね。

Kono yachin ni shite wa kono apāto wa waruku arimasen ne.

This apartment is not bad for this rent.

7.6. Gerund (*te*-form) + みる *miru*

An expression consisting of the gerund of a verb + some form of the verb *miru* 'sees' has two slightly different meanings: 'does something to see (how it will turn out), 'does something and finds out,' or 'tries to do something (to see how it will turn out).' Compare this with the meaning of the tentative + *to suru* 'tries to do (but doesn't succeed), starts to do' discussed in 7.4.

あのカラオケボックスに行ってみましょうか。

Ano karaoke bokkusu ni itte mimashō ka.

Shall we try going to that karaoke box?

日本に住んでみたいです。

Nihon ni sunde mitai desu.

I want to try living in Japan.

お兄ちゃんに聞いてみるから、ちょっと待ってて。

Onichan ni kiite miru kara, chotto mattete.

I'll just find out from my brother, so wait here a

minute.

大家さんに頼んでみたんですが、無駄でした。

Ōya-san ni tanonde mita n desu ga, muda deshita.

I tried asking my landlord, but it was in vain.

7.7. Desideratives

To say ‘I want to do something,’ you use a special kind of adjective that is derived from verb infinitives. The infinitive, you will recall, is the verb form that ends in ZERO for vowel verbs (**tabe**, **ne**, **mi**) and in **-i** for consonant verbs (**kaeri**, **hanashi**, **oyogi**, **kaki**) and irregular verbs (**ki**, **shi**). To this infinitive form you add the ending **-tai**. The resulting form is called a “desiderative” or “desiderative adjective,” because it means something is desired to be done.

The final **-i** of the ending **-tai** is itself, of course, the regular adjective ending for the plain imperfect. A desiderative adjective is inflected just like any other adjective. Compare a regular adjective (e.g. **takai** ‘expensive’) with desiderative adjectives with a verb (e.g. **taberu** ‘eats,’ and **yomu** ‘reads’):

	Adjective	Vowel Verb	Consonant Verb
Imperfect	takai is expensive	tabe-tai wants to eat	yom-i-tai wants to read
Infinitive	takaku being expensive	tabe-taku wanting to eat	yom-i-taku wanting to read
Gerund	takakute expensive and	tabe-takute wants to eat and	yom-i-takute wants to read and
Perfect	takakatta was expensive	tabe-takatta wanted to eat	yom-i-takatta wanted to read

The understood object can be marked either by **ga** or **o**, although there is a slight difference in meaning. Compare the two sentences below:

ラーメンを食べたいです。

Rāmen o tabetai desu.

I want to eat ramen noodles.

ラーメンが食べたいです。

Rāmen ga tabetai desu.

I want to eat ramen noodles.



The first sentence with **o** is stating what one wants to do, while the second sentence with **ga** is stating what one wants to eat.

The person doing the desiring will be either the topic with the particle **wa** or the emphasized subject with the particle **ga**, depending on the specific emphasis. This sometimes leads to ambiguity. **Tanaka-san wa Nakamura-san ga yobitai desu** can mean either ‘Mr. Tanaka wants to invite MR. NAKAMURA’ or ‘MR. NAKAMURA wants to invite Mr. Tanaka,’ since all it tells us literally is ‘With Mr. Tanaka for the topic and the emphasis on Mr. Nakamura, somebody wants to invite somebody.’ This ambiguity parallels that of **Tarō wa Hanako ga suki desu** (‘With Taro for the subject and the emphasis on Hanako, somebody is liked by somebody’), which can mean either ‘Taro likes HANAKO’ or ‘HANAKO likes Taro.’ Such ambiguities are straightened out, of course, by the situation and the context. English ‘like’ (as in ‘I like coffee’) usually corresponds to Japanese **suki desu**, but in the expression ‘I’d like to,’ which means ‘I want to,’ it corresponds to **-tai desu**. ‘I think I’d like to go’ is **ikitai to omoimasu**. Here are some sentences illustrating the use of desideratives:

ちよつと寝たいと思います。

Chotto netai to omoi masu.

I think I’d like to sleep a bit.

きれいな着物を着たいと言っています。

Kirei na kimono o kitai to itte imasu.

She says she wants to wear a pretty kimono.

今日はちょっと早く帰りたいんですが、いいですか。

Kyō wa chotto hayaku kaeritai n desu ga, ii desu ka.

I want to go home a bit earlier today, but is it okay?

もう2度とあの人に会いたくありません。

Mō ni do to ano hito ni aitaku arimasen.

I don't want to see him anymore.

すしが食べたくて、すし屋に行きました。

Sushi ga tabetakute, sushiya ni ikimashita.

I wanted to eat sushi, so I went to a sushi restaurant.

あの大学に入りたかったんですが、入れませんでした。

Ano daigaku ni hairitakatta n desu ga, hairemasen deshita.

I wanted to get into that college, but I couldn't.

7.8. Alternative questions

An alternative question is one in which you give the listener two or more choices for an answer: **Kuruma de ikimashita ka, basu de ikimashita ka, chikatetsu de ikimashita ka?** 'Did you go by car, or by bus, or by subway?' In answer to such a question, the listener picks out the appropriate alternative and replies, perhaps, **Chikatetsu de ikimashita** 'I went by subway.' If the inquirer has omitted the correct alternative in his question, the person answering may say something like **Chigaimasu—densha de ikimashita** 'It's different (from all those)—I went by train.' **Chigau** is a verb meaning 'is different.' The expression **chigaimasu** is often used with about the same meaning as **sō ja**

arimasen to inform a person he is mistaken in his assumptions. Do not confuse this verb with the related verb **machi-gaeru** ‘makes a mistake.’ **Chigaimashita** means ‘it was different (than someone assumed)’; **machigaemashita** means ‘I (or he) made a mistake.’

In quoting alternative questions, you usually replace polite verb forms with plain forms, and then follow the entire expression with some verb meaning ‘knows, informs, asks, forgets, remembers’ or the like. Ordinarily, the quoting particle **to** is omitted. Some examples:

Quote Alternative Question

大阪か神戸かどちらでしたか。

Osaka ka Kōbe ka Kotowarimashita.

Is it Osaka or Kobe?

バスで行き度か車で行くかどちらでしたか。

Basu de ikimashita ka Kuruma de ikimashita ka.

Did you go by bus or by car?

学生でしたか先生でたか知りません。

Gakusei deshita ka Sensei deshita ka shirimasen.

Was he a student or a teacher?

家賃は高いか安いかわかりません。

Yachin wa takai ka yasui ka wakarimasen.

Is the rent expensive or inexpensive?

500円か1,000円かどちらですか。

Gohyaku-en desu ka Sen-en desu ka.

Is it ¥500 or ¥1,000?

¥500 or ¥1,000.

Sometimes Japanese add the expression **sore to mo** ‘(also with that =) or else’ like an adverb before the last alternative suggested in an alternative question:

千葉で働いていますか。それとも、東京で働いていますか。

Chiba de hataraitte imasu ka. Sore to mo, Tōkyō de hataraitte imasu ka.

Are you working in Chiba? Or, are you working in

Tokyo?

The expression **sore to mo** only emphasizes the fact that you are presenting alternatives—the sentence would mean just about the same without the expression.

Often the last alternative is generalized to just **dō ka** ‘(or how is it =) or what?’, which seems to correspond to the English translation ‘whether...or not.’

車で行ったかどうかわかりません。

Kuruma de itta ka dō ka wakarimasen.

I’m not sure whether he went by car or not.

In this case, **dō ka** might represent **basu de itta ka** ‘or went by bus,’ **uchi ni ita ka** ‘or stayed at home,’ or any number of other expressions. When you don’t have any particular contrasting alternative to present, in order to say ‘whether something happened (or not)’ you still use **dō ka**. To say, ‘I don’t know whether he’s arrived yet,’ you have to say something like **Mō kita ka dō ka wakarimasen**, that is, ‘I don’t know whether he’s arrived or not.’ In English we feel free to drop the ‘or not’ without changing the meaning, but Japanese almost always put in the **dō ka** to get the meaning ‘whether.’

In everyday English we often use ‘if’ with about the same meaning as ‘whether’—‘I don’t know IF he’s come yet.’ This IF of course does not mean the same thing as the IF in ‘if it rains, I won’t go.’ We know the two IF’s don’t mean the same thing, because in the former case we can substitute WHETHER and get the same meaning, but in the latter we cannot. Here are some more examples of alternative questions with **dō ka**:

あの人は赤坂さんかどうか分かりません。

Ano hito wa Akasaka-san ka dō ka wakarimasen.

I don’t know whether that person is Ms. Akasaka (or not).

屋根を修理したかどうか覚えていますか。

Yane o shūri shita ka dō ka oboete imasu ka.

Do you remember whether he fixed the roof (or

not)?

家賃は高いかどうか調べてみます。

Yachin wa takai ka dō ka shirabete mimasu.

I'll check whether the rent is expensive or not.

7.9. よう yō

The adjectival noun **yō**, which is always followed by some form of the copula (**da**, **na**, **desu**, etc.) or by the particle **ni**, has the meaning 'appearance, state, shape, way.' There are several uses of this word, and these are summarized here:

(1) ...*no yō da*

A NOUN PHRASE + **no** + **yō** + COPULA means something is LIKE the noun phrase—it IS (or HAS) the APPEARANCE of the noun phrase. A colloquial synonym of ...(**no**) **yō (na)** in the meanings 'like' is ...**mitai (na)**. Here are some examples:

ここはアメリカのようです。(ここはアメリカみたいです。)

Koko wa Amerika no yō desu. (Koko wa Amerika mitai desu.)

This place is like America.

その映画の話はまるで私の経験のような話でした。

Sono eiga no hanashi wa marude watashi no keiken no yō na hanashi deshita.

The story of that movie was just like my own experiences.

(2) ...*no yō ni*

A NOUN PHRASE + **no** + **yō** + **ni** means IN A WAY LIKE the noun phrase, IN A MANNER LIKE the noun phrase.

日本人のように話します。

Nihon-jin no yō ni hanashimasu.

He talks like a Japanese person.

あれは老人ホームのように見えました。

Are wa rōjin hōmu no yō ni miemashita.

That looked like a nursing home.

子供のように泣き出しました。

Kodomo no yō ni naki dashimashita.

He burst into tears like a child.

(3) ...*yō da*

A MODIFYING PHRASE + **yō** + COPULA means it APPEARS or SEEMS that the phrase is so.

あの人は何か困っているようですね。

Ano hito wa nani ka komatte iru yō desu ne.

That person seems to be in trouble.

(4) ... *yō ni*

A MODIFYING PHRASE + **yō ni** has one of three meanings:

(a) in a way AS IF the modifying phrase is so

その映画が気に入ったように見ていました。

Sono eiga ga ki ni itta yō ni mite imashita.

He was watching the movie as if he really liked it.

(b) in a way SO THAT the modifying phrase will be so

忘れないようにメモします。

Wasurenai yō ni memo shimasu.

I will take a memo so I won't forget.

(c) in a way which AGREES WITH or CORRESPONDS TO the modifying phrase

したいようにしてください。

Shitai yō ni shite kudasai.

Do as you want to do.

好きなようにしてください。

Suki na yō ni shite kudasai.

Do as you like.

7.10. Quoting requests

The usual way to make a request is to use the GERUND + **kudasai** ‘please do (something for me).’ To quote such a request in the exact words, you say something like “**Yukkuri hanashite kudasai**” to **iimashita** ‘He said, “Please talk slow.”’ Ordinarily, however, you just give the gist of the request and say **Yukkuri hanasu yō ni (to) iimashita** ‘He told me to talk slow.’ This is a special use of the expression consisting of a modifying phrase (with a plain imperfect verb) + **yō ni** in the meaning ‘so that.’ It may be thought of as a sort of shortening of **yō ni shite (kudasai)** ‘(please) behave in a way so that’ or **yō ni suru** ‘(to) behave in a way so that.’ In other words **Yukkuri hanasu yō ni to iimashita** is a sort of shortening of **Yukkuri hanasu yō ni shite kudasai to iimashita** ‘He told me to behave in a way so that I talked slow.’

子供におもちゃをかたづけるように言いました。

Kodomo ni omocha o katazukeru yō ni iimashita.

I told my child to put away the toys.

行儀よくするように言います。

Gyōgi yoku suru yō ni iimasu.

I’ll tell them to behave.

夜中には大きい音を出さないようにと隣の人にお
願いしました。

**Yonaka ni wa ōkii oto o dasanai yō ni to tonari no
hito ni onegai shimashita.**

I asked my next-door neighbor not to make loud
noises at night.

The verb ‘asks’ in English has two different meanings: INQUIRES and REQUESTS. When the meaning is INQUIRES, you usually say ‘asks if, asks whether.’ When the meaning is REQUESTS you usually say ‘asks for, asks someone to.’ In the meaning INQUIRES, the Japanese equivalent is ...**ka (to) kiku**. In the meaning REQUESTS, the Japanese equivalent is ...**yō ni (to) iu**.

7.11. Particle よ *yo*

The particle **yo** at the end of a sentence gives a strong emphasis to what you're saying. It is often used in warnings. The English translation sometimes gives the flavor best by just using an exclamation mark.

ぜんぜん高くありません。安いですよ。

Zenzen takaku arimasen. Yasui desu yo.

It's not expensive at all. It's cheap!

寒いですよ。

Samui desu yo.

It sure is cold!

もう出かけたんですよ。

Mō dekaketa n desu yo.

I tell you they've already gone out!

駄目ですよ。

Dame desu yo.

It's no good (= don't do it; I won't do it).

大丈夫ですよ。

Daijōbu desu yo.

It'll be okay!

「本当ですよ。」

"Hontō desu ka."

"Surely it is, sure?"

「これを借ってもいいですか。」

"Kore o karete mo ii desu ka."

"Is it okay to borrow this?"

The meaning of **yo** is in some ways the opposite of that of **ne**. **Yo** means you insist on your statement whatever the other person may say or think; **ne** asks the other person to agree with you, suggests that you think he already knows what you're saying, and implies you might be willing to modify what you've said if you were mistaken about his agreement. If you are not

careful, you might sound too pushy when **yo** is not used appropriately. By contrast, the use of **yo** is encouraged when you are giving a compliment or permission to others.

7.12. 見える *mieru* and 聞こえる *kikoeru*

The verb **miru** means ‘sees’; the related verb **mieru** means either ‘is seen, appears’ or ‘can see.’ The verb **kiku** means ‘hears’ or ‘listens’ (**kiku** also means ‘asks’); the related verb **kikoeru** means ‘is heard, is audible’ or ‘can hear.’ The verbs **miru** and **kiku** may be preceded by an object marked by the particle **o**: **eiga o mimashita** ‘I saw a movie,’ **rajio o kikimashita** ‘I listened to the radio.’ The verbs **mieru** and **kikoeru** are never preceded by the particle **o**. Instead, you use the particles **wa** and **ga**, depending on the emphasis. If the meaning is ‘can see, can hear,’ the person who can see or hear usually takes the particle **wa**, and the thing seen or heard takes the particle **ga**.

このうちの2階の窓から富士山が見えます。

Kono uchi no ni-kai no mado kara Fujisan ga miemasu.

Mt. Fuji is visible from the second-floor windows of this house.

あの看板の字が見えるんですか。

Ano kanban no ji ga mieru n desu ka.

Is it true that you can see the letters on that sign?

あれ。足音がします。聞こえますか。

Are. Ashi oto ga shimasu. Kikoemasu ka.

Oh, I can hear footsteps. Can you hear them?

聞こえません。もう少し大きい声で話してください。

Kikoemasen. Mō sukoshi ōkii koe de hanashite kudasai.

I can't hear you. Could you speak up?

7.13. Prenouns + に *ni*

The pre nouns **konna** ‘this sort of,’ **sonna** ‘that sort of,’ **anna** ‘that-there sort of,’ and **donna** ‘which sort of’ occur before nouns and also before the particle **ni**. In this latter use they have about the same meaning as **kono yō ni**, **sono yō ni**, **ano yō ni**, and **dono yō ni** (or **kō**, **sō**, **ā**, and **dō**) ‘like this, like that, like that-there, and like what’ with the emphasis on extent rather than manner.

どんなに怒ることでしょう。

Donna ni okoru koto deshō.

I wonder how angry she’ll be.

そんなに働くと病気になりますよ。

Sonna ni hataraku to byōki ni narimasu yo.

If you work that hard, you’ll get sick!

こんなにたくさん要りませんね。

Konna ni takusan irimasen ne.

You see, I don’t need this much.

あんなに静かなところは少ないでしょう。

Anna ni shizuka na tokoro wa sukunai deshō.

Such quiet places must be rare.

7.14. Gerund (*te*-form) + ある *aru*

The GERUND + the VERB **iru** ‘stays, exists’ means somebody or something is DOING SOMETHING: **hataraitte imasu** ‘he’s working.’ If the verb is INTRANSITIVE, the meaning may be ‘something is in a state as a result of doing or becoming something’:

掃除機をかけています。

Tōkiwaite imasu.

By contrast, the gerund of a TRANSITIVE verb is used before forms of the verb **aru** ‘exists’ to mean something is in a state resulting from someone’s action on it, in a condition affected by

someone's action:

手紙は書いてあります。

Tegami wa kaite arimasu.

The letter is written.

It may help to think of the literal meaning of such a sentence as something like ‘as for the letter, somebody writes and—it exists (in the resulting state)’ or ‘as for the letter, it exists—how?—in a manner such that somebody has written.’ Here are some examples of transitive verbs used in simple sentences and then in this special use of GERUND + **aru**:

テーブルの上に花瓶を置きました。/テーブルの上に花瓶が置いてあります。

Tēburu no ue ni kabin o okimashita./Tēburu no ue ni kabin ga oite arimasu.

I placed the vase on the table./The vase is placed on the table.

封筒に切手を貼りました。/封筒に切手が貼ってあります。

Fūtō ni kitte o harimashita./Fūtō ni kitte ga hatte arimasu.

I pasted a stamp on the envelope./A stamp is pasted on the envelope.

The negative form of a GERUND + **aru** is, of course, the GERUND + **nai**:

テーブルの上には花瓶が置いてありません。

Tēburu no ue ni wa kabin ga oite arimasen.

There is no vase placed on the table.

封筒には切手が貼ってありません。

Fūtō ni wa kitte ga hatte arimasen.

There is no stamp pasted on the envelope.

7.15. The noun 方 *hō*

The word **hō** has the basic meaning ‘alternative, choice of one as opposed to another’; it also has the meaning ‘direction, side, place.’ Both of these meanings seem to be present in expressions like **migi no hō ni** ‘on the right (as opposed to the left),’ **higashi no hō ni** ‘in the east (as opposed to other sections of the country, or as opposed to other directions).’ **Watashi no hō** may mean either ‘me (as opposed to somebody else)’ or ‘my direction, my section.’ The noun **hō** can be preceded by any noun + the particle **no**. In addition, it may be preceded, just as any other noun, by a modifying expression: a verb, adjective, or copula clause, with the inflected word in a plain form (perfect or imperfect). **Ōkii hō** means ‘the big one, as opposed to the little one; the big alternative; the choice of the big one.’ **Ginkō de hataraku hō** means ‘the choice of working at a bank; working at a bank as opposed to working other places, or to taking a vacation, or doing something.’ For a special use of **hō**, in addition to those described in this lesson, see Note 8.13.

7.16. Comparisons

The adjective **ii** just means ‘something is good’; the adjective **takai** means ‘something is expensive.’ To say ‘something is BETTER, something is MORE expensive’ you also use **ii** and **takai**, but you often add something somewhere in the sentence to bring out the fact that you are making a comparison. Either you’re comparing one thing with another with respect to some quality—‘this is better (than that), that is more expensive (than this)’—or you are comparing two qualities with respect to one thing: ‘this is better (than it used to be), that is more expensive (than it is useful).’

If you only mention the one thing, or the one quality, and leave the other item of comparison implied, you usually add **hō** after the word referring to the stated item of comparison:

フロアリングの方が好きです。

Furōringu no hō ga suki desu.

I prefer wooden floors. (as opposed to carpet)

地下鉄で行く方がいい。

Chikatetsu de iku hō ga ii.

It's better to go by subway. (as opposed to going by bus)

小さい方を買ったんです。

Chīsai hō o katta n desu.

I bought the smaller one. (as opposed to the big one)

野菜を食べた方がいい。

Yasai o tabeta hō ga ii.

It's better to eat vegetables. (as opposed to eating no vegetables)

お酒を飲まない方がいい。

O-sake o nomanai hō ga ii.

It's better not to drink sake as opposed to drinking it.

Notice the difference of meaning between **hō** 'alternative, choice' and **no** 'one, thing': **chīsai no o katta n desu** 'I bought a small one,' **chikatetsu de iku no ga ii desu** 'it's good to go by subway.'

If you mention both items of comparison, the particle **yorī** '(more) than' is used to set off the standard of comparison:

TYPE 1:

犬は馬より小さいです。

Inu wa uma yori chīsai desu.

Dogs are smaller than horses. (Dogs, more than horses, are small.)

In such a sentence, you do not ordinarily need the noun **hō** 'alternative.' But if you want to emphasize the subject of the comparison, you usually do it by adding not just the emphatic subject particle **ga** but **(no) hō**:

TYPE 2:

犬の方が馬より小さいです。

Inu no hō ga uma yori chīsai desu.

DOGS are smaller than horses.

You can then change the word order around to give a slightly different emphasis:

TYPE 3:

馬より犬の方が小さいです。

Uma yori inu no hō ga chīsai desu.

It's DOGS that are smaller than horses.

You can set off the first expression **uma yori** '(more) than horses' as the topic with the attention-releasing particle **wa**, in order to concentrate the emphasis still more on the subject of the comparison:

TYPE 4:

馬よりは犬の方が小さいです。

Uma yori wa inu no hō ga chīsai desu.

(What are) smaller than horses are dogs.

Actually, all four of these sentences are probably best translated the same way in English 'Dogs are smaller than horses,' since the differences of emphasis in Japanese are more subtle than those in English. But bear in mind that the differences do exist.

Often the particle **yori** is followed by **mo** with only a slight change of emphasis: **Inu wa uma yori mo chīsai desu** 'Dogs are smaller (yet) than horses.'

If, for the items of comparison, instead of nouns you have two adjectives, verbs, or copulas (or their phrases), you can follow the patterns of sentences 2, 3, and 4 above, placing **hō** and **yori** directly after the plain imperfect form. Type 4 is more common for copula phrases. But the pattern of Type 1 above cannot be directly applied, since the particle **wa** does not ordinarily follow the plain imperfect of verb, adjectives, or the copula. Instead you can use the plain imperfect + **no wa**:

TYPE 1:

話すのは書くより簡単でしょう。

Hanasu no wa kaku yori kantan deshō.

(I think) it would be easier to speak than to write.

広いのは狭いよりいいでしょう。

Hiroi no wa semai yori ii deshō.

I think it's better spacious than small.

静かなのはきれいなものより好きです。

Shizuka na no wa kirei na no yori suki desu.

I prefer it quiet rather than pretty.

TYPE 2:

話す方が書くより簡単でしょう。

Hanasu hō ga kaku yori kantan deshō.

広い方が狭いよりいいでしょう。

Hiroi hō ga semai yori ii deshō.

静かな方がきれいな方より好きです。

Shizuka na hō ga kirei na hō yori suki desu.

TYPE 3:

書くより話す方が簡単でしょう。

Kaku yori hanasu hō ga kantan deshō.

狭いより広い方がいいでしょう。

Semai yori hiroi hō ga ii deshō.

きれいな方より静かな方が好きです。

Kirei na hō yori shizuka na hō ga suki desu.

TYPE 4:

書くよりは話す方が簡単でしょう。

Kaku yori wa hanasu hō ga kantan deshō.

狭いよりは広い方がいいでしょう。

Semai yori wa hiroi hō ga ii deshō.

きれいな方よりは静かな方が好きです。

Kirei na hō yori wa shizuka na hō ga suki desu.

Sometimes the adjective of comparison is modified by the adverbs **zutto** ‘by far’ or **chotto (sukoshi)** ‘a bit’: **Amerika no hō ga zutto ōkii desu** ‘America is lots larger.’

Another way to say ‘more’ when you mean ‘more than before’ or ‘more than now’ or the like is to use the adverb **motto**: **Motto hakkiri hanashite kudasai** ‘Please talk more clearly,’ **Motto yukkuri aruite kudasai** ‘Please walk more slowly.’ (But *mō sukoshi...* is often better.)

7.17. Questions with comparisons

Sometimes you want to ask a question about WHICH of two or more things is MORE or MOST something, ‘Which is bigger, the bank or the theater?’, ‘Which is the most expensive, beef, pork, or lamb?’ For such questions, in Japanese you first set up the list of things you are going to ask about. This may be done in several ways:

AとBとCと(では)

~~AとBとCと(では)~~
A to B to C to (de wa)

2. AとBとCのうち(では)

~~AとBとCのうち(では)~~
A to B to C no uchi (de wa)

3. AとBとCで(は)

~~AとBとCで(は)~~
A to B to C de (wa)

4. AとBとCのうちで(は)

~~AとBとCのうちで(は)~~
A to B to C no uchi de (wa)

Note that each of these expressions may or may not be followed by the topic particle **wa**. Now after you’ve listed the possible items, you ask which one is selected as the more (or most) something-or-other. If there are just two items you ask the question with the word **dochira** (often pronounced **dotchi**) ‘which one’ or **dochira no hō (dotchi no hō)** ‘which alternative’:

銀行と映画館では、どちら（の方）が大きいです

か。

Ginkō to eigakan de wa, dochira (no hō) ga ōkii desu ka.

Which is bigger, the bank or the theater?

健二さんと博さんでは、どちらが優しいでしょうね。

Kenji-san to Hiroshi-san de wa, dochira ga yasashii deshō ne.

Which one is kinder, Kenji or Hiroshi, I wonder.

If you ask about three or more things, the question word is **dore** ‘which (of several),’ and if the question is about three or more people, it is **dare** ‘who.’ In addition you add the word **ichiban** ‘number one; most of all’ before the adjective.

牛肉と豚肉と鶏肉のうちでは、どれが一番高いですか。

Gyūniku to butaniku to toriniku no uchi de wa, dore ga ichiban takai desu ka.

Which is the most expensive—beef, pork, or chicken?

健二さんと博さんと誠さんのうち、誰が一番背が高いでしょうかね。

Kenji-san to Hiroshi-san to Makoto-san no uchi, dare ga ichiban se ga takai deshō ka ne.

I wonder who would be the tallest, Kenji, Hiroshi, or Makoto.

7.18. 一番 *ichiban*

The counter **-ban** refers to numbers: **ichiban** means ‘number one.’ **Ichiban** is used as an adverb to mean ‘most of all’:

日本で一番高い山は富士山です。

Nihon de ichiban takai yama wa Fujisan desu.

The tallest mountain in Japan is Mt. Fuji.

一番好きな食べ物は何ですか。

Ichiban suki na tabemono wa nan desu ka.

What's your favorite food?

7.19. -目 *me* (ordinal numbers)

To say 'first, second, third,' etc., you can add the suffix **-me** to any number: **issatsu-me**, **nisatsu-me**, **sansatsu-me** 'the first book, the second book, the third book'; **hitotsu-me**, **futatsu-me**, **mittsu-me** 'the first door, the second door, the third door'; **ichinichi-me**, **futsuka-me**, **mikka-me** 'the first day, the second day, the third day.' If you mention the noun, this follows the ordinal and is connected to it by the particle **no**: **futatsu-me no heya** 'the second room,' **nisatsu-me no hon** 'the second book,' **yonin-me no hito** 'the fourth person.'

三つ目の交差点を左に曲がってください。

Mittsu-me no kōsaten o hidari ni magatte kudasai.

Please make a left at the third intersection.

二人目の子どもはよくしゃべる子でした。

Futari-me no kodomo wa yoku shaberu ko deshita.

The second child was a very talkative child.

私の部屋は5階のエレベータから2つ目の部屋です。

Watashi no heya wa go-kai no erebētā kara futatsu-me no heya desu.

My room is the second room from the elevator on the fifth floor.

Instead of using a specific ordinal number, you can add **-me** to the numbers made with the counter **-ban**, and use these with any noun: **ichiban-me no heya** 'the first room,' **niban-me no hon** 'the second book,' **sanban-me no hito** 'the third person.'

Another way to make words meaning 'first, second, third,' etc., is to prefix **dai** to any primary numeral: **dai-ichi**, **dai-ni**, **dai-san**, **dai-yon**, etc. These words are less commonly used than the

ones given above with **-me**, but you will often hear **daiichi** in proper names: **Daiichi-Hoteru**, **Daiichi-Birudingu**.

7.20 Particle ほど *hodo*

The particle **hodo** means ‘extent, to the extent of, as much as.’ It is used in negative comparisons. To say ‘I am not as young as he,’ a Japanese person says **Watashi wa ano hito hodo wakaku arimasen** ‘As for me, I’m not young, as much as that person.’

To say ‘as much as’ in an affirmative sentence, you use either **no yō ni** ‘in the manner of, to onaji yō ni ‘in the same manner as,’ or **gurai** ‘about (as much as)’:

東京はマンハッタンのように人が多いですか。

Tōkyō wa Manhattan no yō ni hito ga ōi desu ka.

Is Tokyo crowded like Manhattan?

東京はマンハッタンと同じように人が多いですか。

Tōkyō wa Manhattan to onaji yō ni hito ga ōi desu ka.

Is Tokyo as crowded as Manhattan?

東京はマンハッタンぐらい人が多いですか。

Tōkyō wa Manhattan no yō ni hito ga ōi desu ka.

Is Tokyo as crowded as Manhattan?

In each case you expect the answer **Hai, sō desu**.

The particles **hodo** as well as **gurai** and **bakari** are used after numbers and quantity words to mean ‘about so much.’ The following three sentences mean ‘It takes about one hour.’

一時間ほどかかります。

Ichī-jikan hodo kakarimasu.

一時間ぐらいかかります。

Ichī-jikan gurai kakarimasu.

一時間ばかりかかります。

Ichī-jikan bakari kakarimasu.

After a noun, verb, or adjective, the particle **hodo** means ‘extent’:

山ほど本を買いました。

Yama hodo hon o kaimashita.

He bought a mountain of books. (books to the extent of a mountain)

あなたほど日本語が上手な人は見たことがありません。

Anata hodo Nihongo ga jōzu na hito wa mita koto ga arimasen.

I have never seen anyone who is as good in Japanese as you are. (to the extent you are)

夜眠れないほど心配しています。

Yoru nemurenai hodo shinpai shite imasu.

I’m too worried to sleep at night. (to the extent that I can’t sleep)

教えられるほど勉強しました。

Oshierareru hodo benkyō shimashita.

I studied enough to be able to teach. (to the extent of being able to teach it to others)

(For another special use of **hodo** see 8.16.)

7.21. なるほど *naruhodo*

From the expression **naru hodo** ‘to the extent of becoming or getting to be’ comes the adverb **naruhodo** ‘just so, quite right, truly, indeed, ever so much, really.’ This is often used where we would say, ‘Oh, I see.’ Japanese will frequently punctuate another person’s discourse with **Naruhodo....naruhodo....naruhodo sō desu ne....naruhodo....**, just as we show a running appreciation for information received and presumably understood by saying ‘Uh-huh...mmm..., oh, I see... yes... yes...right..., that’s right...exactly..., etc.’

7.22. -ばかり *-bakari*

The particle **bakari** means ‘just, nothing but.’ It is used after the plain forms of the imperfect, perfect, and gerund and also after nouns. When used after nouns, it may be followed by another particle, **haha to bakari** ‘only with my mother,’ but the particles **o**, **ga**, and **mo** are usually omitted. After gerunds, it means ‘does nothing but do....’ Here are some examples:

テレビドラマを見てばかりいます。

Terebi dorama o mite bakari imasu.

She does nothing but watch TV dramas.

肉ばかり食べていると太りますよ。

Niku bakari tabete iru to futorimasu yo.

If you eat nothing but meat, you’ll gain weight.

居酒屋にばかり行っています。

Izakaya ni bakari itte imasu.

He only goes to *izakaya* bars.

母は姉とばかりしゃべって、私とはしゃべりません。

Haha wa ane to bakari shabette, watashi to wa shaberimasen.

My mother just speaks with my sister, and she does not speak with me.

父は週末は寝てばかりいます。

Chichi wa shūmatsu wa nete bakari imasu.

My father just sleeps on weekends.

After imperfects and perfects, **bakari** is followed by some form of the copula. After imperfects it means ‘has only done, has done nothing but,’ and after perfects it means ‘has just done, has barely finished doing.’

あの人はぜんぜん働きません。文句を言うばかりです。

Ano hito wa zenzen hatarakimasen. Monku o iu

bakari desu.

That person does no work at all. She only complains.

秋葉町のアパートに引っ越したばかりです。

Akibachō no apāto ni hikkoshita bakari desu.

I just moved into an apartment in Akiba town.

家を出たばかりでした。

Uchi o deta bakari deshita.

We had just left the house.

生まれたばかりの赤ちゃんは何も見えません。

Umareta bakari no akachan wa nani no miemasen.

A baby who is just born cannot see anything.

7.23. まま *mama*

The noun **mama** occurs at the end of a phrase, either with the particle **de** following (adverb usage) or with the particle **ni** showing manner, or with some form of the copula. It means ‘as, as it is, just as is, intact, just, leaving it as it is.’ Here are some examples:

靴を履いたまま(で)家に上がったんですか。

Kutsu o haita mama (de) uchi e agatta n desu ka.

Did he go right in the house with his shoes on?

パジャマを着たまま(で)運転しました。

Pajama o kita mama (de) unten shimashita.

I drove in my pajamas.

手紙を書きかけたままでした。

Tegami o kakikaketa mama deshita.

I had written a letter halfway and left it there.

外国へ行ったまま(で)帰ってきません。

Gaikoku e itta mama (de) kaette kimasen.

He has gone to a foreign country and has not

returned (from there).

台所を散らかしたまま(で)出かけました。

Daidokoro o chirakashita mama (de) dekakemashita.

I left (home) with the kitchen still messy.

窓を開けたままにしておきますよ。

Mado o aketa mama ni shite okimasu yo.

I'll leave the window open, okay?

本を借りたままです。すみません。

Hon o karita mama desu. Sumimasen.

I borrowed your book (and have not returned yet).

I'm sorry.

7.24. 同じ *onaji*

The word **onaji** 'the same' works both as a noun and as a prenoun. It functions as a noun when followed by the copula: **onaji desu** 'it's the same.' To say 'This is the same as that,' you say **Kore wa sore to onaji desu**. To say 'This is not the same as that,' you say **Kore wa sore to onaji ja arimasen**. To say 'This is different from that,' you say **Kore wa sore to chigaimasu**. Notice that in each of these identifications, the particle used is **to** 'with.'

私の車は山田さんのと同じです。

Watashi no kuruma wa Yamada-san no to onaji desu.

My car is the same as Ms. Yamada's.

人間は犬や猫と同じじゃありません。

Ningen wa inu ya neko to onaji ja arimasen.

People are not the same as dogs, cats, etc.

石田先生と林先生の専門は少し違います。

Ishida sensei to Hayashi sensei no senmon wa sukoshi chigaimasu.

The specialty of Dr. Ishida and the specialty of Dr. Hayashi are slightly different.

Onaji functions as a prenoun when followed by a noun: **onaji hito** ‘the same man,’ **onaji koto desu** ‘it’s the same thing.’

田中さんは昨日と同じ服を着ていますね。

Tanaka-san wa kinō to onaji fuku o kite imasu ne.

Mr. Tanaka is wearing the same clothes as yesterday.

私にとって働くことと遊ぶことは同じことです。

Watashi ni totte hataraku koto to asobu koto wa onaji koto desu.

Working and playing are the same thing for me.
(Both are fun.)

由美ちゃんと私は同じ学校に行きました。

Yumi-chan to watashi wa onaji gakkō ni ikimashita.

Yumi and I went to the same school.

Many Japanese prefer the expression **onaji gakkō e ikimasu to issho no gakkō e ikimasu** ‘we go to the same school.’ Theoretically, there is a slight difference of meaning: the former could mean ‘he goes to the same school as he used to’ or ‘the same school as the one mentioned in the newspapers’ or the like, whereas the latter could only mean ‘he goes to the same school as somebody else does.’

7.25. Clothing

Japanese have several different verbs meaning ‘puts on (to some part of the body), wears.’ To say someone IS WEARING something or WEARS something, you usually use the gerund form of one of these verbs followed by **imasu**:

着物を着ています。

Kimono o kite imasu.

She’s wearing a kimono.

Here are the verbs and some of the items of clothing that go with them:

靴 **kutsu** puts on legs or feet, or under waist

sneaker 靴 — **sunikā**

socks **kutsu** **sushita**

trousers **zubon**

skirt skirt — **sukāto**

褌 **fundoshi** puts on trunk of body

shirt ツ **shatsu**

T-shirt ツ **tishatsu**

sweater — **sētā**

jacket ツ **jaketto**

coat ト **kōto**

raincoat ー ト **reinkōto**

dress ス **doresu**

着物 **kimono**

帽子 **bōshi** puts on head

眼鏡 **megane** sets on, hangs on

sunglasses ス **sangurasu**

necktie ス **nekkuresu**

earrings グ **iyaringu**

necktie イ **nektai**

指輪 **yubiwa**

scarf フ **sukāfu**

腕時計 **watch** **dokei**

手袋 **tebukuro**

眼鏡 **megane**

The general verb for removing garments of all sorts is **nugu** ‘takes off, gets out of.’ But for **megane** ‘eyeglasses’ and **yubiwa** ‘ring,’ you use either **hazusu** ‘removes’ or **toru** ‘takes (away).’



[cue 07-3]

Conversation

Alison (A) has been living in Japan for over one year as an intern at an American company in Japan. She sees Bob (B), who is a new intern in the same company. Alison met him at the lobby of the company for the first time, and started to talk with him.

A. いつ日本に来たんですか。

Itsu Nihon ni kita n desu ka.

When did you come to Japan?

B. 昨日成田に着いたばかりです。

Kinō Narita ni tsuita bakari desu.

I arrived at Narita just yesterday.

A. え。

E.

Oh!

B. 今週は住むところを探そうと思っています。

Konshū wa sumu tokoro o sagasō to omotte imasu.

I'm thinking of finding a place to live this week.

A. ああ、大変ですね。

Ā, taihen desu ne.

Oh, that's a lot of work.

B. マンションとアパートと、どちらの方が家賃が高いですか。

Manshon to apāto to, dochira no hō ga yachin ga takai desu ka.

Which one has a higher rent, *manshons* or apartments?

A. マンションの方が高いでしょう。マンションの方が新しくて、きれいですから。

Manshon no hō ga takai deshō. Manshon no hō ga atarashikute, kirei desu kara.

Manshons are probably more expensive. *Mansons* are newer and prettier, that's why.

B. なるほど。

Naruhodo.

Oh, I see.

Exercises

I. Find an item that does not belong to the words in each set.

1. {靴 **kutsu**, 靴下 **kutsushita**, スカート **sukāto**, ジャケット **jaketto**}
2. {壁 **kabe**, 窓 **mado**, テーブル **tēburu**, 床 **yuka**}
3. {おいしい **oishii**, 広い **hiroii**, 暗い **kurai**, きたない **kitanai**}
4. {入る **hairu**, 着く **tsuku**, 着る **kiru**, 行く **iku**}
5. {マンション **manshon**, 和室 **washitsu**, 洋室 **yōshitsu**, 台所 **daidokoro**}

II. Modify the following direct quotations into indirect quotations.

1. 田中さんは「もうその映画を見ました。」と言いました。

Tanaka-san wa “Mō sono eiga o mimashita.” to iimashita.

2. その人は「郵便局はどこですか。」と聞きました。

Sono hito wa “Yūbinkyoku wa doko desu ka.” to kikumashita.

3. 父は「もっと早く帰きなさい。」と言いました。

Chichi wa “Motto hayaku kaerinasai.” to iimashita.

4. 「静かにしてください。」とお願いしました。

“Shizuka ni shite kudasai.” to onegaishimashita.

III. Fill in the blanks with either います *imasu* or あります *arimasu*.

1. 父は今会社で働いて _____。

Chichi wa ima kaisha de hataraitte _____.

2. 今日は晴れて_____。

Kyō wa harete _____.

3. 壁に絵が掛けて _____ 。

Kabe ni e ga kakete _____.

4. 壁に絵が掛かって _____ 。

Kabe ni e ga kakatte _____.

5. 猫がテーブルの下に _____ 。

Neko ga tēburu no shita ni _____.

6. 花瓶がテーブルの上に _____ 。

Kabin ga tēburu no ue ni _____.

7. セーターを着て _____ 。

Sētā o kite _____.

IV. Conjugate the verb in the parentheses appropriately.

1. お酒を（飲む）ばかりいます。

O-sake o (nomu) bakari imasu.

2. ドレスを（着る）みました。

Doresu o (kiru) mimashita.

3. （寝る）としましたが、寝られませんでした。

(Neru) to shimashita ga, neraremasen deshita.

4. パジャマを（着る）まま朝ごはんを食べます。

Pajama o (kiru) mama asa go-han o tabemasu.

5. 今晚はすしが（食べる）たいです。

Konban wa sushi ga (taberu) tai desu.

V. Choose the appropriate item in the parentheses.

1. 兄は田中さんほど背が（高いです・高くありません）。

Ani wa Tanaka-san hodo se ga (takai desu, takaku arimasen).

2. 私の車は山田さんの（と・に）同じです。

Watashi no kuruma wa Yamada-san no (to, ni) onaji desu.

3. 猫と犬と（どちら・どれ・何）が好きですか。
Neko to inu to (dochira, dore, nani) ga suki desu ka.
4. 窓から富士山（を・が）見えます。
Mado kara Fujisan (o, ga) miemasu.
5. スミスさんは日本人のよう（な・に）話します。
Sumisu-san wa Nihon-jin no yō (na, ni) hanashimasu.
6. この家が（それ・そんな）に嫌いですか。
Kono ie ga (sore, sonna) ni kirai desu ka.

Answers:

I 1. ジャケット jaketto 2. テーブル tēburu 3. おいしい oishii 4. 着る kiru 5. マンション manshon

II 1. 田中さんはもうその映画を見たと言いました。 **Tanaka-san wa mō sono eiga o mita to iimashita.** 2. その人は郵便局はどこか(と)聞きました。 **Sono hito wa yūbinkyoku wa doko ka (to) kikimashita.** 3. 父はもっと早く帰るように(と)言いました。 **Chichi wa motto hayaku kaeru yō ni (to) iimashita.** 4. 静かにするよう(と)お願いしました。 **Shizuka ni suru yō ni (to) onegaishimashita.**

III 1. います imasu 2. います imasu 3. あります arimasu 4. います imasu 5. います imasu 6. あります arimasu 7. います imasu

IV 1. 飲んで nonde 2. 着て kite 3. 寝よう neyō 4. 着た kita 5. 食べ tabe

V 1. 高くありません takaku arimasen 2. と to 3. どちら dochira 4. が ga 5. に ni 6. そんな sonna



LESSON 8

Let's Keep in Touch!

また連絡してね！ **Mata Renraku Shite Ne!**

In this lesson, you will learn basic vocabulary for modern methods of communication and sentence structures that are useful for discussing a variety of situations and conditions including permissions and obligations.





[cue 08-1]

Basic Sentences

1 「どこかに公衆電話はありませんか。」

“Dokoka ni kōshū denwa wa arimasen ka.”

“Is there a pay phone somewhere?”

「この辺ではどこにもないと思います。」

“Kono hen de wa doko ni mo nai to omoimasu.”

“I don’t think there’s any around here.”

2 「はいっと電話を借りてもいいですか。」

“Hai itto denwa o karite mo ii desu ka.”

“Sure, by all means. Go ahead, phone?”

3 どこにかけても話し中です。どうすればいいのでしょうか。

Doko ni kakete mo hanashi-chū desu. Dō sureba ii deshō ka.

No matter where I dial, I get a busy signal. What should I do?

4 多く勉強しなくてははいけません。

Yoku benkyō shinakute wa ikemasen.

I have to study hard.

5 電車の中では携帯で話してはいけません。

Densha no naka de wa keitai de hanashite wa ikemasen.

You are not allowed to talk on the cell phone in the train.

6 まだ1時ですから急がなくてもいいですよ。

Mada ichi-ji desu kara isoganakute mo ii desu yo.

It’s still one o’clock, so no need to hurry.

7 mori23@tbal.jp を教えてください。」

“Mori23@tbal.jp o shite kudasai dōto ei shi dōto jei pi desu.”

“Could you tell me your email address?”

8 推薦状は早くお願いした方がいいですよ。

Suisenjō wa hayaku onegai shita hō ga ii desu yo.

It’s better to request a recommendation letter early.

9 2月になったら年賀状を書かなくてはいけません。

Jūni-gatsu ni nattara nengajō o kakanakute wa ikemasen.

In December, we have to write New Year's cards.

10. メールはいつでも送れるし、いつでも読めるし、便利です。

Mēru wa itsu de mo okureru shi, itsu de mo yomeru shi, benri desu.

Emails are convenient because we can send and read them at any time.

11. そんなひどいことは私には言えません。

Sonna hidoi koto wa watashi ni wa iemasen.

I cannot say such a terrible thing.

12. は幼稚園の子どもでさえ簡単にパソコンを使っています。

Ima wa yōchien no kodomo de sae kantan ni pasokon o tsukatte imasu.

Nowadays, even kindergarteners use computers with ease.

13. あれこれ考えているうちに嫌になりました。

Are kore kangaete iru uchi ni iya ni narimashita.

While I was thinking about it, I started to hate it.

14. 早ければ早いほどいいです。

Hayakereba hayai hodo ii desu.

The sooner, the better.



[cue 08-2]

Basic Vocabulary

TELEPHONE

電話 **denwa**

電話番号 **denwabangō**

携帯電話 **keitai (denwa)**

スマートフォン **sumātofon**

公用電話 **kōshhūdenwa**

make a phone call (電話を) **kakeru/kakemasu (denwa o)**

calls the phone (電話を) **hangukirimasu** (電を) **denwa**

EMAIL/TEXT

email, **mēru**

sends an email, texts します **mēru suru/mēru shimasu**

logs in する・ログインします **roguin suru/roguin shimasu**

logs out する・ログアウトします **roguauto suru/roguauto shimasu**

(Email) address **adokoresu**

attach **tenput**

MAIL

郵便, **yūbin**

sends something by mail **yūsō suru/yūsō shimasu**

郵便番号 **yūbin-bangō**

envelope **kupō**

stamp **kitte**

New Year greeting cards **nengajō**

Nengajō ‘New Year’s Greeting Cards’

Every year, the Japanese send **nengajō**, a greeting postcard celebrating the new year, to their relatives, friends, bosses, and colleagues. Unlike Christmas cards in the West, which can be mailed and delivered in December, **nengajō** are mailed in December, stocked at the post office, and delivered on January first all at once. It is important to write 年賀 (New Year celebration) in red right below the space for the stamp on the front of the postcard to prevent it from being delivered before January first. Post offices hire numerous part-time workers, mostly students, to sort

nengajō in December. Each family receives a bunch of the cards, often more than a hundred. The greeting phrase most commonly written on **nengajō** is **Akemashite omedetō gozaimasu** ‘Happy New Year.’ The Japanese often print, draw, or stamp the new year’s zodiacal animal on the card. **Nengajō** plays an important role in allowing the Japanese to keep in touch with their relatives and friends over the years. As you might suspect, **nengajō** in electronic format are gaining in popularity.



OTHER COMMUNICATION TOOLS

chat, chatto

fax ファックス fakkusu

Internet インターネット netto

Web site ウェブサイト uebusaito

blog ブログ burogu

social network ソーシャルネットワーク sōsharunettowāku

Facebook フェイスブック Feisubukku

Twitter ツイッター tsuittā

tweet ツイートする・ツイートします tsuīto suru/tsuīto shimasu

post ポストする・ポストします posuto suru/posuto shimasu

follow フォローする・フォローします forō suru/forō shimasu

download an app ダウンロードする apuri o daunrōdo suru

BONDING

飲み会 ~~omikai~~

カラオケ ~~karaoke~~ karaoke

居酒屋 ~~izakaya~~ (inexpensive) bar

Izakaya

An **izakaya** is an inexpensive, casual Japanese-style bar that serves home-style dishes like grilled meat, seafood, and vegetables, edamame, and tofu along with drinks. They often have Japanese-style rooms with a big, long, low tables so a group of friends can sit close together in the same room on tatami mats. Office workers frequently go to **izakaya** after work. The same people who may seem very serious while working at the office during the daytime suddenly become very open, talkative, and cheerful once they enter an **izakaya**. When they drink, they tend to be more frank and honest as well. Accordingly, the **izakaya** is an important place for colleagues to communicate and bond with each other.

ADJECTIVES AND ADJECTIVAL NOUNS

新しい ~~atarashii~~

古い ~~furui~~

若い ~~wakai~~

難しい ~~muzukashii~~

簡単 (easy) ~~kantan~~ (da)

若い **wakai**

Furui ‘is old’ is the opposite of **atarashii** ‘is new’ and does not refer to age. The opposite of **wakai** ‘is young’ is **toshi ga itte imasu** ‘is aged.’ To say a person is ‘older,’ you can say either **toshi ga ue desu** or **toshiue desu**. To say a

person is ‘younger,’ you can say either **toshi ga shita desu** or **toshishita desu**.

Structure Notes

8.1. Interrogatives + も *mo* or か *ka*

An interrogative is a word that asks a question, like **dare** ‘who,’ **dore** ‘which,’ **nani** ‘what,’ **dō** ‘how,’ **ikura** ‘how much,’ **ikutsu** ‘how many,’ **itsu** ‘when, what time,’ **dono** ‘which one,’ or **donna** ‘what sort of.’ These interrogatives can also be followed by the particles **mo** and **ka** with special meanings.

When followed by **mo**, the meaning of the phrase is GENERALIZED, meaning something like ‘every, all’ if the predicate is affirmative. However, it means ‘no, none, not at all, not any’ if the predicate is negative. Phrases consisting of INTERROGATIVE + **mo** occur more often with the negative than with the affirmative. In the affirmative, phrases of the type INTERROGATIVE + **de** (COPULA GERUND) + **mo** are often used instead. (These are discussed in 8.3.) See the following pairs of examples:

Interrogative + mo with affirmative predicate ‘no, none, not at all, not any’

いつも来ません。

Itsu mo kimasen.

He never comes alive.

どのコースも取りませたでした。

Dono kōsu mo torimashitadeshita.

He didn't even take any course.

そんなことはだれも知りません。

Sonna koto wa dare mo shirimasu.

Anyone knows such something.

何も食べませんでした。

Nani de mo tabemasendeshita.

I did not eat anything.

どれも好きではありません。

Dore mo suki ~~ja~~arimasen.

I like ~~all of~~ ~~of~~ them.

どこにもありません。

Doko ni mo arimasen.

You can't find it anywhere.

All of the interrogatives except demonstrative adjectives such as **dono** 'which' and **donna** 'what sort of' occur followed by **ka**, and the resulting phrases have an INDEFINITE meaning, something like 'some' and 'any.' For example, **Itsu ka asobi ni kite kudasai** 'Please come to visit us sometime.'

Expressions with **ka** and **mo** are often used with additional particles as well, but the particles **wa**, **ga**, and **o** usually do not occur. The meaning of the **wa**, **ga**, or **o** is carried by the juxtaposition of the phrase with the rest of the sentence and the general context. For the expressions ending in **ka**, any additional particles usually come AFTER the particle **ka**. For the expressions with **mo**, the additional particles usually come BEFORE the particle **mo**. Thus we find **Doko ka e ikimashita** 'He went someplace,' but **Doko e mo ikimasen deshita** 'He didn't go any place.' An exception is the way you say 'in some way,' **dō ni ka**, for this follows the pattern of **dō ni mo** 'in (not) any way, in no way; in every way.' The simple expressions **dō ka** and **dō mo** are not used with these meanings, perhaps because of the existence of the special expressions **dō ka** 'please' (an old-fashioned form of **dōzo**) and **dō mo** 'ever so much, very much' as in **Dō mo arigatō gozaimasu** 'Thank you very much.'

「だれかに言いましたか。」

"Dare ka ni iimashita ka."

"Did you say it to anyone?"

「いいえ、だれにも言いませんでした。」

"Īe, dare ni mo iimasen deshita."

"No, I did not say it to anyone."

「だれか来ましたか。」

“Dare ka kimashita ka.”

“Did anyone come?”

「いいえ、だれも来ませんでした。」

“Īe, dare mo kimasen deshita.”

“No, no one came.”

「ツイッターで誰かをフォローしていますか。」

“Tsuittā de dare ka o forō shite imasu ka.”

“Are you following anyone on Twitter?”

「いいえ、誰もフォローしていません。」

“Īe, daremo forō shite imasen.”

“No, I’m not following anyone.”

「昨日は何かしましたか。」

“Kinō wa nani ka shimashita ka.”

“Did you do anything yesterday?”

「いいえ、何もしてませんでした。」

“Īe, nani mo shimasen deshita.”

“No, I did not do anything.”

「その中に何かありますか。」

“Sono naka ni nani ka arimasu ka.”

“Is there anything in it?”

「いいえ、何もありません。」

“Īe, nani mo arimasen.”

“No, there’s nothing.”

「夏休みはどこかに行きましたか。」

“Natsu-yasumi wa doko ka ni ikimashita ka.”

“Did you go anywhere during summer vacation?”

「いいえ、どこにも行きませんでした。」

“Īe, doko ni mo ikimasen deshita.”

“No, I did not go anywhere.”

「どれか好きなのはありますか。」

“Dore ka suki na no wa arimasu ka.”

Is there any one (of them) you like?”

「いいえ，どれも好きじゃありません。」

“Īe, dore mo suki ja arimasen.”

“No, I don’t like any one of them.”

「どちらか使いますか。」

“Dochira ka tsukaimasu ka.”

“Will you use either one of them?”

「いいえ，どちらも使いません。」

“Īe, dochira mo tsukaimasen.”

“No, I will use neither one.”

Notice that the English translations ‘any, anyone, anybody, any time, etc.’ correspond to the phrases with **ka** if the English contains an affirmative verb, but to the phrases with **mo** if the English contains a negative verb.

There is a special use of the INDEFINITE EXPRESSIONS in apposition to a noun phrase. An expression like **dare ka** ‘somebody, anybody’ can be followed immediately by a phrase telling who the somebody is (in general terms):

昨日だれか先生のような人が来ましたよ。

Kinō dare ka sensei no yō na hito ga kimashita yo.

Someone who seemed like a teacher came here yesterday.

だれか外国為替の仕事の経験がある人を知りませんか。

Dare ka gaikoku-kawase no shigoto no keiken ga aru hito o shirimasen ka.

Do you know anyone who has experience in foreign-exchange work?

An expression like **doko ka** ‘someplace, any place’ can be followed immediately by a phrase specifying the sort of place:

どこか泳ぐことのできる場所は近くにあります

か。

Doko ka oyogu koto no dekiru tokoro wa chikaku ni arimasu ka.

Is there any place where we can swim?

どこかいいレストランは知りませんか。

Doko ka ii resutoran wa shirimasen ka.

Do you know any good restaurants?

An expression like **itsu ka** ‘some time’ can be followed immediately by a phrase delimiting the time:

いつか東京に来る機会があれば電話してください。

Itsu ka Tōkyō ni kuru kikai ga areba denwa shite kudasai.

If you have a chance to come to Tokyo sometime, please call me.

And an expression like **nani ka** ‘something’ can be immediately followed by a phrase limiting the thing:

何か部屋の中にあるものですか。

Nani ka heya no naka ni aru mono desu ka.

Is it something in the room?

すみません。何か書くものを貸してください。

Sumimasen. Nani ka kaku mono o kashite kudasai.

Sorry, but could you lend me something that I can write with?

The expressions **ikura ka** and **nan + COUNTER ka** are also used this way:

いくらかお金がいます。/お金がいくらかあります。

Ikura ka o-kane ga irimasu./O-kane ga ikura ka irimasu.

I need some (amount of) money.

いくつかスーツケースがありました。/スーツケースがいくつかありました。

Ikutsu ka sūtsukēsu ga arimashita./Sūtsukēsu ga ikutsu ka arimashita.

There were a number of suitcases.

何冊か本を買いました。/本を何冊か買いました。

Nan-satsu ka hon o kaimashita./Hon o nan-satsu ka kaimashita.

I bought some books.

8.2. Gerund + も *mo*

The literal meaning of a GERUND (the **te**-form) + **mo** is something like ‘even doing, even being so.’ It can often be freely translated ‘even if (or though) somebody does something, even if something is so.’

たくさん食べても太りません。

Takusan tabete mo futorimasen.

Even if I eat a lot, I won’t gain weight.

オペラを見に行きたくてもお金がありません。

Opera o mini ikitakute mo o-kane ga arimasen.

Even if I want to see opera, I don’t have any money.

母は疲れていても料理をします。

Haha wa tsukarete ite mo ryōri o shimasu.

My mother cooks even if she is tired.



これは犬でも食べませんよ。

Kore wa inu de mo tabemasen yo.

Even a dog would not eat this.

こんな簡単な漢字は子供でも書けますよ。

Konna kantan na kanji wa kodomo de mo kakemasu yo.

Even a child can write such an easy kanji character.

The last two examples show a use of the copula gerund **de**. Note that **de mo** often starts a sentence ‘But..., Yet...,’ as do **shikashi**, **keredomo (keredo, kedo)**, and **tokoro ga**.

Sometimes you have two phrases of the pattern GERUND + **mo** with the meaning ‘whether someone does one thing or does something else, whether one thing is so or the other is so.’ The two gerunds can be either two different verbs, or the same verb in affirmative and negative forms, or the same verb with different objects or modifiers.

お天気がよくても悪くても毎日散歩に行きます。

Otenki ga yokute mo warukute mo mainichi sanpo ni ikimasu.

I go for a walk every day, whether the weather is good or not.

仕事があってもなくても会社に行きます。

Shigoto ga atte mo nakute mo kaisha ni ikimasu.

I go to my office (company) regardless of whether I have work to do or not.

日本に住んでもアメリカに住んでも同じですよ。

Nihon ni sunde mo Amerika ni sunde mo onaji desu yo.

It’s the same regardless of whether you live in Japan or in America.

好きなものは高くても安くても買います。

Suki na mono wa takakute mo yasukute mo kaimasu.

If I like something, I buy it regardless of whether it’s expensive or cheap.

肉でも魚でも食べます。

Niku de mo sakana de mo tabemasu.

I even eat meat, and also fish.

Often, the concluding clause consists of the word **kamaimasen** ‘it doesn’t matter; it makes no difference.’ This is a special meaning of the negative form of the consonant verb **kama(w)-u** ‘is concerned about, pays attention to, goes to trouble for, takes care of, entertains.’ Here are examples:

映画を見に行っても散歩に行っても構いません。

Eiga o mi ni itte mo sanpo ni itte mo kamaimasen.

I don’t care whether you go to a movie or go for a walk.

現金で払ってもクレジットカードで払っても構いません。

Genkin de haratte mo kurejitto kâdo de haratte mo kamaimasen.

I don’t care whether you pay by cash or pay by credit card.

部屋は広くても狭くても構いません。

Heya wa hirokute mo semakute mo kamaimasen.

It makes no difference whether the room is large or small.

便利でも不便でも構いません。

Benri de mo fuben de mo kamaimasen.

I don’t care whether it’s convenient or inconvenient.

メールでも電話でも構いません。

Mêru de mo denwa de mo kamaimasen.

It doesn’t matter whether you email me or call me.

8.3. Interrogative + gerund + も *mo*

In an affirmative sentence an INTERROGATIVE + **mo** has a

GENERALIZED or INCLUSIVE meaning ‘everybody, everywhere, everyone.’ Usually, however, this expression is expanded to INTERROGATIVE + GERUND + **mo**. If there isn’t a modifying verb, then the gerund is that of the copula **de** ‘being.’ Here are some examples:

彼はどんな仕事をしてもよくできます。

Kare wa donna shigoto o shite mo yoku dekimasu.

No matter what kind of job he undertakes, he does it the best he can.

何を食べても美味しいです。

Nani o tabete mo oishii desu.

No matter what I eat, I feel it’s delicious.

私は何でもいいです。

Watashi wa nan de mo ii desu.

Anything is fine with me.

どちらでもいいですよ。

Dochira de mo ii desu yo.

Either one/way is fine with me.

兄はスポーツなら何でもできます。

Ani wa supōtsu nara nan de mo dekimasu.

If it is sports, my brother can do anything.

お金はいくらでもありますから心配しないでください。

O-kane wa ikura de mo arimasu kara shinpai shinai de kudasai.

Please do not worry, because I have plenty of money.

いくら勉強しても成績が上がらないんです。

Ikura benkyō shite mo seiseki ga agaranai n desu.

No matter how much I study, my grades do not improve.

アメリカ人ならだれでもその言葉を知っていま

す。

Amerika-jin nara dare de mo sono kotoba o shitte imasu.

Any American knows that word.

どの店で買っても値段は同じです。

Dono mise de katte mo nedan wa onaji desu.

It is sold at the same price at any store.

どの店でもクレジットカードは使えます。

Dono mise de mo kurejitto kâdo wa tsukaemasu.

You can use your credit card at any store.

いつ地震や台風が来ても準備はしてあります。

Itsu jishin ya taifû ga kite mo junbi wa shite arimasu.

I'm ready regardless of when earthquakes, typhoons, etc., hit us.

いつでも遊びに来てね。

Itsu de mo asobi ni kite ne.

Please come to visit me any time.

どうしても一度ヨーロッパに遊びに行きたいです。

Dô shite mo ichido Yōroppa ni asobi ni ikitai desu.

I'd like to go to Europe for a visit very much (in every possible way).

どれを使っても構いませんよ。

Dore o tsukatte mo kamaimasen yo.

You may use any one of them.

どの新聞を見てもあのニュースが書いてありました。

Dono shinbun o mite mo ano nyūsu ga kaite arimashita.

No matter which newspaper I read, I could see that news.

8.4. The provisional mood (-れば *-reba*)

The provisional mood has meanings something like ‘if something happens (now or in the future); provided something happens.’ It is made by adding the following endings to the stems of verbs and adjectives:

Vowel verbs: **-reba**

Consonant verbs: **-eba**

Adjectives: **-kereba**

The provisional of the copula **da** is irregular: **nara** ‘if it is, provided it equals.’ The provisionals of **kuru** and **suru** are **kureba** and **sureba**.

	Provisional
tabe-verb	tabe-reba
mi-verb	mi-eba
kan-verb	kan-eba
kaite-verb	kaite-eba
ka-verb	ka-eba
ka-verb	ka-eba
ka-verb	ka-eba
ka-verb	ka-eba
oyog-verb	oyog-eba
yom-verb	yom-eba
yob-verb	yob-eba
shin-verb	shin-eba
kun-verb	kun-eba
suru-verb	sureba
tabi-verb	tabi-kereba
yo-verb	yo-kereba
tabeta-verb	tabeta-kereba
ikita-verb	ikita-kereba
tabena-verb	tabena-kereba
yomana-verb	yomana-kereba
da (copula)	nara

The word **nara** sometimes appears after other inflected

forms: **suru nara** (= **suru no nara**) ‘if it is a matter of doing,’
shita nara (= **shita no nara**) ‘if it is a case of having done.’ The
provisional of negative adjectives, **shinakereba** ‘if I don’t do,’ is
usually equivalent to English ‘unless’ + the affirmative:

田中さんがいっしょに来なければ面白くないで
しょう。

**Tanaka-san ga issho ni konakereba omoshiroku nai
deshō.**

It won’t be any fun unless Mr. Tanaka comes along.

その映画は見なければいいか悪いか分からないで
しょう。

**Sono eiga wa minakereba ii ka warui ka wakaranai
deshō.**

We won’t know whether the movie’s good or bad
unless we see it.

Here are some examples of the provisional used in
affirmative sentences.

雨が降れば釣りに行きません。

Ame ga fureba tsuri ni ikimasen.

If it rains, I’m not going to go fishing.

日本語で話せばすぐ分かります。

Nihongo de hanaseba sugu wakarimasu.

If you speak in Japanese, they’ll understand right
away.

フェイスブックにポストすれば人が沢山来るで
しょう。

**Feisubukku ni posuto sureba hito ga takusan kuru
deshō.**

Once you post it on Facebook, many people will
come.

この薬を飲めばよくなるでしょう。

Kono kusuri o nomeba yoku naru deshō.

I think you’ll get better if you take this medicine.

私ならそんなものは買いません。

Watashi nara sonna mono wa kaimasen.

If I were you, I wouldn't buy such a thing.

田舎なら静かなところが多いでしょう。

Inaka nara shizuka na tokoro ga ōi deshō.

If it's the countryside (you're talking about or going to), there are probably lots of quiet places.

そんなに不便ならそこに住みたくありませんよ。

Sonna ni fuben nara soko ni sumitaku arimasen yo.

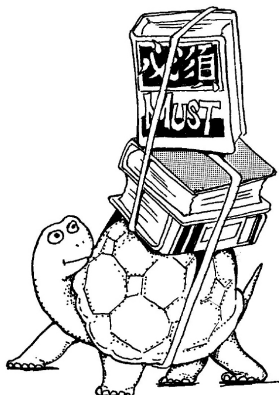
If it's so inconvenient, I certainly don't want to live there.

8.5. Obligation

For the expression 'someone MUST or HAS TO do something,' Japanese has several equivalents. One of the most common is the use of the provisional form of the negative adjectives derived from the verbs (**yomanakereba** 'if I do not read') + the negative of the verb **naru** (**narimasen** 'it does not become = it won't do'). So, to say 'I must read this book,' you say **Kono hono o yomanakereba narimasen** 'If I do not read this book, it won't do.' Instead of **narimasen**, you can use **dame desu** 'it's no good' or **ikemasen** 'it can't go, it's no good, it won't do.' **Yomanakereba narimasen**, **yomanakereba dame desu**, and **yomanakereba ikemasen** all mean about the same thing: 'I have to read.' Instead of the provisional of the negative adjective **-(a)nakereba**, you can use the gerund of the negative adjective **-(a)nakute** + the particle **wa**, with a meaning something like '(as for) not doing... (as the topic).' In these expressions of obligation, **yomanakereba** 'if I do not read' and **yomanakute wa** 'as for not reading' are equivalent. So you can say 'I have to read (it)' in any of the following ways:

1. 読まなければなりません。 **Yomanakereba narimasen.**
2. 読まなければ駄目です。 **Yomanakereba dame desu.**
3. 読まなければいけません。 **Yomanakereba ikemasen.**

4. 読まなくてはなりません。 **Yomanakute wa narimasen.**
5. 読まなくては駄目です。 **Yomanakute wa dame desu.**
6. 読まなくてははいけません。 **Yomanakute wa ikemasen.**



The first and last patterns (1 and 6) are more commonly heard than the others. Forms ending **-(a)nakute wa** are often pronounced **-(a)nakucha** in colloquial speech. They can end a sentence with the same meaning as if followed by **ikemasen**.

もう帰らなくちゃならないんですよ。

Mō kaeranakucha naranai n desu yo.

I have to go home now.

もう帰らなくちゃ。

Mō kaeranakucha.

I have to go home now.

8.6. Permission

To express permission or to say ‘someone MAY do something,’ the Japanese use the gerund **-te** + the particle **mo** ‘even’ + some form of the adjective **ii** ‘it is good, it is okay.’ The expression **-te mo ii desu** means something like ‘even doing something is okay.’ To say ‘You may go home,’ you say **Kaette mo ii desu**. Such sentences are often followed by the insistent particle **yo**. Instead of **ii desu**, **kamaimasen** can be used to mean

‘okay.’



「今日ちすおと早く帰ってもいいですか。」

“~~Kyōshōtō~~ hayaku kaette mo ii desu ka.”

“~~Keit, okay fine~~. go home a bit early?”

「この部屋を使ってもいいですか。」

“~~Ekonaiyasetsu~~ kaette mo ii desu ka.”

“~~Keit, okay fine~~. use this room?”

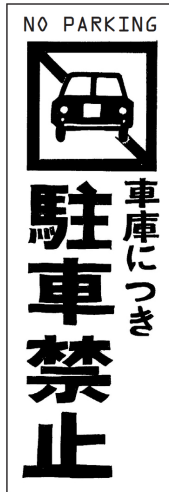
「携帯に電話してもいいですか。」

“~~Meitai rōden~~wa shite mo ii desu ka.”

“~~Suteb~~kāy to call your cell phone?”

8.7. Denial of permission = prohibition

To say ‘someone MAY NOT do something,’ the Japanese usually use a statement of PROHIBITION, ‘someone MUST NOT do something.’ This consists of the plain gerund of the affirmative verb **-te** + the particle **wa** + **ikemasen/narimasen/dame desu**. The expression **-te wa ikemasen** means something like ‘as for doing something, it’s no good,’ that is ‘don’t do it.’ You have already had one way to say ‘Don’t read this book’: **Kono hon o yomanai de kudasai**. The use of the PLAIN NEGATIVE + COPULA GERUND + **kudasai** is a rather direct way of ORDERING someone not to do something. Except when talking to subordinates, Japanese usually prefer a more subtle prohibition. Even the type discussed here is rather strong when talking to an equal or superior; it is better to SUGGEST someone not do something rather than PROHIBIT them from doing it.



Each of the following sentences means ‘Don’t read this book,’ but they would ordinarily be said only to children or one’s subordinate, or in making some sort of generalized impersonal statement (like “Keep off the grass!”).

1. この本を読んではいけません。 **Kono hon o yonde wa ikemasen.**
2. この本を読んではなりません。 **Kono hon o yonde wa narimasen.**
3. この本を読んでは駄目です。 **Kono hon o yonde wa dame desu.**

Among the above three sentences, **-te wa ikemasen** is most commonly used and **-te wa narimasen** is least commonly used. **-te wa dame desu** is more colloquial than others.

Here are some examples:

- 「早く帰ってねえですか。」
“Hayaku kaette mo ii desu ka.”
 “Not in a hurry to go home early?”
- 「あまり食をすぎまはいけませんよ。」
“Ariaki tabesugimesu wa ikemasen yo.”
 “Right? Don’t overeat, okay?”

カンニングをしてはいけませんよ。

Kanningu o shite wa ikemasen yo.

Don't cheat!

「ここでタバコを吸ってもいいですか。」

"Koko de tabako o sutte mo ii desu ka."

"Is it okay to smoke here?"

「いいえ，ここでは吸わないでください。」

"Ie, koko de wa suwanai de kudasai."

"No, please don't smoke here."



And note that **-te wa** is often shortened to **-cha**, **-de wa** to **-ja**.

それ使っちゃ駄目だよ。

Sore tsukatcha dame da yo.

You are not allowed to use that.

あまりお酒を飲んじゃいけませんよ。

Amari o-sake o nonja ikemasen yo.

You should not drink too much.

マンガばかり読んでちゃ駄目ですよ。

Manga bakari yondecha dame desu yo.

You should not just read comic books.

8.8. Denial of obligation

To deny obligation or to say 'someone NEED NOT or DOES NOT HAVE TO do something,' you use the gerund of the NEGATIVE ADJECTIVE **-(a)nakute + mo + ii**. The meaning of this expression is something like 'even not doing it (even if someone doesn't do it), it's okay.' So, to say 'You don't have to read it,' you say

Yomanakute mo ii desu. If you want to ask ‘Do I have to take the medicine?,’ you can say either **Kusuri o nomanakereba narimasen ka** if you’re just wondering, or, if you’re hoping for permission not to take it, you can ask **Kusuri o nomanakute mo ii desu ka** ‘Is it all right even if I don’t take the medicine? May I go without the medicine?’

「今日買わなくてはなりませんか。」

“Kyō kawanakute wa narimasen ka.”

“Do I have to buy it today?”

「いいえ，今日買わなくてもいいですよ。」

“Īe, kyō kawanakute mo ii desu yo.”

“No, you don’t have to buy it today.”

「今日買わなくてもいいですか。」

“Kyō kawanakute mo ii desu ka.”

“Is it okay not to buy it today?”

「はい，今日買わなくてもいいですよ。」

“Hai, kyō kawanakute mo ii desu yo.”

“Yes, it is fine even if you don’t buy it today.”

8.9. Obligation, prohibition, permission: summary

Here is a summary of the forms discussed in the preceding sections.

Obligation ‘must, should, ought to, has to, has to, must not, doesn’t have to’

-(a)nakuteba narimasen

(‘(a)not doing is okay’)

-(a)nakereba dame desu

(‘if does not do, is no good’)

-(a)nakute wa ikemasen

-(a)nakute wa narimasen

-(a)nakute wa dame desu

(‘not doing is no good’)

Denial of permission ‘may not, must not’

-te mo narimasen (‘even doing is good’)

-te wa dame desu

-te wa ikemasen ('doing is no good')

A confusing point about these expressions is that what looks like the negative equivalent of permission, the form **-(a)nakute mo ii**, is not the denial of permission but the denial of obligation. On the other hand, what looks the affirmative equivalent of the obligation expression, the form **-te wa ikemasen**, is the denial of permission = prohibition. This is just a case of misleading formal similarities. Some students find it easier to remember these expressions as single units: **-(a)nakereba-narimasen** 'must,' **-(a)nakute-wa-ikemasen** 'must,' **-(a)nakute-mo-ii-desu** 'need not,' **-te-mo-ii-desu** 'may,' **-te-wa-ikemasen** 'must not.' However you learn them, remember the following points:

(1) Japanese often pause within the expression, before the last word: **-(a)nakereba, narimasen; -(a)nakute wa, ikemasen; -(a)nakute mo, ii desu; -te mo, ii desu.**

(2) You will also want to learn the less common variants **-(a)nakereba ikemasen, -(a)nakute wa dame desu; -(a)nakute wa narimasen, -(a)nakute wa dame desu, -(a)nai to dame desu.**

(3) The final word may be inflected in various ways to fit the whole expression into the sentence properly, as in some of the following examples.

今晚勉強しなければならいので、映画は明日に
しましょう。

**Konban benkyō shinakereba naranai node, eiga wa
ashita ni shimashō.**

As I need to study tonight, let's watch the movie
tomorrow.

あんなに働かなければならないのは嫌ですよ。

Anna ni hatarakanakereba naranai no wa iya desu yo.

I sure hate to have to work that much.

これは明日出さなければならぬ手紙ですから、
今晚中に書きます。

Kore wa ashita dasanakereba naranai tegami desu kara, konbanchū ni kakimasu.

This is the letter that I have to mail tomorrow, so
I'll write it tonight.

医者はおもう薬を飲まなくてもいいと言いました。

Isha wa mō kusuri o nomanakute mo ii to iimashita.

The doctor said I didn't have to take the medicine
anymore.

明日働かなくてもよければ、どこかに遊びにいき
ませんか。

Ashita hatarakanakute mo yokereba, dokoka ni asobi ni ikimasen ka.

If you don't have to work tomorrow, why don't we
go somewhere for fun?

小さい子どもに見せてもいいアニメですか。

Chīsai kodomo ni misete mo ii anime desu ka.

Is it an anime that we can show to young children?

こんなことはできなくては駄目ですよ。

Konna koto wa dekinakute wa dame desu yo.

You have to be able to do such a thing.

8.10. Conditionals (forms) -たら／-だら -*tara/-dara*

The conditional mood has several meanings: 'if something had happened; supposing something happens; when something happened, when something has happened' and the like. The forms are made by adding **ra** at the end of the verbs, adjectives, and the copula in the perfect form.

	Meaning	Imperfect	Perfect	Conditional
Vowel verb	eats	tabe-ru	tabe-ta	tabe-tara
	looks at	mi-ru	mi-ta	mi-tara
Consonant verb	returns	kaer-u	kaet-ta	kaet-tara
	wins	kats-u	kat-ta	kat-tara
	buys	ka-u	kat-ta	kat-tara
	lends	kas-u	kashi-ta	kashi-tara
	writes	kak-u	kai-ta	kai-tara
	swims	oyog-u	oyoi-da	oyoi-dara
	reads	yom-u	yon-da	yon-dara
	calls	yob-u	yon-da	yon-dara
	dies	shin-u	shin-da	shin-dara
	go	ik-u	it-ta (irregular)	it-tara (irregular)
Irregular verbs	comes	kuru	kita	kitara
	does	suru	shita	shitara
Adjectives	is expensive	taka-i	takakat-ta	takakat-tara
	is good	i-i, yo-i	yokat-ta	yokat-tara
	wants to eat	tabeta-i	tabetakat-ta	tabetakat-tara
	wants to go	ikita-i	ikitakat-ta	ikitakat-tara
	does not eat	tabena-i	tabenakat-ta	tabenakat-tara
	does not read	yomana-i	yomanakat-ta	yomanakat-tara
Copula	equals	da (na, no)	dat-ta	dat-tara

8.11. Conditionals (uses)

In the meaning ‘supposing something happens (now or in the future), supposing something is so,’ the conditional is very similar to the provisional with its meaning ‘provided something happens, provided something is so.’ For the meaning ‘if,’ there are three possibilities: conditional ‘supposing that,’ provisional ‘provided that,’ and PLAIN IMPERFECT + PARTICLE **to** ‘if = whenever.’

The difference between the conditional and the provisional is often one of explicit doubt. If you use the conditional **-tara** form, you show some doubt as to whether something will happen or not: ‘if it should happen (but I doubt it will).’ But if you use the provisional form, you are making a hypothesis without saying anything about the likelihood of its being true: ‘if it happens.’

Here are some sentences showing the differences between the conditional and the provisional with the meaning ‘if’ under

a present or future hypothesis. There are also sentences illustrating the particle **to** with the meaning of a repeated or habitual 'if = whenever.'

そのことを日本語で言ったら、すぐ分かるでしょう。

Sono koto o Nihongo de ittara, sugu waku deshō.

If you were to say that in Japanese, they'd understand right off.

そのことを日本語で言えば、すぐ分かるでしょう。

Sono koto o Nihongo de ieba, sugu waku deshō.

If you say that in Japanese, they'll understand right off.

そのことを日本語で言うとき、すぐ分かるでしょう。

Sono koto o Nihongo de iu to, sugu waku deshō.

If (whenever) you say that in Japanese, they understand you right off.

天気がよかったら、散歩に行きます。

Tenki ga yokattara, sanpo ni ikimasu.

If the weather is nice, I'll go for a walk.

天気がよければ、散歩に行きます。

Tenki ga yokereba, sanpo ni ikimasu.

If the weather is nice, I'll go for a walk.

天気がいいとき、散歩に行きます。

Tenki ga ii to, sanpo ni ikimasu.

If (whenever) the weather is nice, I go for a walk.

日本の映画だったら、見ます。

Nihon no eiga dattara, mimasu.

If it should be a Japanese movie, I will watch it.

日本の映画なら、見ます。

Nihon no eiga nara, mimasu.

If it is a Japanese movie, I'll watch it.

日本の映画だと、見ます。

Nihon no eiga da to, mimasu.

If (whenever) it is a Japanese movie, I watch it.

In all of the sentences where the conditional forms mean 'if,' it is possible to add the word **moshi** 'supposing, if, say' at the beginning of the sentence. Although the word **moshi** is thus in the same position as the English word 'if,' the meaning of the latter is carried by the conditional form at the end of the clause, and the function of the **moshi** is just to reinforce that meaning and to act as a signal telling the listener to expect a conditional form. So you're more apt to put **moshi** at the beginning if the clause is very long. It is uncommon to use **moshi** with the provisional. Here is an example with **moshi**:

もしインターネットと電話の契約を同じ会社として
電話のサービスが嫌いだったら、どうします
か。

**Moshi intānetto to denwa no keiyaku o onaji kaisha
to shite denwa no sābisu ga kirai dattara, dō shimasu
ka.**

If you signed a contract with a company for both Internet and telephone and you disliked their phone service, what would you do?

Here are some sentences illustrating the difference between A) the conditional meaning 'when,' with emphasis on what happened at the time; B) plain imperfect or perfect + **toki (ni)** meaning 'when, at the time that,' with emphasis on the time that something happened; and C) plain imperfect + **to** 'whenever,' a general condition, with a repeated or habitual conclusion.

母親が去ったら、子どもは泣きます。

Hahaoya ga sattara, kodomo wa nakimasu.

When (or if) the child's mother leaves, he will cry.

母親が去る時に，子どもは泣きます。

Hahaoya ga saru toki ni, kodomo wa nakimasu.

When the child's mother leaves, he will cry.

母親が去った時に，子どもは泣きます。

Hahaoya ga satta toki ni, kodomo wa nakimasu.

When the child's mother has left, he will cry.

母親が去ると，子どもは泣きます。

Hahaoya ga saru to, kodomo wa nakimasu.

When(ever) the child's mother leaves, he cries.



母親が去ったら，子どもは泣きました。

Hahaoya ga sattara, kodomo wa nakimashita.

When the child's mother left, he cried.

母親が去った時に，子どもは泣きました。

Hahaoya ga satta toki ni, kodomo wa nakimashita.

When the child's mother left, he cried.

母親が去る時に，子どもは泣きました。

Hahaoya ga saru toki ni, kodomo wa nakimashita.

When the child's mother was about to leave, he cried.

母親が去ると，子どもは泣きました。

Hahaoya ga saru to, kodomo wa nakimashita.

When the child's mother left, he cried.

As shown in the above examples, the use of the perfect

before **toki ni** is sometimes possible even when the tense of the whole sentence is future.

Here are some more examples of conditional forms with the meaning ‘when’:

映画館へ行ってみたら、もう見たことのある映画
でした。

**Eigakan e itte mitara, mō mita koto no aru eiga
deshita.**

When I went to the theater and looked, it was a
film I had already seen.

2時間勉強したら、食事をしましょう。

Ni-jikan benkyō shitara, shokuji o shimashō.

When we’ve studied for two hours, let’s eat.

8.12. Asking for advice

To ask for advice, use an expression like one of the following:

何をしたらいいでしょうか。

Nani o shitara ii deshō ka.

What should I do? (*lit.*, If I were to do what, would
it be good?)

何をすればいいでしょうか。

Nani o sureba ii deshō ka.

What should I do? (*lit.*, If I do what, will it be
good?)

どうしたらいいでしょうか。

Dō shitara ii deshō ka.

What should I do? (*lit.*, If I were to do how, would
it be good?)

どうすればいいでしょうか。

Dō sureba ii deshō ka.

What should I do? (*lit.*, If I do how, will it be
good?)

こうしたらいいでしょうか。

Kō shitara ii deshō ka.

Should I do this? (*lit.*, If I were to do like this, would it be good?)

こうすればいいでしょうか。

Kō sureba ii deshō ka.

Should I do this? (*lit.*, If I do like this, will it be good?)

こうしたらどうでしょうか。

Kō shitara dō deshō ka.

How about doing this? (*lit.*, If I were to do like this, how would it be?)

こうすればどうでしょうか。

Kō sureba dō deshō ka.

How about doing this? (*lit.*, If I do like this, how will it be?)

Each expression consists of two parts: a proposed hypothesis (if-clause) with either the conditional or the provisional, since the proposal refers to the future; and a conclusion (then-clause), which asks either how the hypothesis is or whether the hypothesis is all right. The interrogative word may be either in the hypothesis (**dō shitara...**) or in the conclusion (**...dō deshō ka**), but you do not find interrogatives in both the if-clause and the then-clause.

This is the usual polite way of asking and giving directions in Japanese. Notice the difference between the Japanese and English equivalents in this exchange:

ここから高橋病院はどう行ったらいいでしょうか。

Koko kara Takahashi byōin wa dō ittara ii deshō ka.

How can I get to Takahashi Hospital from here?

あのバスに乗ったらいいでしょう。

Ano basu ni nottara ii deshō.

Take that bus.

Here are some more examples of sentences containing advice. The English equivalents contain words like ‘should, ought.’

どのバスに乗ったらいいでしょうか。

Dono basu ni nottara ii deshō ka.

Which bus should I take?

これをもう少し勉強すればいいと思います。

Kore o mō sukoshi benkyō sureba ii to omoimasu.

I think you ought to study this a little more.

値段を比べたらどうでしょうか。

Nedan o kurabetara dō deshō ka.

Should we compare prices?

ローマ字で書けばいいでしょう。

Rōmaji de kakeba ii deshō.

You ought to write it in Roman letters.

だれもいなかったらどうすればいいでしょうか。

Dare mo inakattara dō sureba ii deshō ka.

If no one is there, what should I do?

Sometimes an English equivalent might include the expression ‘better’ or ‘had better,’ but this is often closer to the Japanese expression discussed in the next section.

8.13. ‘Had better’

One way of giving advice in English is to say things like ‘You’d better do like this,’ ‘I better be there before the teacher arrives.’ In such sentences, there is usually the slight implication that a comparison is being made—it would be better to do something than not to do it. The nearest Japanese equivalent is the plain perfect + **hō** ‘alternative’ + some form of the adjective **ii** ‘is good’:

ネットで買った方がいいでしょう。

Netto de katta hō ga ii deshō.

I think you'd better buy it online.

できるだけ早く病院に行った方がいいと思いますよ。

Dekirudake hayaku byōin ni itta hō ga ii to omoimasu yo.

I think you'd better go to the hospital as soon as possible.

Notice that, for this meaning of 'had better,' the form in front of **hō** is always perfect, regardless of the mood of the final expression. If you use the imperfect mood, the meaning is 'it is better to,' which has a slightly different flavor:

もらうよりやる方がいいです。

Morau yori yaru hō ga ii desu.

It is better to give than to receive.

私が行く方がいいでしょう。

Watashi ga iku hō ga ii deshō.

It would be better for me to go (than for you to, or than for me to stay).

先生になる方がいいです。

Sensei ni naru hō ga ii desu.

It is better (for someone) to become a teacher.

8.14. ...さえ ...sae

The particle **sae** 'even, only, just' is more strongly emphatic than **mo** 'even; also.' It singles out a word or phrase for a particularly acute focus of attention. Like **mo**, **sae** follows nouns, nouns + the copula gerund (**de**), and infinitives. Other particles may occur after the noun before **sae** or **de sae**, but **ga**, **o**, and of course the focus-shifting **wa** do not ordinarily occur. Here are examples of **mo** and **sae** after nouns, nouns + **de**, and infinitives. After nouns, the translation is often 'just'; after

infinitives, ‘only.’

子どももできます。

Kodomo mo dekimasu.

Children can do it, too.

子ども(で)さえできます。

Kodomo (de) sae dekimasu.

Even children can do it.

この漢字は日本人(で)さえ分かりません。

Kono kanji wa Nihon-jin (de) sae wakarimasen.

Even Japanese people do not know this kanji.

休みさえすれば，よくなります。

Yasumi sae sureba, yoku narimasu.

If you'll just (if you'll only) rest, you'll get better.

安くさえあればどのレストランでもいいです。

Yasuku sae areba dono resutoran de mo ii desu.

If it is cheap, any restaurant is okay.

Notice the patterns VERB-INFINITIVE + **sae sureba** and ADJECTIVE-INFINITIVE + **sae areba**. These are the usual ways to put a clause with the meaning ‘if something will ONLY do something or be something,’ the actual verb or adjective meaning is carried by the infinitive, and **sureba** and **areba** function as a sort of dummy or auxiliary to carry the provisional ending **-(r)eba** and the meaning ‘if.’ The concluding, main clause of the sentence gives the result to be expected, granted ‘ONLY’ that the provision be so.

8.15. The explicit use of に *ni*

Some expressions that require a verb + a direct object in English are equivalent to Japanese expressions with a subject + a verb:

フランス語が分かります。

Furansugo

ga

wakarimasu.

French is clear. = I understand French.

泳ぐことができます。 **Oyogu koto ga dekimasu.**

Fact of swimming is possible. = I can swim.

お金が要ります。 **O-kane ga irimasu.**

Money is necessary. = I need money.

The person who understands, is able to do, or needs is usually marked by the particle **wa** as in **Watashi wa Furansugo ga wakarimasu**, **Watashi wa oyogu koto ga dekimasu**, and **Watashi wa o-kane ga irimasu**. However, you can have the particle **ni**, as you can see in the following sentences.

私にはフランス語がわかります。

Watashi ni wa Furansugo ga wakarimasu.

I understand French.

私には泳ぐことができます。

Watashi ni wa oyogu koto ga dekimasu.

I can swim.

私にはお金が要ります。

Watashi ni wa o-kane ga irimasu.

I need money.

Following are additional examples where you can see the particle **ni** in a similar context:

そんなひどいことは私には言えません。

Sonna hidoi koto wa watashi ni wa iemasen.

I cannot say such a terrible thing.

あの人には友達がいません。

Ano hito ni wa tomodachi ga imasen.

That person does not have a friend.

眼鏡をかけても父にはこの字は読めません。

Megane o kakete mo chichi ni wa kono ji wa

yomemasen.

Even with eyeglasses, my father cannot read this character.

8.16. ...ば…ほど … **...ba...hodo** ‘the more... the more...’

Sentences like ‘the sooner, the better,’ ‘the more, the merrier,’ ‘the more I eat fish, the less I like it,’ and ‘the less I see of him, the better’ are the equivalent of a Japanese construction involving one verb or adjective given first in the provisional, then repeated in the plain imperfect + **hodo** ‘extent, to the extent that,’ followed by the other verb or adjective in a concluding form:

勉強すればするほど分からないことがでてきました。

Benkyō sureba suru hodo wakaranai koto ga detekimashita.

The more I studied, the more questions I came up with.

早ければ早いほどいいです。

Hayakereba hayai hodo ii desu.

The sooner the better.

キッチンは広ければ広いほど便利です。

Kitchin wa hirokereba hiroi hodo benri desu.

The bigger a kitchen is, the more convenient.

8.17. …し **...shi**

The particle **shi** (perhaps derived from the infinitive of **suru**, which is **shi** ‘doing’) connects clauses with the meaning ‘and also.’ The verb, adjective, or copula at the end of the clause preceding **shi** is either plain imperfect or perfect. You have already had one way to connect clauses with the meaning ‘and,’ by using the gerund that means ‘does and’ or ‘is and.’ The

difference between the use of the gerund and the use of the plain imperfect or perfect + the particle **shi** lies in the tightness of the connection between the two clauses. If there is some sort of sequence in time or logic between the clauses in the order in which they are given, then you use the gerund. However, if you are emphasizing the actions or properties by randomly listing them for making some point, then you use **shi**. When **shi** is used, the concluding phrase is often omitted. It is also common to have only one instance of **shi** in a sentence. Here are some more examples of **shi**.

このアパートは家賃が安いし、静かだし、最高です。

Kono apāto wa yachin ga yasui shi, shizuka da shi, saikō desu.

As for this apartment, the rent is cheap, the place is quiet, so it's just the best.

あの人はかっこいいし、頭がいいし、スポーツもできるし。

Ano hito wa kakkoi shi, atama ga ii shi, supōtsu mo dekiru shi.

That person is cool-looking, smart, can do (all sorts of) sports (...).

もう暗いし、あしたにしましょう。

Mō kurai shi, ashita ni shimashō.

It's already dark, so let's do it tomorrow.

お金はぜんぜんないし。

O-kane wa zenzen nai shi.

I don't have any money... (So what can I do?)

8.18. Correlative compounds

There are a few nouns made up from interrogatives and other correlative words to give a meaning of a non-specific nature:

だれだれ **daredare** so-and-so, somebody or other

どこどこ **dokodoko** somewhere or other
どこそこ **dokosoko** someplace or other
これこれ **korekore** such-and-such a one
あれこれ **arekore** this or that, one thing or another
かれこれ **karekore** about, approximately
あちらこちら (あちこち) **achira kochira (achikochi)**
here and there

The word **sorezore**, however, has a distributive rather than a non-specific meaning: ‘severally, respectively.’ Here are a few examples of the use of these words.

どここのだれだれがそう言ったとか言っていました。

Dokodoko no daredare ga sō itta toka itte imashita.

He was saying so-and-so in somewhere or other said that or something like that.

あれこれ考えているうちに嫌になりました。

Arekore kangaete iru uchi ni iya ni narimashita.

While I was thinking about this or that, I started to hate (the idea).

このタイプの車は日本でもあちらこちらで見かけられるようになりました。

Kono taipu no kuruma wa Nihon de mo achirakochira de mikakerareru yō ni narimashita.

We started to see this type of car here and there, even in Japan.

この会社ではかれこれ３０年になります。

Kono kaisha de wa karekore sanjū-nen ni narimasu.

In this company I have been working about thirty years.



[cue 08-3]

Conversation

Tomomi (T) is on the way to her job interview, but she missed the bus. She calls Yumiko (Y), who lives near the train station.

T. もしもし、由美ちゃん？私。

Moshimoshi, Yumi-chan? Watashi.

Hello, Yumi? It's me.

Y. ああ。友美ちゃん？

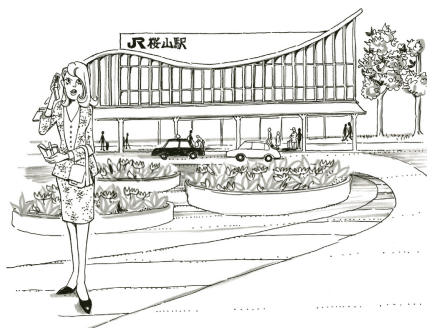
Ā, Tomomi-chan?

Oh, Tomomi?

T. うん。

Un.

Yes.



Y. どうしたの。

Dō shita no?

What happened?

T. 3時から面接があるんだけど、電車に乗りおくれちゃって。

San-ji kara mensetsu ga aru n dake do, densha ni nori-okure chatte.

I have a (job) interview at three p.m., but I just missed the train.

Y. 今どこ？

Ima doko?

Where are you now?

T. 駅前。

Ekimae.

In front of the train station.

Y. じゃあ、車で連れて行ってあげるよ。

Jā, kuruma de tsurete itte ageru yo.

Okay, then I'll take you there by car.

T. ああ、助かる！

Ā, tasukaru!

Oh, that helps!

Y. じゃあ、ロータリーのところで待ってて。

Jā, rōtarī no tokoro de matte te.

Okay, then, wait for me at the rotary.

T. うん。わかった。ありがとう。

Un. Wakatta. Arigatō.

Okay. Got it. Thanks!

Exercises

I. Fill in the blanks using a question word. If needed, add a particle after it.

1 「~~誰か来、ましたか~~ 来ませんでしたよ。」

~~1. 誰か行きましたか。~~ "Dare ka ikimashita ka." "deshita yo."

~~2. 夏休みはどこにも行きませんか。」~~

~~"Natsukyasumi mo wimasen."~~ _____ ni ikimasu ka."

~~3. 土曜に行きました。」に行きましたか。」~~

~~"Shūbyō ni ikimashita."~~ ni ikimashita ka."

~~4. 何か要りますか。」要りません。」~~

~~"Idani ka irimasu ka."~~

~~5. 田嶋さんはうね。」と話していましたよ。」~~

~~"Tanakasan wa"~~ _____ to hanashite imashita yo."

~~6. 餅は _____ を食べても太りません。」~~

~~Ane wa _____ o tabete mo futorimasen.~~

II. Fill in the blanks appropriately, if necessary. Some sentences may be complete already.

1. 天気が _____ ら, 公園に行きます。

Tenki ga _____ ra, kōen ni ikimasu.

2. 天気が _____ ば, 公園に行きます。

Tenki ga _____ ba, kōen ni ikimasu.

3. 日本語で _____ ら, すぐ分かります。

Nihongo de _____ ra, sugu wakarimasu.

4. 日本語で _____ ば, すぐ分かります。

Nihongo de _____ ba, sugu wakarimasu.

5. 日本の映画 _____ と必ず見ます。

Nihon no eiga _____ to kanarazu mimasu.

6. 日本の映画 _____ なら必ず見ます。

Nihon no eiga _____ nara kanarazu mimasu.

III. By using all the items in each set, make a sensible sentence. Conjugate verbs and adjectives or add some items if needed.

1. {簡単な kantan na, 子ども kodomo, 漢字 kanji, ...さえ sae, こんな konna}

2. {...に **ni**, お金 **o-kane**, 要ります **irimasu**}
3. {早い **hayai**, ...ほど **hodo**, いいです **ii desu**, ...ば **ba**}
4. {田中さん **Tanaka-san**, かつこいい **kakko ii**, やさしい **yasashii**, ...し **shi**}
5. {ネット **netto**, 買う **kau**, いい **ii**, ...方 **hō**}

IV. Complete the following sentences.

1. カンニングを _____ は _____ よ。

Kanningu o _____ wa _____ yo.

Don't cheat!

2. 早く _____ ですか。

Hayaku _____ desu ka.

May I leave early?

3. 私の鉛筆を _____ いいですよ。

Watashi no enpitsu o _____ ii desu yo.

You may use my pencil.

4. まだ3時ですから _____ いいですよ。

Mada san-ji desu kara _____ ii desu yo.

It's still three o'clock, so no need to hurry.

5. 漢字を勉強 _____ いけません。

Kanji o benkyō _____ ikemasen.

I have to study kanji.

Answers:

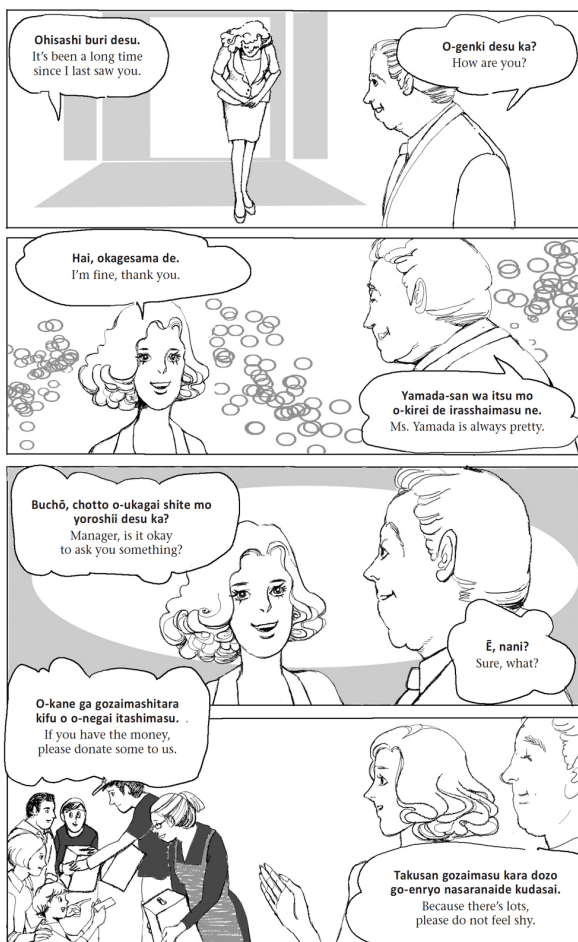
I 1. だれも **dare mo** 2. どこか **doko ka** 3. どこ **doko** 4. 何も **nani mo** 5. だれか **dare ka** 6. 何 **nani**

II 1. よかった **yokatta** 2. よけれ **yokere** 3. 言った **itta** 4. 言え **ie** 5.

だ da 6. none.

III 1. こんな簡単な漢字は子どもでさえ分かります。 **Konna kantan na kanji wa kodomo de sae wakarimasu.** 2. 私にはお金が要ります。 **Watashi ni wa o-kane ga irimasu.** 3. 早ければ早いほどいいです。 **Hayakereba hayai hodo ii desu.** 4. 田中さんはかつこいいし、優しいし。 **Tanaka-san wa kakko ii shi, yasashii shi.** 5. ネットで買った方がいいですよ。 **Netto de katta hō ga ii desu yo.**

IV 1. して **shite**, いけません **ikemasen** 2. 帰ってもいい **kaette mo ii** 3. 使っても **tsukatte mo** 4. 急がなくてもいい **isoganakute mo ii** 5. しなくては **shinakute wa**

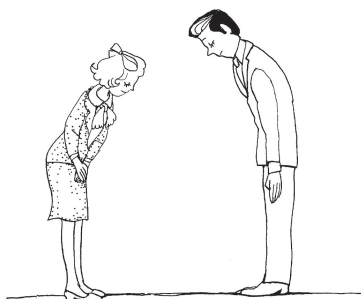


LESSON 9

Be Polite!

礼儀正しく！ **Reigi Tadashiku!**

In this lesson you will learn a variety of prefixes, suffixes, forms, and words that make your speech very polite.





[cue 09-1]

Basic Sentences

ご無沙汰いたしております。

Gobusata itashite orimasu.

Haven't seen you for a long time! (*lit.*, I have not visited you frequently enough.)

お元気でいらっしゃいますか。

O-genki de irasshaimasu ka.

How are you?

はい，お陰さまで。

Hai, okagesama de.

I'm fine, thanks to everyone.

お父様はいかがですか。

Otôsama wa ikaga desu ka.

How is your father?

父も元気にしております。

Chichi mo genki ni shite orimasu.

My father is also fine.

先月田中先生にお会いいたしました。

Sengetsu Tanaka sensei ni o-ai itashimashita.

Last month I met Professor Tanaka.

どちらでお会いになったんですか。

Dochira de o-ai ni natta n desu ka.

Where did you meet him?

博物館でございました。

Hakubutsukan de gozaimashita.

It was at the museum.

田中先生にいろいろ教えて頂きました。

Tanaka sensei ni iroiro oshiete itadakimashita.

Professor Tanaka taught me a variety of things. (*lit.*, I received the favor of teaching a variety of things from Prof. Tanaka.)

10 橋先生はお忙しくていらっしゃいますか。

Takahashi sensei wa o-isogashikute irasshaimasu ka.

Is Professor Takahashi busy?

11 は月の参会はおいでにならないのですか。」

“Haigatsuiimaseka! Kai ni wa oide ni naranai no desu ka.”

~~“Correct, I’m not going to the conference in April?”~~

12 近いうちにまたお伺いいたします。

Chikai uchi ni mata o-ukagai itashimasu.

I’ll visit you soon.

13 の先生方にも宜しくお伝えください。

Hoka no sensei-gata ni mo yoroshiku o-tsutae kudasai.

Please send my best regards to the other teachers.



[cue 09-2]

Basic Vocabulary

POLITE PHRASES

It's been a long time. ~~O-hisashiwa desu last.~~

How are you? **O-genki desu ka.**

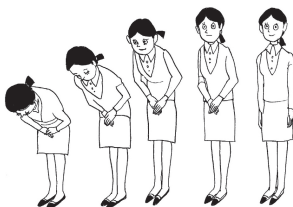
(お陰様) Thank ~~Okagesama de~~ others).

(失礼) Expression ~~Shitsurei shimasu~~ Lit., I'll be rude.)

Bowing

Bowing plays an important role for communication in Japan. Phrases for gratitude, apology, greeting, and parting are almost always accompanied by bowing. People sometimes bow without saying anything. The deeper the bow, the deeper the respect for the person to whom you

are bowing. The bow is called the お辞儀 **ojigi**, or more formally 礼 **rei**. The former is more common because the latter is only one syllable. The deepest bow is called 最敬礼 **saikeirei**. The deep bow, lowering the upper half of the body by 45 degrees, is required if you make a horrible mistake, receive overwhelming kindness, or associate with people to whom you must show serious respect. Otherwise, you don't have to bow very deeply. You can lower your upper body only by about 10–15 degrees, or just tilt your head forward for a moment or two in casual situations. When introductions are being made, Japanese do not shake hands, hug, or kiss, but just bow and smile.



POLITE QUESTIONS

How is it? か。 **Ikaga desu ka.**

Who is it? か。 **Donata desu ka.**

Where is it? / Which? か。 **Dochira desu ka.**

How old are you? か。 **O-ikutsu desu ka.**

How much is it? か。 **O-ikura desu ka.**

Where are you from? か。 **Dochira kara desu ka.**

POLITE PHRASES AT RESTAURANTS

Welcome! ませ。 **Irasshaimase.**

What is your order? **Gordan wa.**

Please wait a little bit. **Shōshō o-machi kudasai.**

Sorry to have kept you waiting. **Omatase itashimashita.**

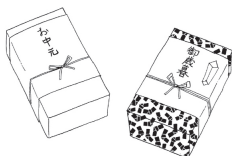
申し訳しやうです。 **Mōshiwake gozaimasen.**
Thank you so much! **Arigatō gozaimashita.**

VERBS OF GIVING AND RECEIVING

gives (to me/us) ・ あげます **ageru/agemasu**
gives (honorific) (to me/us) 上げます **sashiageru/sashiagemasu**
gives (to me/us) くれます **kureru/kuremasu**
gives (to me/us, honorific) くださいます **kudasaru/kudasaimasu**
receives もらいます **morau/moraimasu**
receives (honorific) いただきます **itadaku/itadakimasu**

Gift-giving

The Japanese send gifts to their bosses, clients, former teachers, friends, and relatives. There are two major gift-giving seasons in Japan: one is in summer, and the other is at the end of the year. The summer gift is called **ochūgen**, and the end-of-year gift is called **oseibo**. Popular **ochūgen** and **oseibo** gifts are foods and beverages such as pasta, cheese, seaweed, dried shitake mushrooms, cooking oil, canned foods, beer, sake, cookies, cakes, and items for daily living such as soap and towels. People usually purchase the gifts at a well-known department store and have the store wrap them with the store's wrapping paper and send them directly to their relatives, superiors, and friends. During these seasons, the **ochūgen** and **oseibo** counter at department stores is very crowded with people clutching address books.



9.1. Status words: humble, neutral, exalted

A word or expression in Japanese may have one of three connotations, indicating its reference to a social status: humble, neutral, and exalted. Many textbooks refer to the exalted forms as “honorific.” In this book, honorific is used to refer to BOTH the humble and exalted forms, and to the style of speech in which they usually occur. Most of the words and expressions you have learned so far are neutral. These are used in reference to anyone, provided you are not showing a special deference. Ordinarily, however, Japanese use a more polite level of speech—the honorific style—in speaking to older people, officials, strangers, guests, and so forth. And even in the ordinary polite level you use to a friend of your own age, it is customary to show deference to the other person and his family by using exalted forms for kinship terms and certain other words. Humble forms are only used when speaking of yourself or members of your family to other people. When directly addressing a member of your family you use the exalted term if the person is older, for example, **Okāsan** ‘Mother’ and **Onīsan** ‘Older Brother.’ The given name is used if the person is younger: **Jirō** ‘(younger brother) **Jiro**.’

For many expressions, including most nouns, there is no special humble form. Instead, the neutral form is used for the humble situations in contrast with the exalted form. In speaking very politely to someone of equivalent social rank, you usually use the exalted forms for reference to him or her and his or her actions, and the simple neutral forms in reference to yourself and your own actions, unless your actions can be construed as involving the other person or his or her family or property, or as involving someone else of higher social status than yourself, in which case you use the humble forms. If you are speaking to someone of much superior social rank, for example as an employee talking to her employer, you may use humble forms

for yourself throughout.

9.2. Kinship terms

The terms used to refer to members of a family come in pairs: one neutral (also used for the humble situations ‘my...’) and the other exalted (‘your...’). For ‘his...,’ you would ordinarily use the exalted form, unless you consider the ‘him’ a member of your own in-group as contrasted with the person you are speaking to.

	Exalted
父 <small>ちち</small> chichi	お父さん otōsan
母 <small>はは</small> haha	お母さん okāsan
両親 <small>りやうしん</small> ryōshin	両親 ryōshin
兄弟 <small>けいだい</small> keidai	兄弟 keidai
息子 <small>むすこ</small> musuko	息子 musuko ; 坊ちゃん botchan
娘 <small>むすめ</small> musume	娘 musume ; お嬢さん ojōsan
赤ちゃん aka-chan	
子供 <small>こども</small> kodomo	子供 kodomo ; お子さん okosan
旦那 <small>だんな</small> danna	旦那 danna
姉 <small>あね</small> ane	姉 ane ; 姉さん anēsan
兄 <small>あに</small> ani	兄 ani ; 兄さん anīsan
妹 <small>いもうと</small> imōto	妹 imōto ; 妹さん imōto-san
祖母 <small>おばあ</small> oba	祖母 oba ; おばあさん obāsan
祖父 <small>おじい</small> oji	祖父 oji ; おじいさん ojīsan
おば oba	おば oba ; おばさん obasan
甥 <small>おい</small> oi	甥 oi ; 甥さん oigōsan
姪 <small>めい</small> mei	姪 mei ; 姪さん meigōsan
叔父 <small>いとこ</small> itoko	叔父 itoko ; おい o-itokosan
親戚 <small>しんせき</small> shinseki	親戚 shinseki
旦那 <small>だんな</small> danna	旦那 danna ; 旦那 danna
奥 <small>おく</small> oku	奥 oku ; 奥さん okusama
家 <small>いえ</small> ie	家 ie ; 家 ie

The words **ojisan** and **obasan** as well as **ojisan** and **obāsan** are also used in a general way by young people to refer to anyone of an older generation, for example: **tonari no ojisan** ‘the one next door,’ **ano obasan** ‘that lady,’ and **ano obāsan** ‘that elderly lady.’

9.3. Other nouns

There are a few other nouns that come in pairs, with one neutral, the other exalted.

	Realized
この世に家 ie	
誰か; 者 mono	
彼の妹 ano kōto	
ほかほか	
どちら dochira	
どちらだ? dochira	

9.4. Honorific prefixes

There are two common honorific prefixes, **o-** and **go-**. Words containing an honorific prefix may indicate an exaltation of the word itself, on its own merits, as in **watashi no o-tomodachi** ‘my friend’ and **anata no o-tomodachi** ‘your friend,’ or it may indicate the relationship between the word and an exalted person, as in **o-niwa** ‘your garden.’ Again, with nouns and verb forms, it may be just generally honorific, used for both humble and exalted situations. With adjective forms, the use of the honorific prefix seems always to indicate an exalted relationship: **o-isogashii toki** ‘at a time when YOU are very busy.’

The prefix **go-** is attached to a number of nouns (often, but not always, of Chinese origin) and to a few verb infinitives: **go-shujin** ‘your husband,’ **go-yukkuri** ‘slowly,’ **go-zonji** ‘knowing.’ The prefix **o-** is more widely used and is attached readily to nouns (including many of Chinese origin: **o-shōyu** ‘the soy sauce,’ **o-denwa** ‘the telephone’), verb infinitives (**o-yasumi**), and

many adjectives (**o-isogashii** ‘busy’).

Some words by convention have the prefixes **o-** and **go-**, particularly in the speech of women and children, regardless of whether the situation calls for an honorific (humble or exalted) form or not. This is an extension of the usage exalting the word itself, on its own merits. Here is a list of some of these words with a conventional honorific prefix:

ごはん	go-han	meal, food
お米	o-kome	rice (harvested, but harvested)
お酒	o-sake	rice wine
お饗	o-hōbi	reward
お盆	o-bon	tray
お茶	o-cha	tea
お金	o-kane	money
お腹	o-haka	stomach
お菓子	o-kashi	pastry, sweets
お湯	o-tsuri	hot water



9.5. Honorific suffixes for people’s names

There are two honorific suffixes for people’s names: **-san** and **-sama**. The latter is a formal variant of the former, usually restricted to certain set expressions. The suffix **-san** is widely used with names (= Mr., Miss, Ms., Mrs.), kinship terms, occupations, and other nouns referring to people. In more formal speech, **-sama** sometimes replaces **-san** in these terms. In

more intimate speech, **-chan** is heard.

Mr. Tanaka **Tanaka-san**

Mr. Smith **Sumisu-san**

Ms. Yoko **Yōko-san**

Ms. Yoko **Yōko-chan**

Michael **Maikeru-san**

President **shachō-san**

customer, **okyaku-san** ・ お客様 **o-kyaku-sama**

9.6. Verbs: the honorific infinitive

The humble or exalted equivalent to a simple polite verb of neutral status is often an expression built around the HONORIFIC INFINITIVE. For verbs, this form is usually made by prefixing **o-** to the regular infinitive.

The most common honorific usage for verbs is as follows. For the humble form, use the honorific infinitive plus some form of the neutral verb **suru** ‘does’ or of the humble verb **itasu** ‘does.’ The forms with **itasu** show greater deference (= are more humble) than the forms with **suru**:

お書きいたします。／お書きします。

O-kaki itashimasu./O-kaki shimasu.

I’ll write it.

For the exalted form, use the honorific infinitive + the particle **ni** + some form of the verb **naruru** ‘becomes.’

お書きになります。

O-kaki ni narimasu.

(He) will write it.

Some verbs such as **kaeru** ‘returns’ can be used with some form of the copula **da** or of the honorific polite copula **de gozaimasu**, or of the exalted copula **de irassharu**.

お帰ります。 **O-kaeri desu.**

お帰ります。 **O-kaeri de gozaimasu.**

お帰りは returning, やいます。 **O-kaeri de irasshaimasu.**

Other examples are:

お休みの resting, います。 **O-yasumi de gozaimasu.**

お出かけの out, ございます。 **O-dekake de gozaimasu.**

お探しの looking (for it), います。 **O-sagashi de gozaimasu.**

9.7. Special honorific verbs

For many common verbs, in addition to (or to the exclusion of) regularly formed exalted and humble forms, Japanese use special verbs or special infinitives for either the exalted or the humble, or for both. In the table of special verbs below, the verbs are arranged in three vertical columns, humble, neutral, and exalted. Where there are blanks in the table, it means there is no special verb for the humble or for the exalted, but that the form can be made in the regular way (HONORIFIC INFINITIVE + **itasu**; HONORIFIC INFINITIVE + **ni naru**, etc.).

	Humble	Neutral	Exalted
I give	差し上げる sashiageru	あげる ageru やる yaru	---
You give or he gives to me or us	---	くれる kureru	下さる kudasharu
does	致す itasu	する suru	なさる nasaru ¹
says	申す mōsu	言う iu	おっしゃる ossharu ¹
drinks, eats	頂く itadaku	飲む nomu, 食べる taberu	召し上がる meshiagaru
receives	頂く itadaku	もらう morau	---
comes	参る mairu	来る kuru	いらっしゃる irassharu ¹
goes	参る mairu ² 伺う ukagau ²	行く iku	いらっしゃる irassharu ¹
stays	おる oru	いる iru (to exist)	いらっしゃる irassharu ¹
is, equals	...でござる de gozaru ^{1,4}	...だ da	...でいらっしゃる de irassharu ¹
looks	拝見する haiken suru ³	見る miru	ご覧になる go-ran ni naru
knows	存じる zonziru	知る shiru	ご存知だ go-zonji da
has	ござる gozaru ^{1,4}	ある aru	---
asks	伺う ukagau	尋ねる tazuneru	---

¹ These verbs are consonant verbs, but り ri that appears directly before the

polite suffix (ます **masu**, ません **masen**, etc.) changes to い i.

² If the speaker is going to the place of the addressee, use 伺う **ukagau** rather than 参る **mairu**.

³ Use 拝見する **haiken suru** only if the item seen belongs to the addressee.

⁴ ごさる **gozaru** and ... でござる **de gozaru** function either as humble forms or very polite forms.

9.8. 申し上げる *mōshiageru*

The verb **mōshiageru** is used as a humble form for either ‘does’ or ‘says’:

またお伺い申し上げます。= またお伺いいたします。

Mata o-ukagai mōshiagemasu. = Mata o-ukagai itashimasu.

I’ll visit you again.

申し上げたいことがございます。= 申したいことがございます。

Mōshiagetai koto ga gozaimasu. = Mōshitai koto ga gozaimasu.

There’s something I want to tell you.

9.9. Inflection of slightly irregular exalted verbs

The verbs **nasaru**, **irassharu**, **kudasaru**, and **ossharu** are irregularly inflected in similar ways:

Plain Imperfect	Polite Imperfect	Imperative	Gerund	Plain Perfect
なさる nasaru ‘does’	なさいます nasaimasu	なさい nasai	なさって nasatte	なさった nasatta
いらっしゃる irassharu ‘comes, goes, is’	いらっしゃいます irasshaimasu	いらっしゃい irasshai	いらっしゃって irasshatte	いらっしゃった irasshatta
くださる kudasaru ‘gives’	くださいます kudasaimasu	ください kudasai	くださって kudasatte	くださった kudasatta
おっしゃる ossharu ‘says’	おっしゃいます osshaimasu	おっしゃい osshai	おっしゃって osshatte	おっしゃった osshatta

For **gozaru (gozaimasu)** see 9.15.

9.10. Special inflections of - ます **-masu**

The polite ending **-masu** is really itself a verb that is used only when attached to other verb infinitives. In ordinary polite speech it is inflected only for the imperfect **-masu**, the perfect **-mashita**, and the tentative **-mashō**. But in honorific speech, **-masu** is inflected for all categories except the infinitive. These polite forms are used at the end of sentence fragments, and also in the middle of sentences instead of the usual plain forms, to make the entire expression a bit more honorific:

そこへいらっしゃいまして
~~Soko e irasshaimashite...~~
そこへいらっしゃいましたら
~~Soko e irasshaimashitara...~~
そこへいらっしてくださいませ。
~~Soko e irasshite kudasaimase.~~

Here are the inflections of the polite verb **-masu**:

Imperfect: **-masu**
Tentative: **-mashō**
Infinitive: --
Provisional: **-maseba**
Imperative: **-mase**
Perfect: **-mashita**
Alternative: **-mashitari** (10.5)
Gerund: **-mashite**
Conditional: **-mashitara**

You may also encounter **deshite**, a polite gerund for the copula ‘is and’:

スキー王と呼ばれた人でして、関西に初めてス
キー場を開いた人でした。
“**Sukī-ō**” to yobareta hito **deshite**, Kansai ni hajimete

sukī-jō o hiraita hito deshita.

He was the man they called the “Ski King,” and the one that opened the first ski resort in Kansai.

9.11. Use of humble verbs

In general, humble verbs are used to denote one’s own acts when speaking to persons who are socially superior.

「部長、何まうとお伺いしても宜しいですか。」

“Buchō, chotto o-ukagai shite mo yoroshii desu ka.”

“Mr. Magh, is it okay to ask you something?”

When two people of approximately equal social status are talking, each may use the exalted forms in reference to the other person, but they generally use just the simple polite forms rather than the humble forms in reference to themselves.

「銀行へ行きますやいますか。」

“Ginkō e irasshaimasu ka.”

“Where are you going?”

An exception to this occurs when the verb implies participation of the other person or some person of higher social status as fellow-subject, indirect or direct object, possessor of something involved in the action, etc.; in this case, the humble form is customary. Sometimes, however, the humble form may be used by both speakers.

「どこへいらつしやいますか。」

“Doko e irasshaimasu ka.”

“Where are you going?”

「田中先生のお宅へ参ります。」

“Tanaka sensei no otaku e mairimasu.”

“I’m going to Professor Tanaka’s house.”

9.12. Adjectives and adjectival nouns

An adjective used as a modifier before a noun or noun phrase either remains unchanged or just adds the honorific prefix **o-**: **o-isogashii toki** ‘a busy time (for you).’ When an adjective is used at the end of a sentence as the main predicate, it may be treated in one of two ways: as an exalted expression, or as a general honorific (exalted or humble) expression. It is usually treated as an exalted expression IF THE REFERENCE IS DIRECTLY TO THE PERSON YOU ARE TALKING WITH or TO SOMEONE ELSE OF HIGH SOCIAL STATUS. Otherwise, if the reference is to one of his possessions, or to someone else of equal social status, or to yourself, it is treated as a general honorific.

The exalted expression is made by using the gerund (**-kute**) form of the adjective, with the honorific prefix **o-**, followed by some form of the exalted verb **irassharu** ‘stays, exists’:

お忙しくていらっしゃいます。

O-isogashikute irasshaimasu.

You are busy.

Similarly, adjectival nouns can be preceded by **o** and followed by **de** and **irassharu**.

山田さんはいつもおきれいでいらっしゃいますね。

Yamada-san wa itsu mo o-kirei de irasshaimasu ne.

Ms. Yamada is always pretty.

9.13. Formation of the adjective honorific infinitive

If we include the vowel that appears before the imperfect ending **-i**, Japanese adjectives are of four types: **-ii**, **-ai**, **-oi**, and **-ui** (**ōkii**, **akai**, **aoi**, **warui**). To produce the honorific infinitive form, we have to change not only the ending, but also the vowel before the ending, as follows:

Neutral Infinitive

-i

-ai

-eai

-uai

Here are some examples of adjective expressions in the plain, polite, and honorific imperfect:

	Humble	Honorific
is satisfactory	is yoroshi <u>yoroshii</u> desu <u>desu</u>	is yoroshii <u>yoroshii</u> desu <u>gozaimasu</u>
is red	is aka <u>akai</u> desu <u>desu</u>	is akai <u>akai</u> desu <u>gozaimasu</u>
is early	is hayai <u>hayai</u> desu <u>desu</u>	is hayai <u>hayai</u> desu <u>gozaimasu</u>
is white	is shiroi <u>shiroi</u> desu <u>desu</u>	is shiroi <u>shiroi</u> desu <u>gozaimasu</u>
is slow	is osoi <u>osoi</u> desu <u>desu</u>	is osoi <u>osoi</u> desu <u>gozaimasu</u>
is thin	is usu <u>usu</u> desu <u>desu</u>	is usu <u>usu</u> desu <u>gozaimasu</u>
is round	is maru <u>maru</u> desu <u>desu</u>	is maru <u>maru</u> desu <u>gozaimasu</u>

Note that this form is old-fashioned, and is used only in quite formal contexts or by elderly people.

9.14. Summary of honorific predicates

	Humble	General Honorific	Exalted
Verb	Hon inf + itasu Hon inf + suru Special Verb	←→	Hon inf + ni naru Hon inf + nasaru Special Verb
Verb aru	→	gozaru , oarininaru	←
Copula	→	de gozaru (de gozaimasu)	de irassharu
Adjective	→	Hon inf + gozaru (gozaimasu)	Gerund + irassharu Gerund + oide ni naru

9.15. ござる *gozaru*

The verb **gozaru** is the honorific equivalent of the neutral verb **aru** ‘exists’; it is neither specifically humble nor specifically

exalted, just generally honorific. In modern speech it never actually occurs in any plain forms—you don't hear **gozaru**. You hear **gozaimasu** in set phrases and within a sentence:

Good morning. います。 **O-hayō gozaimasu.**

Thank you. ございます。 **Arigatō gozaimasu.**

I'm terribly sorry. 申し訳ありません。 **Mōshiwake gozaimasen.**

お金がございましたら寄付をお願いいたします。

O-kane ga gozaimashitara kifu o o-negai itashimasu.

If you have the money, please donate some for us.

沢山ございますから、どうぞご遠慮なさないでください。

Takusan gozaimasu kara, dōzo go-enryo nasaranai de kudasai.

Because there's lots, please don't feel shy (i.e. about helping yourself).

Gozaimasu is also used after the honorific infinitive form of the adjective as in **Takō gozaimasu** 'It is expensive.' (See 9.13)

Just as **gozaimasu** (**gozaru**) is the general honorific equivalent of the neutral verb **aru**, the expression **de gozaimasu** (**de gozaru**) is the general honorific equivalent of the copula **da**. For example:

4階でございます。

Yon-kai de gozaimasu.

It's the fourth floor.

9.16. いらっしゃる *irassharu*

The exalted verb **irassharu** corresponds to three different neutral verbs: **kuru** 'comes,' **iku** 'goes,' and **iru** 'stays, exists.' As with all homonyms, you can usually tell which meaning is intended by the context:

どちらからいらっしゃいましたか。

Dochira kara irasshaimashita ka.

Where did you come from?

どちらへいらしゃいましたか。

Dochira e irasshaimashita ka.

Where did you go?

お母様はどちらにいらっしゃいますか。

Okāsama wa dochira ni irasshaimasu ka.

Where is your mother?

9.17. おいで *oide*

The expected forms for the honorific infinitives of **kuru** ‘comes,’ **iku** ‘goes,’ and **iru** ‘stays, exists,’ which are **oki**, **oiki**, and **oi**, rarely occur. Instead, for the exalted form you use either the special exalted infinitive **oide** (+ **ni naru**, etc.) or the exalted verb **irassharu**.

どちらからおいでになりましたか。

Dochira kara oide ni narimashita ka.

Where did you come from?

どちらへおいでになりましたか。

Dochira e oide ni narimashita ka.

Where did you go?

お母様はどちらにおいでになりますか。

Okāsama wa dochira ni oide ni narimasu ka.

Where is your mother?

9.18. Verbs for giving and receiving

The verbs **ageru** and **kureru** both mean ‘to give.’ The choice between the two depends on how close the speaker feels to the giver and the recipient. The verb **kureru** is used only when the recipient is the speaker’s insider, and the recipient is closer to the speaker than the giver. In all other contexts, **ageru** is used. For example, in the following sentences, the recipients are the

speaker's "insiders" (the speaker or the speaker's family members), the recipients are closer to the speaker than the giver, and the verb **kureru** is used.

ジョンさんが私にチョコレートくれました。

Jon-san ga watashi ni chokorēto o kuremashita.

John gave me chocolate.

ジョンさんが母にチョコレートくれました。

Jon-san ga haha ni chokorēto o kuremashita.

John gave my mother chocolate.

母が私にチョコレートくれました。

Haha ga watashi ni chokorēto o kuremashita.

My mother gave me chocolate.



***Watashi ga haha ni chokorēto o kuremashita** 'I gave my mother chocolate' is UNGRAMMATICAL because the recipient is less close to the speaker than the giver, although the recipient is the speaker's insider. Once **kuremashita** is replaced by **agemashita**, as in **Watashi ga haha ni chokorēto o agemashita**, the sentence becomes grammatical. When the giving event takes place among the speaker's insiders, excluding the speaker

himself, either **ageru** or **kureru** can be used. If **kureru** is used, it shows that the speaker feels closer to the receiver than to the giver. When the giving event takes place among outsiders, **ageru** is generally used.

The verb **ageru** must be replaced by **sashiageru** when the receiver is socially superior to, and/or distant from, the giver:

私は先生にチョコレートを差し上げました。

Watashi wa sensei ni chokorēto o sashiagemashita.

I gave the teacher chocolate.

父は社長にチョコレートを差し上げました。

Chichi wa shachō ni chokorēto o sashiagemashita.

My father gave the president chocolate.

The verb **kureru** must be replaced by **kudasaru** when the giver is socially superior to, and/or distant from, the receiver.

先生は私にチョコレートを下さいました。

Sensei wa watashi ni chokorēto o kudasaimashita.

The teacher gave me chocolate.

社長は父にチョコレートを下さいました。

Shachō wa chichi ni chokorēto o kudasaimashita.

The president gave my father chocolate.

Note that the verb **kudasaru** is a consonant verb, but its **masu**-form is **kudasaimasu** rather than **kudasarimasu**.

The verb **ageru** can be optionally replaced by **yaru** when the receiver is socially in a lower status than the giver. For example, when you are giving something to your younger siblings, children, or pets, you can use **yaru** instead of **ageru**:

子どもにチョコレートをやりました。

Kodomo ni chokorēto o yarimashita.

I gave chocolate to my children.

For the meaning 'to receive,' you can use **morau** or its honorific version **itadaku**. The receiver must be closer to the

speaker than to the giver when using these verbs. The source of receiving is marked by the particle **kara** or **ni**.

私は父に時計をもらった。

Watashi wa chichi ni tokei o moratta.

I received a watch from my father.

母は隣の方からケーキを頂いた。

Haha wa tonari no kata kara kēki o itadaita.

My mother received cakes from our next-door neighbor.



9.19. Favors

When you say ‘someone does something FOR someone else,’ you are reporting a FAVOR. To do this in Japanese, use the gerund of the verb representing the action of the favor, and then add on the appropriate verb meaning ‘gives.’ In other words, to say ‘I’ll write the letter for you,’ the Japanese says something like ‘I will give you (the favor of) writing the letter,’ **Tegami o kaite agemasu**. The person doing the favor is either the topic, followed by the particle **wa**, or the emphatic subject, followed by the particle **ga**. The person for whom the favor is done is indicated by the particle **ni**:

田中さんは中村さんに手紙を書いてあげました。

Tanaka-san wa Nakamura-san ni tegami o kaite agemashita.

Mr. Tanaka wrote the letter to Mr. Nakamura.

The verbs for giving are used just as they would be if you were giving some object instead of a favor. Similarly, the verbs of receiving can also be used for this function. Make sure to mark the recipient of the kind action with the particle **ni**.

兄は私に本を読んでもくれました。

Ani wa watashi ni hon o yonde kuremashita.

My brother read a book to me.

先生は私に漢字を教えてくださいました。

Sensei wa watashi ni kanji o oshiete kudasaimashita.

My teacher taught me kanji.

私は犬にセーターを作っていました。

Watashi wa inu ni sētā o tsukutte yarimashita.

I made a sweater for my dog.

先生に推薦状を書いていただきました。

Sensei ni suisenjō o kaite itadakimashita.

I had my teacher write a letter of recommendation for me.

9.20. Requests

The Japanese do not use imperative forms as often as we do. There are several ways to make a polite request in Japanese. You can use gerund forms or honorific infinitive along with some forms of verbs of giving and receiving. The expressions ending in a verb of giving (e.g. **kudasai**) are quite straightforward and might be too plain in a polite context. The politeness increases if the expression takes the form of a negative question (...**masen ka**), because this would make it sound more indirect. Furthermore, it sounds more polite if you use a verb of receiving (**morau/itadaku**) rather than a verb of giving, in the potential form (**moraeru/itadakeru**) in a negative question, as in **moraenai deshō ka**, **itadakemasen ka** or **itadakenai deshō ka**. The following sentences all express the request ‘Please read this letter.’

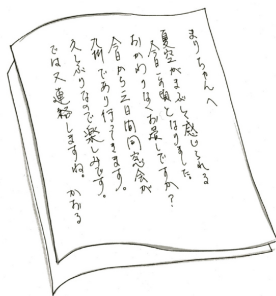
この手紙を読んでください(ませんか)。
Kono tegami o yonde kudasai(masen ka).

この手紙をお読みください。
Kono tegami o o-yomi kudasai.

この手紙を読んでもらえませんか。
Kono tegami o yonde moraemasen ka.

この手紙を読んでいたきたいんですが。
Kono tegami o yonde itadaki-tai n desu ga.

この手紙を読んでもいただけないでしょうか。
Kono tegami o yonde itadakenai deshō ka.



Negative requests are not ordinarily made except in the form of prohibitions to inferiors: **Itsu mo o-kashi o tabete wa ikemasen yo** ‘You mustn’t eat sweets all the time.’ To a social equal or superior, you suggest that ‘it would be better not’ to do something: **Sore o tabenai hō ga ii deshō** ‘It would be better if you didn’t eat that.’ Or, given two alternatives, you emphasize the positive one: **Sore o tabenai de, kore o tabete kudasai** ‘Please eat this one instead of that one.’

9.21. Answers to negative questions

The words **hai** (or **ē**) and **īe** are used to mean ‘what you’ve said is correct’ and ‘what you’ve said is incorrect.’ So if you state a question in a negative way, the standard Japanese answer turns out to be the opposite of standard English ‘yes’ and ‘no,’ which

affirm or deny the FACTS rather than the STATEMENT of the facts.

「砂糖はいりませんか。」

~~“Baṭōriwa iasen ka.”~~

~~“Don’t you need sugar?”~~

「バナナはあつちありません。」

~~“Bananawachiasen ka.”~~

~~“Don’t you have bananas?”~~

Of course, if the negative question is really just an oblique request, then you indicate assent with **hai** and your refusal with **ie**, as you would in English.

「はいツカヒスを持きてきてくださいません

~~か~~ **Hai, kashikomarimashita.”**

~~“Sūsukeshi o motte kite kudasaimasen ka.”~~

“Won’t you please bring the suitcase over here?”

「もう少し召し結構ですか。」

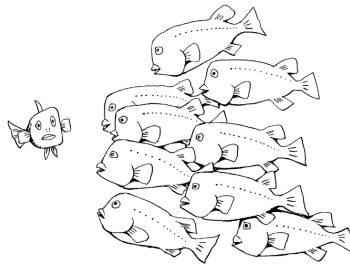
~~“Mōsukoshi mooshiagarimasen ka.”~~

~~“No thanks, have a little more~~

~~(to eat)?”~~

9.22. The specific plural

In general, singular and plural are not distinguished in Japanese: **hon** means ‘book’ or ‘books’ and **kore** means ‘this’ or ‘these.’ There are, however, ways to make specific plurals for certain nouns, and these are in common use, particularly for the equivalents of English pronouns. There is the following set of suffixes:



NAMING

-たち *tachi*

These occur in the following combinations:

~~We (ne wata)~~(ku)shi-tachi

~~We (to wata)~~(ku)shi-dohio)

~~You all (ne uan)~~ta-tachi

~~You all (to uan)~~ta-gata (exalted)

~~They (ne uan)~~no hito-tachi

~~They (to uan)~~no hito-gata (exalted)

The suffix **-tachi** is used frequently with nouns indicating people: **gakusei-tachi** ‘students,’ **Tanaka-tachi** ‘Tanaka and his group,’ and **kodomo-tachi** ‘children.’ Unless used impersonally, such expressions seem rather impolite. They can be made more polite by adding **-san** before **-tachi**, as in **gakusei-san-tachi**, **Tanaka-san-tachi**, **kodomo-san-tachi**. If special deference is shown to the people discussed, the exalted suffix **-gata** is used: **sensei-gata** ‘teachers.’ Both **hitotachi** and **hitobito** are used to mean ‘people.’ Reduplications of the **hitobito** type often include a connotation of variety or respective distribution ‘various people.’ Other examples are **kuniguni** ‘various countries,’ **shimajima** ‘(various or numerous) islands, island after island,’ and **sorezore** ‘severally, variously, respectively.’

The words **kore**, **sore**, and **are** refer to both singular and plural, ‘this’ or ‘these,’ ‘that’ or ‘those.’ They can be made specifically plural by adding the suffix **-ra**: **korera** ‘these,’ **sorera** ‘these,’ and **arera** ‘those over there.’ But in a simple equational

sentence like ‘These are roses, and those are camellias’ you just use the plain forms **Kore wa bara de, sore wa tsubaki desu.**

Another polite way to say ‘you (all)’ is **mina-san** or **mina-san-gata**. The word **mina-san** is often heard at the beginning of a public talk, equivalent to English ‘Ladies and Gentlemen.’ Sometimes it means just ‘everybody (at your house)’ as in **Mina-san ni yoroshiku** ‘Please give my regards to everyone.’



[cue 09-3]

Conversation

Christopher (C) wants to apply for a graduate school in Japan, and he needs a letter of recommendation. He thought of asking his Japanese teacher (T).

C: 来年から大学院で言語学を勉強したいと思っています。

Rainen kara daigakuin de gengogaku o benkyō shitai to omotte iru n desu.

I'm thinking of studying linguistics at a graduate school starting next year.

T: ああ、それはいいですね。

Ā, sore wa ii desu ne.

Oh, that's great!

C: はい。それで1つお願いがあるんですが。

Hai. Sore de hitotsu o-negai ga aru n desu ga.

Right. And I have a favor to ask you.

T: はい。何でしょう。 **Hai. Nan deshō.** Sure. What's that?

C: 推薦状を書いていただけないでしょうか。

Suisenjō o kaite itadakenai deshō ka.

Could you write a letter of recommendation for me?



T: もちろんいいですよ。 Mochiron ii desu yo. Of course, I'd be glad to.

C: ああ、どうもありがとうございます。

Ā, dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.

Oh, thank you so much!

T: いつまでに要りますか。 Itsu made ni irimasu ka. By when do you need it?

C: 来月の終わりまでにお願ひできますでしょうか。

Raigetsu no owari made ni onegai dekimasu deshō ka.

Could you write it by the end of next month?

T: ええ、大丈夫です。 Ē, daijōbu desu. Sure, no problem.

C: ああ、ありがとうございます。お忙しいところ申し訳ございませんが、どうぞ宜しくお願いいたします。

Ā, arigatō gozaimasu. O-isogashii tokoro mōshiwake gozaimasen ga, dōzo yoroshiku o-negai itashimasu.

Oh, thank you very much. I'm terribly sorry to ask this when you are busy, but your help is very much appreciated.

Exercises

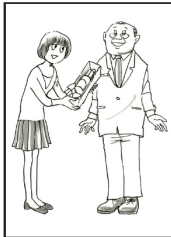
I. Fill in the blanks with appropriate verbs of giving or receiving.



1. 私は母にネックレスを _____ 。
- Watashi wa haha ni nekkuresu o _____ .**



2. 母は私にTシャツを _____ 。
- Haha wa watashi ni tīshatsu o _____ .**



3. 私は母からTシャツを _____ 。
- Watashi wa haha kara tīshatsu o _____ .**
4. 私は先生にワインを _____ 。
- Watashi wa sensei ni wain o _____ .**



5. 母は隣の方にお菓子を _____ 。
Haha wa tonari no kata ni o-kashi o _____ .

6. 田中さんは兄にネクタイを _____ 。
Tanaka-san wa ani ni nekutai o _____ .



7. 兄は田中さんからネクタイを _____ 。
Ani wa Tanaka-san kara nekutai o _____ .

II. Match the words in Box A with the words in Box B.

Box A

- i. 教えました ~~arimashita~~ **oshimeshimashita**
- ii. くれました ~~kuremashita~~ **okuremashita**
- iii. 持ちました ~~shimashita~~ **oshimeshimashita**
- iv. 来ました ~~kimashita~~ **irasshaimashita**
- v. 言いました ~~tingoshita~~ **iwaimashita**

III. Select the best choice.

- 1. 先生，どうぞ _____ ください。
Sensei, dōzo _____ **kudasai**.
 a. 召し上がって **meshiagatte**

- b. 頂いて **itadaite**
- c. 食べて **tabete**
- d. 食べに **tabeni**

2. 先生, あの本はもう _____ 。

Sensei, ano hon wa mō _____ .

- a. お読みしましたか **o-yomi shimashita ka**
- b. お読みになりましたか **o-yomi narimashita ka**
- c. お読みになりましたか **o-yomi ni narimashita ka**
- d. お読みいたしましたか **o-yomi itashimashita ka**

3. 私が _____ 。

Watashi ga _____ .

- a. お書きします **o-kaki shimasu**
- b. お書きになります **o-kaki ni narimasu**
- c. お書きなさいます **o-kaki nasaimasu**
- d. お書きにいたします **o-kaki ni itashimasu**

4. 僕の _____ は石田さんの _____
とよく話します。

Boku no _____ **wa** **Ishida-san no**
_____ **to yoku hanashimasu.**

- a. 奥さん **okusan**, ご主人 **go-shujin**
- b. 主人 **shujin**, 奥さん **okusan**
- c. 家内 **kanai**, 奥さん **okusan**
- d. 家内 **kanai**, 主人 **shujin**

5. この手紙を読んで _____ 。

Kono tegami o yonde _____ .

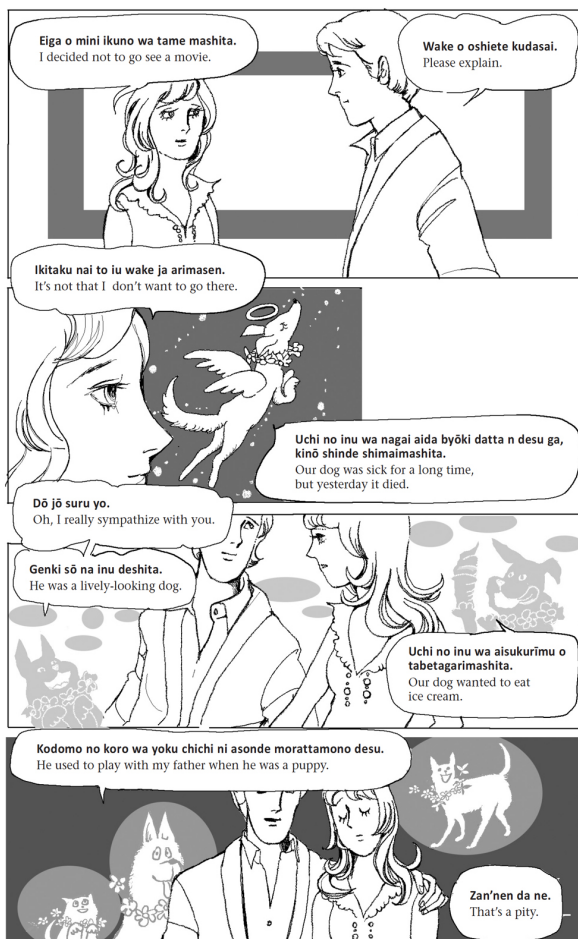
- a. お願いします **onagai shimasu**
- b. いただけませんか **itadakemasen ka**
- c. くださいございます **kudasai gozaimasu**
- d. なさいます **nasaimasu**

Answers:

I 1. あげました **agemashita** 2. くれました **kuremashita** 3. もらいました **moraimashita** 4. 差し上げました **sashiagemashita** 5. 差し上げました **sashiagemashita** 6. くれました **kuremashita** 7. もらいました **moraimashita**

II i-e, ii-b, iii-a, iv-d, v-c

III 1. a 2.c 3. a 4. c 5. b



LESSON 10

What Is Your Take on That?

あれどう思う？ **Are Dō Omou?**

In this lesson you will learn a variety ways of conveying the speaker's attitude and feelings as well as changing the speaker's perspectives.





[cue 10-1]

Basic Sentences

田中さんは来月結婚するそうです。

Tanaka-san wa raigetsu kekkon suru sō desu.

I heard that Mr. Tanaka will get married next month.

雨が降りそうですね。

Ame ga furi sō desu ne.

It looks like (it's going to) rain.

健二さんは陽子さんにつき合っているらしいです。

Kenji-san wa Yōko-san to tsukiatte iru rashii desu.

It seems that Kenji is going out with Yoko.

あの人は日本語が上手で日本人のようです。

Ano hito wa Nihongo ga jōzu de Nihon-jin no yō desu.

That person speaks good Japanese, and is just like a Japanese person.

お酒を飲んだり，カラオケをしたりしました。

O-sake o nondari, karaoke o shitari shimashita.

I did such things as drink and sing karaoke.

テレビを見ながら食べます。

Terebi o mi-nagara tabemasu.

I eat while watching TV.

私には兄弟がありません。

Watashi ni wa kyōdai ga arimasen.

I don't have siblings.

音楽を専攻することになりました。

Ongaku o senkō suru koto ni shimashita.

I decided to major in music.

カメラを壊してしまいました。

Kamera o kowashite shimaimashita.

I broke the camera.

母は怒るかもしれません。

Haha wa okoru ka mo shiremasen.

My mother might get mad.

何んなことが分からないわけがありません。

Konna koto ga wakaranai wake ga arimasen.

There is no reason why he cannot understand such a thing.

男性の友達がいらないことはありません。

Dansei no tomodachi ga inai koto wa arimasen.

It is not that I don't have any male friends.

弟が壊したに違いありません。

Otôto ga kowashita ni chigai arimasen.

My little brother must have broken (it).

何について話すのかしら。

Nani ni tsuite hanasu no kashira.

I wonder what he is going to talk about.

子どもに野菜を食べさせました。

Kodomo ni yasai o tabesasemashita.

I made my child eat vegetables.

弟に先に卒業されました。

Otôto ni saki ni sotsugyō saremashita.

My little brother graduated before I did.

先生に漢字を100回ずつ書かされました。

Sensei ni kanji o hyak-kai zutsu kakasaremashita.

I was made to write kanji characters 100 times each by my teacher.

小さい字が読めません。

Chīsai ji ga yomemasen.

I cannot read small letters.

父はゴルフをしたがっています。

Chichi wa gorufu o shitagatte imasu.

My father wants to play golf.

小さい頃はよく父に叱られたものです。

Chīsai koro wa yoku chichi ni shikareta mono desu.

When I was young, I was often scolded by my father.



Basic Vocabulary

THINGS TO TALK ABOUT

news ニュース nyūsu

噂 噂 wasa

gossip 噂 gossiparuguchi

sports スポーツ supōtsu

music 音楽 ongaku

fashion ション fasshon

graduation 卒業 sodisugyō

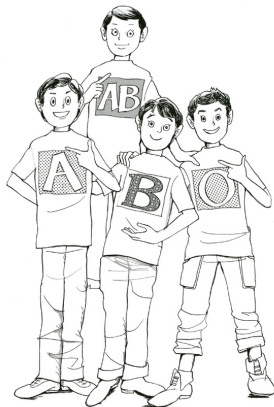
challenges 挑戦 tenshoku

marriage 結婚 kakkon

fortune telling 占算

Blood Types and Personality

Many Japanese believe in the correlation between a person's blood type and his or her personality. Tons of books on blood-type-based fortune-telling have been published during the past several decades. When they meet new people, Japanese often try to guess each other's blood type as they get to know each other, and eventually they will discuss their surmises and their actual blood types: "I thought your blood type was A," "You are a typical B-type person," etc. Here are examples of commonly held views:



Type A: careful, organized, shy

Type B: unique, creative, independent

Type AB: practical, unpredictable, has characteristics of both Type A and Type B

Type O: generous, open-minded, social

VERBS

~~scolds~~ 叱ります **shikaru/shikarimasu**

~~praises~~ ・ほめます **homeru/homemasu**

~~gets angry~~ 怒ります **okoru/okorimasu**

~~hits, spansks~~ たたく **tataku/tatakimasu**

~~breaks something~~ 壊す **kowasu/kowashimasu**

RESOURCES

~~検索~~ **hensaku** search

~~Google~~ **Gūguru**

~~Yahoo~~ **Yafū**

~~Wi-Fi~~ (ワイファイ) **waifai**

CONJUNCTIONS AND ADVERBS

nevertheless, anyway
however tokoroga
by the way tokorode
the fact is, actually

Structure Notes

10.1. Hearsay そうです *sō desu*

When you want to report something you haven't actually witnessed yourself, you usually end the sentence with **sō desu**, which has the meaning 'I hear' or 'I'm given to understand' or 'what I've just said isn't something I myself observed.' The part that goes in front of **sō desu** ends in either the plain imperfect or the plain perfect. If the fact reported were from one's observation or knowledge, there would be no **sō desu** and the sentence would end with a polite form. Here are some examples:

Hear Over There Someone Else

あそこは天気がいいそうです。

Asoko wa tenki ga ii sō desu.

The weather is good over there, I hear.

そうですね。

Sō desu ne.

That's right. (They say it's so).

スミスさんはアメリカへお帰りになるそうです。

Sumisu-san wa Amerika e okaeri ni narimō sō desu.

Mrs. Smith Smith is going to America.

3時に来るといふそうです。

San-ji ni kuru to itta sō desu.

He said he will come at three p.m.

10.2. Bound form -そう(な) -*sō (na)* 'appearance'

There is a form **-sō** added to the infinitive of a verb, the base of

an adjective, or an adjectival noun that makes a derived adjectival noun with the meaning ‘looking as if, having the appearance of.’ The resulting adjectival noun is followed by a form of the copula (**da/na**, etc.) or by the particle **ni**. Here are some examples:

Simulating As If

雨が降が降ります。

~~It rains as if it rains.~~

It rains as if it will rain.

休むことができるようなところなのです。

~~Yasumu koto ga dekisō tokoro desu.~~

It's a place where you look as if you could rest.

このバッグは高いです。

~~Kono baggu wa takai desu.~~

This bag looks expensive.

元気をやる子どもです。

~~Genki o yaru kodomo desu.~~

He's a lively-looking child.

To adjectives **ii** ‘good’ and **nai** ‘not exist,’ add **-sasō** instead of just **-sō**, as in **yo-sasō** ‘looking as if it were good’ and **na-sasō** ‘looking as if it were non-existent.’

Simulating As If

その魚はよいそうです。

~~Sono sakana wa iio desu.~~

That fish looks good if it's good.

渋滞はありそうです。

~~Jūtai wa arisō desu.~~

There is as if traffic jam.

日本人じゃありそうです。

~~Nihon-jin ja arisō desu.~~

He doesn't look as if he is Japanese.

Notice the difference in meaning between expressions with the form **-sō** (appearance) and expressions ending in **sō desu** (hearsay):

雪が降るそうです。

Yuki ga furisōōdesu.

~~They say it is going to snow.~~

お金がなさそうです。

O-kane ga nakatā desu.

~~It was given the difference that he did not have money.~~

10.3. ...らしい ...*rashii*

Rashii is added at the end of a sentence and shows that the fact expressed by the sentence is the speaker's objective, logical, careful, and non-intuitive conjecture based on what he or she heard, saw, or read. The verbs and adjectives that precede **rashii** must be in the plain form, except that the **da** that appears at the end of a copula and at the end of an adjectival noun must be deleted.

大川さんのお宅は古いらしいですね。

Ōkawa-san no otaku wa furui rashii desu ne.

Mr. Okawa's house seems to be old.

田中さんは娘さんの結婚式に出なかったそうです。

Tanaka-san wa musumesan no kekkonshiki ni denakatta sō desu.

Mr. Tanaka seems not to have attended his daughter's wedding.

森さんは部長になりたかったらしいです。

Mori-san wa buchō ni naritakatta rashii desu.

Mr. Mori seems to have wanted to become the division manager.

日本ではフェイスブックよりツイッターの方が人気があるらしいです。

Nihon de wa Feisubukku yori Tsuittā no hō ga ninki ga aru rashii desu.

Twitter seems to be more popular than Facebook in

Japan.

あのホテルのオーナーは日本人らしいですよ。

Ano hoteru no ōnā wa Nihon-jin rashii desu yo.

It seems that the owner of that hotel is Japanese.

あのホテルは静からしいですよ。

Ano hoteru wa shizuka rashii desu yo.

That hotel seems to be quiet.

When **rashii** follows a noun, an additional reading ‘is a typical ideal model of’ arises. For example, the following sentence has two interpretations, which can be clarified by the context:

あの人は日本人らしいです。

Ano hito wa Nihon-jin rashii desu.

That person seems to be Japanese.

or

That person is the very model of a Japanese person.

10.4. Expressions meaning ‘like’

There are several ways to say ‘A is like B, A looks like B, A resembles B, etc.’ Here is a list of some of these expressions:

A wa B no yō da.

A wa B ni tai da.

A wa B ni reiru.

A wa B ni oobu.

A to B wa niteiru.

Here are some example sentences:

陽子さんは天使のようです。

Yōko-san wa tenshi no yō desu.

Yoko is like an angel.

タブレットPCはeリーダーに似ています。

Taburetto PC wa i-ridā ni nite imasu.

Tablet PCs are similar to e-book readers.

陽子さんはお母さんと似ています。

Yōko-san wa okāsan to nite imasu.

Yoko resembles her mother.

この双子の姉妹はあまり似ていません。

Kono futago no shimai wa amari nite imasen.

These twin sisters do not look much alike.

10.5. The alternative -たり／-だり *-tari/-dari*

The alternative is a mood indicated by the endings **-tari** or **-dari**. The alternative forms are made in the same way as the perfect or the conditional; but instead of ending in **-ta (-da)** or **-tara (-dara)**, they end in **-tari (-dari)**. For example:

	Meaning	Imperfect	Perfect	Conditional	Alternative
Vowel Verb	eats	tabe-ru	tabe-ta	tabe-tara	tabe-tari
	looks at	mi-ru	mi-ta	mi-tara	mi-tari
Conso-nant Verb	returns	kaer-u	kaet-ta	kaet-tara	kaet-tari
	wins	kats-u	kat-ta	kat-tara	kat-tari
	buys	ka-u	kat-ta	kat-tara	kat-tari
	lends	kas-u	kashi-ta	kashi-tara	kashi-tari
	writes	kak-u	kai-ta	kai-tara	kai-tari
	swims	oyog-u	oyoi-da	oyoi-dara	oyoi-dari
	reads	yom-u	yon-da	yon-dara	yon-dari
	calls	yob-u	yon-da	yon-dara	yon-dari
	dies	shin-u	shin-da	shin-dara	shin-dari
	goes	ik-u	it-ta (irregular)	it-tara (irregular)	it-tari (irregular)
Irregular Verbs	comes	kuru	kita	kitara	kitari
	does	suru	shita	shitara	shitari
Adjectives	is expensive	taka-i	takakat-ta	takakat-tara	takakat-tari
	is good	i-i, yo-i	yokat-ta	yokat-tara	yokat-tari
	wants to eat	tabeta-i	tabetakat-ta	tabetakat-tara	tabetakat-tari

	Meaning	Imperfect	Perfect	Conditional	Alternative
Adjectives	wants to go	ikita-i	ikitakat-ta	ikitakat-tara	ikitakat-tari
	does not eat	tabena-i	tabenakat-ta	tabenakat-tara	tabenakat-tari
	does not read	yomana-i	yomanakat-ta	yomanakat-tara	yomanakat-tari
Copula	equals	da (na, no)	dat-ta	dat-tara	dat-tari

Some sentences contain one alternative form; others contain several. The most frequent type of sentence using the alternative contains two. The last alternative, or the only one, is always followed by some form of the verb **suru** ‘does’—working as a kind of dummy auxiliary.

The meaning of the alternative is either (1) actions in alternation (now doing this, now doing that), (2) simultaneous actions (doing this and that at the same time), or (3) representative or typical actions (doing things like this; doing things like this and that). If there is only one alternative in the sentence, it is a representative or typical action. Here are some examples:

昨日はネットサーフィンをしたりツイッターをしたりしました。

Kinō wa nettosāfin o shitari Tsuittā o shitari shimashita.

Yesterday I did things like surf the Web and use Twitter.

手紙を書いたり本を読んだりします。

Tegami o kaitari hon o yondari shimasu.

I write letters and read books (in alternation, or typically).

新聞を見たりラジオを聞いたりしていました。

Shinbun o mitari rajio o kiitari shite imashita.

He was looking at the paper and listening to the radio (in alternation, or simultaneously, or typically).

東京へ行くと銀座を散歩したりします。

Tōkyō e iku to Ginza o sanpo shitari shimasu.

When I go to Tokyo, I walk around Ginza (and so on).

この頃はお天気がよかったり悪かったりしますね。

Konogoro wa o-tenki ga yokattari warukattari

shimasu ne.

Lately the weather is good one day, bad the next,
isn't it?

雨が降ったりやんだりします。

Ame ga futtari yandari shimasu.

It rains intermittently (off and on).

田口さんは新聞記者だったり先生だったりしたことがあります。

Taguchi-san wa shinbun-kisha dattari, sensei dattari shita koto ga arimasu.

Mr. Taguchi has been at various times a reporter and a teacher.

ご飯を食べたり食べなかったりすれば病気になりますよ。

Go-han o tabetari tabe nakattari sureba byōki ni narimasu yo.

If you eat irregularly (sometimes eat, sometimes don't eat), you'll get sick.

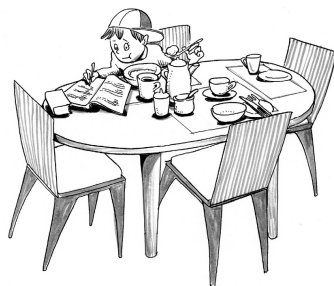
10.6. …ながら ...*nagara*

To describe two simultaneous actions by a single person, you can use the infinitive of a verb + **nagara** 'while ... ing' for the subsidiary action: **Rajio o kiki-nagara hon o yomimashita** 'I read the book while listening to the radio.' If the two simultaneous actions are performed by different people, you have to say it another way: **Watashi ga rajio o kiite iru aida ni tomodachi wa hon o yomimashita** 'While I was listening to the radio, my friend read a book.'

There is also another possible interpretation for expressions with **-nagara**. Just as English 'while' means either 'during the same time as' or 'although,' Japanese-**nagara** (or **-nagara mo**) sometimes means 'though':

朝ごはんを食べながら宿題をします。

Asa go-han o tabe-nagara shukudai o shimasu.
I do my homework while eating my breakfast.



ラジオを聞きながら本を読みました。
Rajio o kiki-nagara, hon o yomimashita.
While I listened to the radio, I also read a book.

本当のことを知っていながら、何も言わなかったんですね。

Hontō no koto o shitte i-nagara, nani mo iwanakatta n desu ne.

Though you knew the truth, you didn't say anything, right?

学生でありながら先生に反論した。

Gakusei de ari-nagara sensei ni hanron shita.

Though only a student, he argued with his teacher.

10.7. ある *aru* with people

The verb **iru** means 'someone (or some animal) stays, someone exists (in a place)' or, after a gerund, 'someone or something is doing something.' The verb **aru** means either 'something exists (in a place)' or 'something or someone exists (as an absolute thing, as a relative, as a role), something or someone is available, we have something or someone.' So, to say 'I have three brothers and sisters,' you can say **Kyōdai ga san-nin arimasu** as well as **Kyōdai ga san-nin imasu**. To say 'My three brothers and sisters are at home,' you say **San-nin no kyōdai ga uchi ni imasu**.

10.8. ...ことにする/...ことになる ...*koto ni suru*... *koto ni naru*

After a modifying clause ending in the plain imperfect form, the expression **koto ni suru** means ‘decides to (do something)’. After a noun, **ni suru** means ‘decides on.’

映画を見に行くことにしました。

Eiga o mi ni iku koto ni shimashita.

We decided to go see a movie.

映画にしました。

Eiga ni shimashita.

We decided on the movies.

The expression **koto ni naru** means ‘it is decided or settled that’; **koto ni natte iru** means ‘it has been decided or settled or arranged that.’ After a noun, **ni naru** means ‘is decided to be...’

英語の教師として日本へ行くことになっています。

Eigo no kyōshi to shite Nihon e iku koto ni natte imasu.

(It’s been decided or arranged that) we are to go to Japan as English teachers.

日本になりました。

Nihon ni narimashita.

It’s been decided that it’s Japan.

今日からここで働くことになりました。

Kyō kara koko de hataraku koto ni narimashita.

It’s been decided that I start working here starting today.

ツイッターでJ-POPの歌手をフォローすることになりました。

Tsuittā de J-POP no kashu o forō suru koto ni shimashita.

We decided to follow J-POP singers on Twitter.

10.9. ...しまう **shimau** and ...おく **oku**

The verb **shimau** means ‘stores, puts away.’ A gerund + **shimau** has the meaning ‘finishes up doing, does completely or thoroughly; does and ends up = ends up doing.’

本を読んでしまいました。

Hon o yonde shimaimashita.

I read the entire book.

お金は全部使ってしまいました。

O-kane wa zenbu tsukatte shimaimashita.

I used up all the money.

携帯の通話時間の上限を超してしまいました。

Keitai no tsūwa jikan no jōgen o koshite shimaimashita.

I used up my minutes for my cell phone.

うちの犬は長い間病気だったんですが、昨日死んでしまいました。

Uchi no inu wa nagai aida byōki datta n desu ga, kinō shinde shimaimashita.

Our dog was sick for a long time, but yesterday it died.

The verb **oku** means ‘puts,’ ‘places,’ or ‘puts aside.’ A gerund + **oku** has the meaning ‘does something and puts it aside; does something in preparation; does something for later on; does something in advance.’ The idea is that the action is done and then put to one side, with the expectation of some consequence or result at a later time rather than immediately.

この本を読んでおきましょう。

Kono hon o yonde okimashō.

I'll get this book read (so we can answer questions when the teacher asks us about it).

来週の芝居へ行きたいから、切符を買っておいてください。

Raishū no shibai e ikitai kara, kippu o katte oite kudasai.

I want to go to the play next week, so please buy tickets (in advance).

兄はPCを一日中つけておきます。

Ani wa PC o ichinichijū tsukete okimasu.

My brother leaves his PC on all day.

Notice the difference in meaning between the gerund + **shimau** and the gerund + **oku**: **shimau** suggests completion and thoroughness; **oku** suggests preparatory action in anticipation of later consequences or benefits.

手紙を書いてしまいました。

Tegami o kaite shimaimashita.

I got the letter (all) written. I finished (writing) the letter.

手紙を書いておきました。

Tegami o kaite okimashita.

I got the letter written (so that it would be done, for some later consequence). I wrote the letter and put it aside. I wrote the letter in advance.

10.10. ...わけ ...*wake*

The noun **wake** means ‘meaning,’ ‘reason,’ ‘explanation,’ ‘case,’ or ‘special circumstances.’ It is often used in explaining a situation.

どういうわけですか。

Dō iu wake desu ka.

What do you mean? What does it mean?

わけを教えてください

Wake o oshiete kudasai.

Please explain the meaning of this.

どういうわけで仕事をやめたんですか。

Dō iu wake de shigoto o yameta n desu ka.

Why (with what reason) did he quit his job?

社長はそんなに忙しいわけではありません。

Shachō wa sonna ni isogashii wake wa arimasen.

There's no reason the president of the firm should be so busy. He can't be so busy.

そういうわけならどうしましょうか。

Sō iu wake nara dō shimashō ka.

If that's the case, what shall we do?

わけが分からない。

Wake ga wakaranai.

I don't know what's what.

そういうわけで行くことができませんでした。

Sō iu wake de iku koto ga dekimasen deshita.

Because of that, I couldn't go.

10.11. Double negatives

In English, we sometimes hear two negative words in a sentence where one would be enough, for example, 'Nobody never does anything' with the same meaning as 'Nobody ever does anything.' In Japanese when two negatives are used, the meaning is always changed. Notice the translations of the following sentences.

靴をはいたままうちへ入る人もないことはありません。

Kutsu o haita mama uchi e hairu hito mo nai koto wa arimasen.

It isn't that there aren't also people who enter the house with their shoes on = Some people also enter the house with their shoes on.

日本語ができないわけじゃありません。

Nihongo ga dekinai wake ja arimasen.

It isn't (the case) that I can't speak Japanese.

結婚したくないというわけじゃありません。

Kekkon shitaku nai to iu wake ja arimasen.

It's not that I don't want to get married.

明日までにこの本を返さなければなりません。

Ashita made ni kono hon o kaesanakereba narimasen.

I have to return this book by tomorrow.

10.12. ...に違いない ...*ni chigai nai*

The noun **chigai** 'discrepancy' or 'error' is made from the infinitive of the verb **chigau** 'is different.' The expression **chigai nai** is based on the construction **chigai wa nai** 'there is no error.' After a noun, an imperfect or perfect verb, or an adjective, the expression **ni chigai nai** means 'without a doubt,' 'no doubt,' 'certainly,' or 'surely.' It is often translated as 'must have done,' 'must be,' etc., but of course this is not the 'must' of obligation (= 'has to').

パスワードはこれに違いありません。

Pasuwādo wa kore ni chigai arimasen.

The password must be this one. I'm sure this is it.

岡本さんが来るに違いありません。

Okamoto-san ga kuru ni chigai arimasen.

Mr. Okamoto will surely come.

私のパソコンはウイルスに感染したに違いありません。

Watashi no pasokon wa uirusu ni kansen shita ni chigai arimasen.

My PC must have been infected by viruses.

私の主人に違いありません。

Watashi no shujin ni chigai arimasen.

That is surely my husband.

仕事が嫌だったに違いありません。

Shigoto ga iya datta ni chigai arimasen.

He certainly disliked his job.

あんないい家は高いに違いありません。

Anna ii ie wa takai ni chigai arimasen.

Such a nice house must be expensive.

10.13. について *ni tsuite* and によって *ni yotte*

The verb **tsuku** has the basic meaning ‘comes in contact with.’
The expression NOUN+ **ni tsuite** mean ‘with respect to,’
‘regarding,’ or ‘about.’

ソーシャルネットワークについてどう思いますか。

Sōsharu nettowāku ni tsuite dō omoimasu ka.

What do you think about social networking?

昨日のクラスでは漢字の起源について話しました。

Kinō no kurasu de wa kanji no kigen ni tsuite hanashimashita.

I talked about the origin of kanji in yesterday’s class.

The whole expression is usually treated as an adverb, modifying the following predicate, but it sometimes occurs also as a noun phrase modifying a noun (and linked to it by the particle **no**). There is no difference in meaning between the following two sentences although they differ in terms of structure:

経済について記事を書きました。

Keizai ni tsuite kiji o kakimashita.

I wrote an article about economics.

経済についての記事を書きました。

Keizai ni tsuite no kiji o kakimashita.

I wrote an article about economics.

The verb **yoru** has the basic meaning ‘leans on, relies on.’
The expressions NOUN + **ni yoru to** and NOUN + **ni yoreba** mean
‘if you rely on... = according to....’

新聞によると雨がふるそうです。

Shinbun ni yoru to ame ga furu sō desu.

According to the paper, it seems it’s going to rain.

The expression NOUN + **ni yotte** means ‘according to, depending on’:

場所によって気候が違います。

Basho ni yotte kikō ga chigaimasu.

The weather varies from place to place.
(Depending on the place, the weather is different.)

人によって意見がちがいます。

Hito ni yotte iken ga chigaimasu.

Opinions differ with people. (Different people have different views.)

10.14. Causative, passive, and causative passive verbs

Most Japanese verbs have corresponding CAUSATIVES, PASSIVES, and CAUSATIVE PASSIVES.

The causative verbs are made, for the most part, by adding the ending **-sase-ru** to vowel stems and the ending **-ase-ru** to consonant stems. Some of the meanings of such a verb are ‘causes someone to do something; makes someone do something; lets someone do something.’ The forms **kosaseru** ‘lets/makes someone come’ (from **kuru** ‘comes’) and **saseru** ‘lets/makes someone do’ (from **suru** ‘does’) are irregular.

The passive verbs are made by adding the ending **-rare-ru** to vowel stems and the ending **-are-ru** to consonant stems. Some of

the meanings are 'is affected by another person's action; undergoes the action; is adversely affected by the action.' Japanese passives can be made both from transitive verbs (those which take a direct object, like **taberu** 'eats') and intransitive verbs (those which do not ordinarily take a direct object, like **shinu** 'dies' and **iru** 'stays'). The forms **korareru** 'has someone come' or 'is affected by someone's coming' and **sareru** 'gets done' or 'is affected by someone's doing' are irregular.

There is also a passive formation made from causatives; this consists of adding the ending **-rare-ru** to the causative stem that ends in **-(s)ase-**, so that the complete ending for the causative passive is somewhat formidable: **-(s)ase-rare-ru**. There is a shortened form of this ending, alongside the longer form, for consonant verbs that do not end in **su**: **-asare-ru** instead of **ase-rare-ru**. This shortened form may be visualized as **-as(e-r)are-ru**. In other words, the last sound of the causative ending and the first sound of the passive ending are dropped. The meaning of the causative passive is something like 'is made to do' or 'has to do.'

Of course, the final **-ru** in these various endings is just the regular ending for the imperfect mood of vowel verbs. These causatives, passives, and causative passives can be inflected for all the usual moods: **kosaseru**, **kosaseta**, **kosaseyō**, **kosasetara**, **kosasetari**, **kosasereba**, **kosasemasu**, etc.; **sareru**, **sareta**, **sareyō**, **saretara**, **saretari**, **sarereba**, **saremasu**, etc.; **tabesaseru**, **tabesasetara**, **tabesasetari**, **tabesasereba**, **tabesasemasu**, etc. Here is a list of some typical verbs together with the causative, passive and causative passive forms. All the forms are imperfect.

		Causative -(s)ase-ru	Passive -(r)are-ru	Passive- Causative Long Form -(s)ase-rare-ru	Passive- Causative Short Form -asare-ru
Vowel Verb	eats taberu	tabe-sase-ru	tabe-rare-ru	tabe-sase-rare-ru	---
	looks at miru	mi-sase-ru	mi-rare-ru	mi-sase-rare-ru	---
Consonant Verb	returns kaeru	kaer-ase-ru	kaer-are-ru	kaer-ase-rare-ru	kaer-asare-ru
	waits matsu	mat-ase-ru	mat-are-ru	mat-ase-rare-ru	mat-asarer-u
	buys kau	kaw-ase-ru	kaw-are-ru	kaw-ase-rare-ru	kaw-asare-ru
	speaks hanasu	hanas-ase-ru	hanas-are-ru	hanas-ase-rare-ru	---
	writes kaku	kak-ase-ru	kak-are-ru	kak-ase-rare-ru	kak-asare-ru
	swims oyogu	oyog-ase-ru	oyog-are-ru	oyog-ase-rare-ru	oyog-asare-ru
	reads yomu	yom-ase-ru	yom-are-ru	yom-ase-rare-ru	yom-asare-ru
	calls yobu	yob-ase-ru	yob-are-ru	yob-ase-rare-ru	yob-asare-ru
	dies shinu	shin-ase-ru	shin-are-ru	shin-ase-rare-ru	shin-asare-ru
Irregular Verb	comes kuru	ko-sase-ru	ko-rare-ru	ko-sase-rare-ru	---
	does suru	sase-ru	sare-ru	sase-rare-ru	---

10.15. Use of the causative

The basic meaning of the causative is ‘someone causes someone else to do something.’ The person who does the causing is indicated by the particle **ga** or **wa**. The person caused to perform the action takes the particle **o** if the verb is intransitive, and the particle **ni** if the verb is transitive. Compare the following:

父は兄を行かせました。

Chichi wa ani o ikasemashita.

My father had my older brother go there.

父は兄に手紙を書かせました。

Chichi wa ani ni tegami o kakasemashita.

My father had my older brother write a letter.

The causative is largely limited to situations in which a person is in a position to order or permit an action on the part

of another person. For an act done as a favor, you use an expression with **morau** or **itadaku**. So, while you might say, ‘My father had my older brother write the letter’ with the causative, you probably wouldn’t say my older brother had my father write the letter’ with the causative, since the social situation would indicate this was a favor. Compare the above sentence with the following:

兄は父に手紙を書いてもらいました。

Ani wa chichi ni tegami o kaite moraimashita.

My brother had my father write a letter.

Here are some additional examples of uses of the causative:

どんなものを子どもに食べさせますか。

Donna mono o kodomo ni tabesasemasu ka.

What kind of things do you feed the children?

友達を待たせることはよくありませんよ。

Tomodachi o mataseru koto wa yoku arimasen yo.

It isn’t good to keep your friends waiting, you know.

毎日3時間バイオリンを練習させます。

Mainichi san-jikan baiorin o renshū sasemasu.

I make him practice violin for three hours every day.

父は兄に会社のウェブサイトを作らせました。

Chichi wa ani ni kaisha no uebusaito o tsukurasemashita.

My father made my brother create a Web site for his company.

10.16. Uses of the passive

If the underlying verb indicates an action that can be done to a person, the meaning of a passive expression is ‘someone has something done to him’ or ‘someone undergoes the action.’ The

person undergoing the action is indicated by the particle **wa** or **ga**, and the person responsible for the action (the agent) is indicated by the particle **ni**.

子どもが母親にたたかれました。

Kodomo ga hahaoya ni tatakaremashita.

A child was hit by his mother.

But if the underlying verb indicates some action that can't be done directly to a person, like 'dies,' 'quits,' and 'comes,' the meaning of the passive expression is 'someone is unfavorably affected by another person's action.'

山田さんはお子さんに死なれました。

Yamada-san wa o-kosan ni shinaremashita.

Mrs. Yamada had her child die (suffered the death of her child).

私は晩ご飯を食べようとしたときに友達に來られました。

Watashi wa ban go-han o tabeyō to shita toki ni tomodachi ni koraremashita.

Just as I was about to eat dinner, I had a friend drop in on me (unexpectedly).

If the underlying verb takes an object, indicated by the particle **o**, this object may be retained in the passive expression.

私はパソコンを盗まれました。

Watashi wa pasokon o nusumaremashita.

I had my PC stolen.

弟にクッキーを全部食べられました。

Otōto ni kukkī o zenbu taberaremashita.

I had my cookies all eaten up by my little brother.

Inanimate items can be used as the subject of a passive sentence:

沢山の国で英語が使われています。

Takusan no kuni de eigo ga tsukawarete imasu.

English is used in many countries.

お酒は米から作られます。

O-sake wa kome kara tsukuraremasu.

Sake is made from rice.

The passive is also used just as an EXALTED FORM with no special passive meaning. (See Lesson 9 for a variety of exalted forms.)

日本にはもう行かれましたか。

Nihon ni wa mō ikaremashita ka.

Has he gone to Japan?

ホテルはもう予約されましたか。

Hoteru wa mō yoyaku saremashita ka.

Have you already reserved a hotel room?

Here are some more examples of passives.

猫に魚を食べられました。

Neko ni sakana o taberaremashita

The cat ate our fish up.

学校へ行く途中で雨に降られました。

Gakkō e iku tochū de ame ni furaremashita.

On the way to school, I got rained on.

勉強しているときに友達に來られて困りました。

Benkyō shite iru toki ni tomodachi ni korarete komarimashita.

I had a friend drop in on me in the middle of my studying, darn it.

電車の中でiPodをとられました。

Densha no naka de iPod o toraremashita

I had my iPod swiped on the train.

先生に呼ばれて叱られました。

Sensei ni yobarete shikararemashita.

I was called and scolded by the teacher.

10.17. Use of the causative passive

Expressions with the causative passive mean things like ‘someone was made to do something by someone else.’ The person made to perform the action is indicated by the particle **wa** or **ga**, the person by whom he is made to perform the action is indicated by the particle **ni**.

私は医者に薬をのませられました。／私は医者に薬をのまされました。

Watakushi wa isha ni kurusi o nomase-raremashita./

Watakushi wa isha ni kurusi o nomasaremashita.

I was ordered to take medicine by the doctor.

(= The doctor had me take medicine.)

先生に漢字を100回ずつ書かせられました。／先生に漢字を100回ずつ書かされました。

Sensei ni kanji o hyak-kai zutsu kakase-raremashita./

Sensei ni kanji o hyak-kai zutsu kakasaremashita.

I was made to write kanji characters 100 times each by my teacher.

日本語のクラスではペアワークやグループワークをさせられます。

Nihongo no kurasu de wa peawāku ya gurūpuwāku o saseraremasu.

In our Japanese class we are made to do pair work and group work.

シンデレラは継母に掃除や洗濯をさせられました。

Shinderera wa mamahaha ni sōji ya sentaku o saseraremashita.

Cinderella was made to do things like clean and do the laundry by her stepmother.



10.18. The potential

Any Japanese verb can be made into a potential verb with the meaning ‘is able to be done.’ For vowel verbs, the potential is always exactly the same as the passive. **Tabe-rare-ru** means either ‘someone gets something eaten on them,’ ‘someone suffers someone else’s eating something’ or ‘something can get eaten = someone can eat something.’ **Ko-rare-ru** means ‘someone has someone else come (to their disadvantage)’ or ‘someone can come.’

私は弟にケーキを食べられた。

Watashi wa otōto ni kēki o taberareta.

My cake was eaten by my brother (and I was upset).

手術の後で食べられないときに、病室で母に弁当を食べられた。

Shujutsu no ato de taberarenai toki ni, byōshitsu de haha ni bentō o taberareta.

When I was not allowed to eat after the surgery, my mother ate her boxed lunch in my hospital room (and I was annoyed by it).

大根の葉は食べられる。

Daikon no ha wa taberareru.

The leaves of daikon are edible.

セールスマンにまたうちに来られた。

Sērusuman ni mata uchi ni korareta.

The salesperson came to my house again (and I was not happy).

あしたは7時までに来られますか。

Ashita wa shichi-ji made ni koraremasu ka.

Can you come here by seven tomorrow?

However, for consonant verbs, the potential form is made by adding **-e-ru** to the stem: **yob-e-ru** ‘can be called,’ **yom-e-ru** ‘can be read,’ **aruk-e-ru** ‘can walk,’ etc. That is, for consonant verbs, their polite forms of the potential differ from their polite forms of the ordinary version only by having the vowel **e** instead of **i** before the endings **-masu**, **-mashita**, et cetera, thus it is very important to pronounce these vowels clearly and distinctly so that **kaemasu** ‘can buy’ will not sound like **kaimasu** ‘will buy,’ for example. The meaning of the potential verbs is ‘something can be done,’ and the something itself takes the particle **ga**:

英語が話せます。

Eigo ga hanasemasu.

English can be spoken. = (He) can speak English.

この病院の中では携帯が使えません。

Kono byōin no naka de wa keitai ga tsukaemasen.

Cell phones cannot be used in this hospital.

You’re already familiar with this process: **Neko ga suki desu** ‘Cats are liked = I like cats.’ The person who can do something is marked by either **wa** or **ga** depending on the emphasis; sometimes, the person can be explicitly marked by **ni**:

私(に)は読めません。

Watashi (ni) wa yomemasen.

I cannot read it.

For the potential of **suru** ‘does,’ the verb **dekiru** ‘is possible’ is used:

勉強できますか。

Benkyō dekimasu ka.

Can you study?

今朝はログインできませんでした。

Kesa wa roguin dekimasen deshita.

I could not log in this morning.

雨が降ったから散歩できませんでした。

Ame ga futta kara sanpo dekimasen deshita.

It rained, so we couldn't take our walk.

The meaning of any potential is about the same as the meaning of the ordinary verb imperfect + **koto ga dekiru**: **Nihongo ga yomemasu ka = Nihongo o yomu koto ga dekimasu ka** 'Can you read Japanese?' Here are additional example sentences:

心配でご飯も食べられません。

Shinpai de go-han mo taberaremasen.

I'm worried about it so much that I cannot even eat meals.

忙しくてメールもチェックできませんでした。

Isogashikute mēru mo chekku dekimasen deshita.

I was so busy I couldn't even check emails.

一人で来られますか。

Hitori de koraremasu ka.

Can you come by yourself?

Instead of **kikeru** and **mirareru** for **kiku** 'hears' and **miru** 'sees,' you often hear the derived verbs **kikoeru** 'is heard, can be heard,' and **mieru** 'is seen, can be seen, appears.'

You will recall that the negative of the potential of **iku** 'goes,' **ikemasen**, is also used with the special meaning 'it's no good, it won't do,' for example, **Nete wa ikemasen** 'You mustn't sleep.' Sometimes it means 'that's too bad,' for example, when someone has told you some ill that has befallen him, you may sympathize

with **Sore wa ikemasen deshita ne** ‘That was too bad, wasn’t it?’

10.19. かもしれない *ka mo shirenai*

The form **shirenai (shiremasen)** is the negative of the potential of **shiru** ‘knows,’ and means ‘cannot be known.’ **Ka mo shirenai** means something like ‘it can’t be known even whether,’ and is added after a predicate in the plain imperfect or perfect or after a noun (with the plain copula **da** dropping before **ka** as usual) with the meaning ‘maybe, perhaps, it may be that.’ Here are some examples of **ka mo shirenai**:

あの人は日本人かもしれません。

Ano hito wa Nihon-jin ka mo shiremasen.

He may be Japanese.

雨が降るかもしれないから傘を持って行きましょ
う。

**Ame ga furu ka mo shirenai kara kasa o motte
ikimashō.**

It may rain, so let’s take an umbrella.

明日は寒いかもしれませんね。

Ashita wa samui ka mo shiremasen ne.

It may be cold tomorrow.

車より地下鉄の方が便利かもしれませんよ。

**Kuruma yori chikatetsu no hō ga benri ka mo
shiremasen yo.**

Subways may be more convenient than cars.

大阪に行ったら松本さんに会えるかもしれませ
ん。

**Ōsaka e ittara Matsumoto-san ni aeru ka mo
shiremasen.**

I may be able to see Mr. Matsumoto if I go to
Osaka.

陽子さんはあまり嬉しくなかったかもしれませ

ん。

Yōko-san wa amari ureshiku nakatta ka mo shiremasen.

Yoko may not have been happy.

10.20. かしら *ka shira*

The expression **ka shira** is added to predicates in the same sort of way as **ka mo shirenai**, but the meaning is a little different: ‘I wonder if.’ This is very similar to the meaning of **ka ne** at the end of a sentence. The difference is that you are really talking to yourself with **ka shira**, whereas with **ka ne**, you’re halfway talking to someone else. Note that **ka shira** is used almost exclusively by women.

今晚雨がふるかしら。

Konban ame ga furu ka shira.

I wonder if it’s going to rain tonight.

窓をしめたかしら。

Mado o shimeta ka shira.

I wonder if I closed the windows.

美味しいかしら。

Oishii ka shira.

I wonder if it is delicious.

そんなにお金がほしいかしら。

Sonna ni o-kane ga hoshii ka shira.

I wonder if they want money that much.

10.21. Desiderative verbs ...たがる ...*tagaru*

You have learned that each verb can underlie a desiderative adjective with the meaning ‘wants to’: **taberu** ‘eats,’ **tabetai** ‘wants to eat’; **iku** ‘goes,’ **ikitai** ‘wants to go.’ There is also, for each verb, a DESIDERATIVE VERB made by adding **-ta-gar-u** to the infinitive. So, alongside the adjective **tabetai** ‘wants to eat,’

we have the verb **tabetagaru** ‘is eager to eat, desires to eat.’ Alongside the adjective **ikitai** ‘wants to go,’ we have the verb **ikitagaru** ‘is eager to go, desires to go.’ (The **-ta-**element is the same in the forms with **-ta-i** and the forms with **-ta-gar-u.**) The desiderative verb is used for third person, and you seldom use them of yourself or for the second person. Notice that the desiderative verbs take direct objects with the particle **o**, although the desiderative adjectives take either direct objects with **o** or emphatic subjects with **ga**.

Here are some examples:

近頃の若者は変な言葉を使いたがります。

Chikagoro no wakamono wa hen na kotoba o tsukaitagarimasu.

Young people nowadays want to use strange words.

陽子さんは英語を習いたがっています。

Yoko-san wa Eigo o naraitagatte imasu.

Yoko is eager to learn English.

うちの犬はアイスクリームを食べたがります。

Uchi no inu wa aisukurīmu o tabetagarimasu.

Our dog wants to eat ice cream.

10.22. ...ものです ...*mono desu*

You have learned that the noun **mono** means ‘a thing that you can touch or feel,’ as contrasted with **koto**, an abstract thing you talk about. It also sometimes means ‘guy, fellow,’ a slightly less polite term than **hito** ‘person.’ There is a special use of **mono desu** in which the noun does not have a concrete meaning but means something like ‘in the nature of things...,’ ‘it’s characteristic that...,’ ‘it happens that...,’ ‘such is life.’ Often the adverb **tokaku** ‘likely, naturally’ (do not confuse with **tonikaku** ‘anyway, nevertheless’) is added somewhere in the sentence.

いけないと言うと子どもは、とにかくやりたがるも

のです。

Ikenai to iu to kodomo wa, tokaku yaritagaru mono desu.

If you say they mustn't (do something), children always want to do it.

年寄りはそのものを食べたがるものです。

Toshiyori wa sonna mono o tabetagaru mono desu.

It's natural for old folks to be eager to eat that sort of thing.

When the expression **mono desu** is preceded by the perfect, the meaning is something like 'used to' (that is, it used to be characteristic for someone to do something).

東京に住んでいた時には、よく銀座へ遊びに行つたものです。

Tōkyō ni sunde ita toki ni wa, yoku Ginza e asobi ni itta mono desu.

When I was living in Tokyo, I often used to go to the Ginza (for amusement).

お金がなくて困っていた時には、よく姉のうへへご飯を食べに行つたものです。

O-kane ga nakute komatte ita toki ni wa, yoku ane no uchi e go-han o tabe ni itta mono desu.

When I was in a fix without any money, I used to often go to my sister's house to eat.

子どもの頃はよく父に遊んでもらつたものです。

Kodomo no koro wa yoku chichi ni asonde moratta mono desu.

I used to play with my father when I was a child.

10.23. The plain imperative

There is a plain imperative form, but you seldom use it except when showing extreme impatience, or when quoting rather impersonal commands. For vowel verbs, **-ro** is added to the

stem. For consonant verbs, **-e** is added to the stem. **Kuru** and **suru** are irregular, and their imperative forms are **koi** and **shiro**, respectively.

Go! **Ike!**
Be careful! **Ki o tsukero!**
Come here! **Mayaku koi!**
Study! **Benkyō shiro!**

The plain NEGATIVE imperative is made by adding the particle **na** ‘do not!’ to the plain imperfect.

Don't come! **Kuru na!**
Don't wail! **Matsu na!**
Don't open! **Akeru na!**
Don't close! **Makeru na!**
Don't give up! **Akirameru na!**

Avoid confusing this with another type of plain command (rather condescending), which consists of the INFINITIVE + **na**, a shortening of **nasai** ‘please do,’ and often followed by the particle **yo**:

Come (よ) 。 **Ki na (yo).**
Wait (よ) 。 **Machi na (yo).**
Open it (よ) 。 **Ake na (yo).**
Do it (よ) 。 **Shi na (yo).**



[cue 10-3]

Conversation



Mrs. Yamamoto (Y) is talking with Mrs. Haraguchi (H) in front of her house.

Y: 原口さんの息子さんは高校の音楽の先生になられたそうですね。

Haraguchi-san no musuko-san wa kōkō no ongaku no sensei ni narareta sō desu ne.

Mrs. Haraguchi, I heard that your son became a music teacher at a high school.

H: ええ。バイオリニストになりたがっていたんですが, 教師になりました。

Ē. Baiorinisuto ni naritagatte ita n desu ga, kyōshi ni narimashita.

Yes. He wanted to be a violinist, but he became a teacher.

Y: でも, 教師の方が楽しいかもしれませんよ。

Demo, kyōshi no hō ga tanoshii ka mo shiremasen yo.

But it may be more fun to be a teacher.

H: そうですね。バイオリニストになっていたら, 大変でしょうからね。

Sō desu ne. Baiorinisuto ni natte itara, taihen deshō kara ne.

Right. It would be very tough if he had become a violinist.

Y: そうですね。どこの高校で働いているんですか。

Sō desu ne. Doko no kōkō de hataraitte iru n desu ka.

Right. Where does he teach?

H: 高木高校で働いています。お宅の息子さんは？

Takagi kōkō de hataraitte imasu. Otaku no musuko-san wa?

He is working at Takagi High School. How about your son?

Y: 去年大学を卒業して、今、銀行に勤めています。

Kyonen daigaku o sotsugyō shite, ima, ginkō ni tsutomete imasu.

He graduated from college last year, and he is working for a bank now.

H: ああ、いいですね。

Ā, ii desu ne.

Oh, that's great.

Y: ええ。でも、毎日お金の計算ばかりさせられて、つまらないって言っていました。転職するかもしれません。

Ē. Demo, mainichi o-kane no keisan bakari saserarete, tsumaranaitte itte imashita. Tenshoku suru ka mo shiremasen.

Right. But he has to do calculations all day long every day, and was saying that he is bored. He might change his job.



Exercises

I. Make each of the following sentences mean 'I hear that...' or 'They say that...' by changing the predicate (underlined>) to the appropriate plain form and adding *sō desu*. Then make each one mean 'It seems that' by adding *rashii desu*.

1. 真弓さんのご主人はイタリア人です。

Mayumi-san no go-shujin wa Itaria-jin desu.

2. 昨日東京で地震がありました。

Kinō Tōkyō de jishin ga arimashita.

3. 川村さんは大きい家に住んでいます。

Kawamura-san wa ōkii ie ni sunde imasu.

4. 川村さんは子どもがありません。

Kawamura-san wa kodomo ga arimasen.

5. 来月ここにレストランができます。

Raigetsu koko ni resutoran ga dekimasu.

II. Look at the illustrations and complete the sentences.



1



2



3

1. 猫は魚を _____ います。

Neko wa sakana o _____ imasu.

2. 女の子は人形を _____ います。

Onna no ko wa ningyō o _____ imasu.

3. 父はゴルフを _____ います。

Chichi wa gorufu o _____ imasu.

III. Fill in the blanks appropriately, but creatively.

1. 私は _____ ながら勉強します。

**Watashi wa _____ nagara
benkyō shimasu.**

2. 昨日は食べたり， _____ しました。

**Kinō wa tabetari, _____
shimashita.**

3. 来年 _____ ことにしました。

Rainen _____ koto ni shimashita.

4. #x4ECA;日から _____ ことになりました。

Kyō kara _____ kotoni narimashita.

5. 先生のパソコンを _____ しました。

**Sensei no pasokon o _____
shimaimashita.**

6. ビールを _____ おきますね。

Bīru o _____ okimasu ne.

7. 雨が _____ かもしれません。

**Ame ga _____ ka mo
shiremasen.**

8. 小さい時はよく川で _____ も
のです。

**Chīsai toki wa yoku kawa de
_____ mono desu.**

9. カフェテリアのメニューは日によって
_____ ます。

Kafeteria no menyū wa hi ni yotte

_____ masu.

10. スミスさんは日本語が

_____ ません。

Sumisu-san wa Nihongo ga

_____ masen.

IV. Pick the most appropriate item in the parentheses.

1. 弟は先生に (a. しかったです, b. しかったです, c. ほめました)。

Otōto wa sensei ni (a. shikarimashita, b. shikarare mashita, c. homemashita).

2. 忙しいときに友達に (a. 来ました, b. 行きました, c. 来られました)。

Isogashii toki ni tomodachi ni (a. kimashita, b. ikimashita, c. korare mashita).

3. 母は私に野菜を (a. 食べられました, b. 食べました, c. 食べさせました)。

Haha wa watashi ni yasai o (a. taberare mashita, b. tabemashita, c. tabesasemashita).

4. 妹は母に部屋を掃除 (a. しました, b. させました, c. させられました)。

Imōto wa haha ni heya o sōji (a. shimashita, b. sasemashita, c. saserare mashita).

5. 私は弟に先に卒業 (a. しました, b. されました, c. させられました)。

Watashi wa otōto ni saki ni sotsugyō (a. shimashita, b. sare mashita, c. sasare mashita).

Answers:

I 1. イタリア人だそうです。 **Itaria-jin da sō desu;** イタリア人ら

しいです。 **Itaria-jin rashii desu** 2. あったそうです **atta sō desu**;
あつたらしいです **atta rashii desu** 3. 住んでいるそうです **sunde**
iru sō desu; 住んでいるらしいです **sunde iru rashii desu** 4. ない
そうです **nai sō desu**; ないらしいです **nai rashii desu** 5. できるそ
うです **dekiru sō desu**; できるらしいです **dekiru rashii desu**

II 1. 食べたがって **tabetagatte** or ほしがって **hoshigatte** 2. 買った
がって **kaitagatte** or ほしがって **hoshigatte** 3. したがって
shitagatte

IV 1. b 2. c 3. c 4. c 5. b

APPENDIX I

Other Styles of Speech

1. The impersonal style

In lectures, radio announcements, and the like, Japanese often use the impersonal style, which is also encountered in books and articles. Here are the principal ways in which this style differs from the usual polite style of speech:

- i. Polite forms are not used. Instead, the plain forms are used even at the end of sentences. Sometimes, however, a Japanese person will end his explanatory sentences with **...no de arimasu** instead of **...no de aru** ‘it is a fact that...’ Here are some examples:

Personal	Impersonal
<p>1990年10月1日誕生。</p> <p>東京都出身。</p>	<p>1990年10月1日誕生。</p> <p>東京都出身。</p>

- ii. Colloquial words, lively particles like **yo** and **ne**, and contractions like **ja** for **de wa** and **n** for **no** are avoided.
- iii. The copula **da** is replaced by the phrase **de aru** or **de arimasu**. The phrase is inflected just like **aru**:

~~dodofrasu]~~
~~dodofritashita~~
~~dodofimeho~~
~~dodofritashite~~
~~dofaride~~
~~dofarishanai~~
~~dodofritashitara~~

~~deletethis~~ deletethis

Here are some examples:

~~Minimal~~ Minimal

Chūgoku wa Nihon no tonari desu.

~~China is Japan's neighbor.~~

~~Shō wa jishin deshite.~~

Nedan wa agatta no desu.

~~Neer have been.~~

iv. Instead of a gerund, an infinitive is often used at the end of a clause meaning ‘does and, did and’ or ‘is and, was and.’ This is just a stylistic variant of the use of the gerund.

Japan is an Asian country, and England is a European country.

Nihon wa Ajia no kuni de, Ijirisu wa Yōroppa no kuni desu.

Nihon wa Ajia no kuni de ari, Ijirisu wa Yōroppa no ku ni de aru.

The older son became a doctor, and the younger a teacher.

Chōnan wa isha ni natte, jinan wa kyōshi ni narimashita.

Chōnan wa isha ni nari, jinan wa kyōshi ni natta (no de aru).

They have no money and can't buy food.

O-kane ga nakute, tabemono o kau koto ga dekimasen.

O-kane ga naku tabemono o kau koto ga dekinai.

v. Nouns are sometimes strung together in a series without a connecting particle (we would expect **to** or **ya** in the polite style). There is often, but not always, a pause after each item except the last, which is usually followed by the appropriate particle to link the entire phrase up with the rest of the sentence.

Kyoto, Osaka, and Kobe are all in Kansai.

Kyōto ya Ōsaka ya Kōbe wa minna Kansai desu.
Kyōto, Ōsaka, Kōbe wa mina Kansai de aru.

2. The plain style

The most down-to-earth way of talking in Japanese is that of the plain style (also called the familiar style, the intimate style, the ordinary style). This sort of speech is used among workers, students, club members, and others in a situation where a certain amount of camaraderie is inherent. It is also often used within the family, with truly intimate friends, and in certain set phrases (like proverbs), which are inserted into otherwise polite-style speech. The foreigner seldom has occasion to use much of this style himself, but he hears a good deal of it around him. Here are some of the characteristics of this style of speech:

i. Difference between women's speech and men's speech.

In the polite style, there is very little difference between the way women talk and the way men talk. Women will sometimes choose a more elegant expression, are expected to use the honorific style more than men, and attach the honorific prefix **o-** to nouns more than men do.

Women seem to leave more of their sentences dangling with non-finite verbal expressions than men do, although sentence fragments are widespread in the plain style for both sexes. Japanese often turn a finite verb expression into a noun expression with the noun **no** or **koto** 'fact,' which is frequently followed by the particle **yo**, or just ends the sentence itself: **Iku no yo** 'I'm going,' **Kore na no yo** 'It's this one,' **Tadaima kita no?** 'Did you just get here?'

Women often use **atashi** for **watashi** or **watakushi** 'I' in plain or sometimes in polite speech, and men often substitute **boku** for it. The explicit plural of **boku** is **bokura**. Men also use **kimi** (explicit plural **kimitachi** or **kimira**) for **anata** 'you.' There are other impolite pronouns such as **ore**, which are considered vulgar; and the condescending word **omae** 'you' is rather insulting.

ii. Use of particles

The particles **wa**, **ga**, and **o** are freely dropped. The question particle **ka** is often dropped. The meaning is carried by the context:

Tabako aru (ka)? = Tabako ga aru ka?

Do you have any cigarettes?

Doko iku? = Doko e iku ka?

Where are you going?

In the speech of men, the question particle **ka** is often replaced by **ka ne** (contraction **kai**) or **da ne** (contraction **dai**). If the sentence contains an interrogative word, **da ne (dai)** is more likely to occur.

What is it?

Nan dai? = Nan desu ka?

Is it interesting?

Omoshiroi kai? = Omoshiroi desu ka?

The plain copula **da** usually drops before **ka**:

Is it your friend?

Tomodachi kai? or Tomo dachi ka? = Tomodachi desu ka?

The final intensive particle **yo** occurs more commonly in the plain-style for both men and women. Women often end a plain-style sentence with **wa** (or **wa yo!**); you will occasionally hear men use final **wa**, but only after a polite-style sentence. Men sometimes use final **zo!** or **ze!** to be forceful. Both men and (especially) women freely punctuate their relaxed speech with the particle **ne!** ('you see, you know, I mean'). In Tokyo, the more vigorous **sa!** ('I tell you, you see, mind you!') is often used instead.

iii. Use of contractions

Contractions occur in all styles of speech, but they are more

common in the plain style. Some contractions are peculiar to individual words—like the women's form **atashi** for **watashi** and **anta** for **anata**. Others are more widespread shortenings or modifications of certain sound sequences.

The topic particle **wa** is often shortened to just **a**. We find **kuruma-a** alongside **kuruma wa** 'as for the car,' and **kinō-a** alongside **kinō wa** 'as for yesterday.' A front vowel—**i** or **e**—at the end of a word preceding **wa** may be replaced by **y**: **kory-a** for **kore wa**, **aky-a** for **aki wa**. Or it may be replaced by nothing: **kor-a** for **kore wa**, **o-kashi-a** for **o-kashi wa**. The shortened form of **wa**, **a**, is then sometimes lengthened before a pause to **ā**: **koryā** or **korā** = **kore wa**.

This explains the contraction **ja** (or **jā**) from **de wa**. The sequence **d-y** does not occur in modern Japanese, so **j** is substituted for it. A gerund ending in **-de** followed by the particle **wa** becomes **-ja** in the same way: **Kono mizu o nonja ikenai yo** = **Kono mizu o nonde wa ikenai yo** 'Don't drink this water.' This contraction is paralleled by the contraction of **-cha** (or **-chā**) for **-te wa** (**ch** since the sequence **t-y** does not occur in modern Japanese): **Soko e itcha ikenai yo** = **Soko e itte wa ikenai yo** 'You mustn't go there.' **Mainichi sakana o tabenakucha ikenai** = **Mainichi sakana o tabenakute wa ikenai** 'Every day we have to eat fish.' **Hanashicha dame da** = **Hanashite wa dame da** 'It's no good to talk.'

The provisional endings **-(r)eba** and **-kereba** are often contracted to **-(r)ya** (or **-(r)yā**) and **-kerya**: **Kono kusuri nomanakerya naran** = **Kono kusuri o nomanakereba naranai** 'I have to take this medicine.' **Kore taberya byōki ni naru yo** = **Kore o tabereba byōki ni naru yo** 'If you eat this, you'll get sick.'

A gerund + the verb **shimau** 'finishes, does completely' is contracted in the following way: **-te shimau** becomes **-chimau** or **-chau**; **-de shimau** becomes **-jimau** or **-jau**. **Shinjimatta** or **Shinjatta** = **Shinde shimatta** 'He died.' **Tabechimatta** or **Tabechatta** = **Tabete shimatta** 'He ate it all up.'

The initial **i** of the verb **iru** 'stays, is ... ing' often drops after a gerund: **Nani shiteru?** = **Nani o shite iru ka?** 'What are you

doing?’ The final **e** of the gerund form is often dropped before the verb **oku** ‘puts away, does for later’: **Koko ni oi-toita enpitsu wa doko e itta? = Koko ni oite oita enpitsu wa doko e itta ka?** ‘Where did the pencil I put here go?’ **Kippu katt-oita = Kippu o katte oita** ‘I bought the tickets (in advance).’

The particle **keredomo** is often shortened to **keredo** or **kedo**. Shortenings of **mono** to **mon** and of **no** to just **n** have already been noted. The use of these, like the use of **ja** for **de wa**, is common in polite speech, too.

The plain negative ending **-(a)nai** is often contracted to **-(a)n**: **Wakaran desu ne = Wakaranai desu ne** ‘I don’t know, you see.’ **Wakaran yo = Wakaranai yo** ‘I don’t know.’ (The polite negative ending **-masen** also ends in **-n**, as if it were from a form **-masena-i**.)

The word **tte** is said to be a contraction of **to itte** ‘saying thus,’ but it is perhaps best treated as just another particle. The word has two uses: one is the same as the quoting particle **to** (or **to itte**), the other is the same as the topic particle **wa**. The gerund and conditional forms of the copula, **de** and **nara**, are also often used with about the same meaning as **wa** and **tte**—singling out a topic for consideration:

This movie’ll be OK.

Kono eiga nara, ii desu.

Kono eiga de, ii desu.

Kono eiga wa, ii desu.

Kono eiga tte, ii desu.

He said goodbye and left.

Sayōnara tte, itchatta = Sayōnara to itte, itte shimatta.

In addition to **tte**, some speakers use **ttara** and **tcha**—from **to ittara**, **to itte wa**—in a similar fashion, as a sort of lively substitute for the drab particle **wa**.

In addition to these and other more-or-less standardized contractions, some speakers tend to underarticulate many of their sounds, particularly certain consonants. The expression **Sō**

desu ne ‘Let me see now’ frequently sounds as if the **d** were completely dropped, and the **e** is also difficult to distinguish: **Sō-s-ne**.

iv. Choice of forms

In the polite style, plain forms of verbs, adjectives and the copula are usual in all positions except at the end of the sentence, and sometimes in the middle before loosely connective particles like **ga** and **keredomo**. Occasionally, polite forms are used within the sentence to give an extra-polite flavor. In plain speech, the plain forms are usual in all positions. The plain copula is often omitted, especially in questions.

v. The plain imperative

In the polite style, you usually make commands in a roundabout way. If a genuine imperative form is used, it is from one of the exalted verbs: **nasai** from **nasaru**, **kudasai** or **kudasaimase** from **kudasaru**. In plain speech, too, oblique commands are common: **Shinbun katte kite kurenai ka** ‘Won’t you go buy me a newspaper, please?’ Often, you use the simple gerund: **Chotto matte (yo)!** ‘Wait a minute!’

In addition, there is a plain imperative form, but you seldom use it except when showing extreme impatience, or when quoting rather impersonal commands. The imperative forms are often followed by the particle **yo!**, as in **Ike yo!** ‘Go!’

3. The modern literary style

The modern literary style, or **bungo**, is seldom heard except in the form of set expressions quoted, as it were, from written sources. It is not even often used in contemporary writing, but many things written a generation ago were in this style. The grammar of the literary style is different from that of colloquial Japanese in many ways, and its structure should be studied separately. If you are reading something that contains literary passages, the quickest way to understand the material is to get some Japanese to ‘translate’ the passages into colloquial Japanese.

APPENDIX II

Accent Patterns

The Japanese accent consists of pitch patterns found in words or phrases. In the following discussion, the syllable marked with an acute accent ´ is the LAST SYLLABLE BEFORE A FALL IN PITCH. Japanese words may be divided into TONIC and ATONIC. A tonic word is one that has a basic accent, although this accent may disappear in certain contexts. An atonic word is one with no basic accent, although it may acquire an accent in certain contexts.

An accent may occur on any syllable of a word, from first to last. But within any given word, or any accent phrase, only one accent occurs. When two or more tonic words are said as one accent phrase, the first usually retains its accent, and the following words lose their accents. In Tokyo speech, accent phrases are often quite long, so that many words seem to have lost their accent when you hear them in positions other than near the beginning of a sentence.

Many 4-syllable nouns are atonic (e.g. **yōfuku** [yo-o-fu-ku] ‘Western-style clothes’ and **tēburu** [te-e-bu-ru] ‘table’). A goodly number of 3-syllable nouns are also atonic (e.g. **denwa** [de-n-wa] ‘telephone’ and **jishin** ‘earthquake’).

Most nouns of 1, 2, or 3 syllables are unpredictably atonic or tonic, with the accent on any syllable. There are a number of tonic 4-syllable nouns. For nouns of more than 4-syllables, the vast majority are not only tonic but have a THEMATIC accent—one that can be predicted. The rule for the thematic accent is: on the 3rd from the last syllable, unless this is the 2nd vowel in a vowel sequence or is a syllabic consonant—in which cases, on

the 4th from the last. Following this rule, we find the following to be examples of thematic accent: **hóteru** ‘hotel,’ **tatémono** ‘building,’ **óngaku** ‘music,’ **chōkyori-dénwa** ‘long-distance telephone (call),’ **Nippon-Bōeki-Kabushiki-Gáisha** ‘The Japan Trade Company, Inc.’

Just as some Americans say “AUtomobile” and others say “automoBILE,” or “ICE cream” and “ice CREAM,” there are words that will have one accent pattern for some speakers of Standard Japanese and another pattern for other speakers. For ‘preacher,’ some speakers say **bokushi**, others say **bókushi**. For the masculine ‘I, me,’ older speakers say **bóku**, younger speakers say **boku**.

APPENDIX III

Verb Forms (Selected)

		Stem	Infinitive	Imperfect	Negative	Perfect	Gerund	Tentative	Imperative	Provisional	Causative	Passive
Vowel Verb	eats	tabe	tabe	taberu	tabenai	tabeta	tabete	tabeyō	tabero	tabereba	tabesaseru	taberareru
	looks at	mi	mi	miru	minai	mita	mite	miyō	miro	mireba	misaseru	mirareru
Consonant Verb	trims	kar	kari	karu	karanai	katta	katte	karō	kare	kareba	karaseru	karareru
	wins	kat	kachi	katsu	katanai	katta	katte	katō	kate	kateba	kataseru	katareru
	buys	kaw	kai	kau	kawanai	katta	katte	kaō	kae	kaeba	kawaseru	kawareru
	lends	kas	kashi	kasu	ksanai	kashita	kashite	kasō	kase	kaseba	kasaseru	kasareru
	writes	kak	kaki	kaku	kakanai	kaita	kaite	kakō	kake	kakeba	kakaseru	kakareru
	smells	kag	kagi	kagu	kaganai	kaida	kaide	kagō	kage	kageba	kagaseru	kagareru
	reads	yom	yomi	yomu	yomanai	yonda	yonde	yomō	yome	yomeba	yomaseru	yomareru
	calls	yob	yobi	yobu	yobanai	yonda	yonde	yobō	yobe	yobeba	yobaseru	yobareru
	dies	shin	shini	shinu	shinanai	shinda	shinde	shinō	shine	shineba	shinaseru	shinareru
Irregular Verb	comes	--	ki	kuru	konai	kita	kite	koyō	koi	kureba	kosaseru	korareru
	does	--	shi	suru	shinai	shita	shite	shiyō	shiro	sureba	saseru	sareru

* The above are all plain forms when relevant.

Dictionary

Japanese–English

abura 油 oil

aburu あぶる to roast, to grill

achiragawa あちら側 over there

ago あご chin, jaw

agohige あごひげ beard

ahiru アヒル duck

ai 愛 love

aijō 愛情 affection

aimai na あいまいな vague

airon o kakeru アイロンをかける(服の) to iron (clothing)

aisatsu 挨拶 greetings

aisatsu o suru 挨拶をする to greet

aisukurīmu アイスクリーム ice cream

ai suru 愛する to love

aji 味 taste

ajia アジア Asia

ajike no nai 味気のない dreary

ajimi o suru 味見をする to taste (salty, spicy)

akachan 赤ちゃん baby

akai 赤い red

akari 明かり light (noun)

akarui 明るい bright

akemashite omedetō 明けましておめでとう Happy New Year!

akeru 開ける to open

aki 秋 autumn, fall (season)

akichi 空き地 field, empty space

akiraka ni suru 明らかにする to reveal (make known)

akubi suru あくびする to yawn
akushū 悪臭 odor, bad smell
akushū o hanatsu 悪臭を放つ to stink
amai 甘い sweet
amari ni~sugiru あまりに～過ぎる too, excessively
amazuppai 甘酸っぱい sweet and sour
ame 飴 candy, sweets
ame 雨 rain
ame ga furu 雨が降る to rain
Amerika アメリカ America
Amerika gasshūkoku アメリカ合衆国 United States
Amerika(-jin) no アメリカ(人)の American
ami 網 net
ana 穴 hole
anata あなた you
ani 兄 older brother
anka na 安価な inexpensive
an'naijo 案内所 information booth
an'nainin 案内人 guide, lead
an'nai suru 案内する to guide someone somewhere
anzen na 安全な safe, secure
aoi 青い blue
aoyasai 青野菜 greens (vegetables)
apāto アパート apartment
araarashii 荒々しい fierce
araiotosu 洗い落とす to scrub
arakajime あらかじめ beforehand, earlier
arappoi 荒っぽい rough
arashi 嵐 storm
arau 洗う to wash
arawareru 現れる to appear, to become visible
arawasu 現す to reveal (make visible)
are あれ that
arera あれら those

arigatō ありがとう thank you
arigatō to iu ありがとうと言う to say thank you
aruku 歩く to walk
asa 朝 morning
asai 浅い shallow
asatte 明後日 day after tomorrow
ase o kaku 汗をかく to sweat, to perspire
ashi 足 foot, 脚 leg
ashidori 足取り step
asobu 遊ぶ to play
asu 明日 tomorrow
ataeru 与える to give
atama 頭 head
atarashii 新しい new
atatakai 暖かい warm
atatameru 温める to heat
atsui 厚い thick (of things)
atsui 熱い hot (temperature)
atsukau 扱う to treat
atsumeru 集める to assemble, to gather
atsuryoku 圧力 pressure
au 会う to meet
awaseru 合わせる to join, to go along
ayamaru 謝る to apologize, to say sorry
ayamatta 誤った wrong (false)
aza あざ bruise
azukeru 預ける to deposit (leave behind with someone)
bā バー bar (serving drinks)
baffarō バッファロー buffalo (water buffalo)
bāgen バーゲン sale (reduced prices)
bai 倍 times (multiplying)
baiten 売店 stall (of vendor)
baketsu バケツ bucket
bakkin 罰金 fine (punishment)

banana バナナ banana
bangumi 番組 T.V. show
bankai 挽回 recovery
barabara ni suru ばらばらにする to break apart
basha 馬車 cart (horsecart)
basho 場所 place
basu バス bus
basukettobōru バスケットボール basketball
basurōbu バスローブ bathrobe
basutei バス停 bus station
batsu no warui ばつの悪い embarrassed, embarrassing
batā バター butter
beddo ベッド bed
bengoshi 弁護士 lawyer
benkyōzukue 勉強机 desk
benri na 便利な convenient
beruto ベルト belt
besuto ベスト vest
besuto o tsukusu ベストを尽くす to do one's best
betonamu ベトナム Vietnam
betsu no 別の another (different)
bīchi ビーチ beach
bideo dekki ビデオデッキ VCR
bideo kasetto ビデオカセット video cassette
bideo rekōdā ビデオレコーダー video recorder
bikō 鼻腔 nostril
bin 瓶 bottle
binsoku ni 敏速に quickly
bīru ビール beer
Biruma ビルマ Burma
Biruma(-jin) no ビルマ(人)の Burmese
bisuketto ビスケット biscuit
biza ビザ visa
bō 棒 stick, pole

bōeki 貿易 trade, exchange
bōgai 妨害 disturbance
bōgyo suru 防御する to defend
bon 盆 tray
bōru ボール ball
bōrugami ボール紙 cardboard
bōrupen ボールペン ballpoint pen
bōshi 帽子 hat
bōto ボート boat
bu 部 department
bubunteki ni 部分的に partly
budō 葡萄 grape
buhin 部品 part (of machine)
bujoku 侮辱 insult
bujoku suru 侮辱する to insult
buki 武器 arms, weapon
bukkyō 仏教 Buddhism
bukkyōto 仏教徒 Buddhist
bun 文 sentence
bunbōgu 文房具 stationery
bungaku 文学 literature
bunka 文化 culture
bunkatsu 分割 division, split up
bunrui 分類 categorization
buntsū suru 文通する to correspond (write letters)
burajā ブラジャー bra
burashi ブラシ brush
burausu ブラウス blouse
burei 無礼 impolite
burēki ブレーキ brake
burēki o kakeru ブレーキをかける to brake
burīfu ブリーフ(下着) briefs (underwear)
burīfukēsu ブリーフケース briefcase
burōdobando ブロードバンド broadband

burogu ブログ blog
burokkorī ブロッコリー broccoli
buta 豚 pig
butaniku 豚肉 pork
buttai 物体 object, thing
buzoku 部族 tribe
byō 秒 second
byōdō 平等 equality
byōin 病院 hospital
byōki 病気 disease, illness
byōki no 病気の ill, sick
byōsha suru 描写する to describe
cha 茶 tea
chairoi 茶色い brown
chakuriku suru 着陸する(飛行機) to land (plane)
chatto チャット chatting, chat
chawan 茶碗 cup
chekku チェック checked pattern
chesu チェス chess
chi 血 blood
chichi 父 father
chiiki 地域 area, region
chijoku 恥辱 shame, disgrace
chikaku de 近くで around, nearby
chikara 力 force, power, strength
chikarazuyoi 力強い powerful
chikazuku 近づく to approach
chikyū 地球 Earth
chīmu チーム team
chingashi suru 賃貸しする to rent out
chingin 賃金 wages
chippu チップ tip (gratuity)
chirakasu 散らかす to make a mess
chiryō 治療(医療) cure (medical)

chiryō suru 治療する to treat (medically)
chīsai 小さい little, small
chisei 知性 intelligence
chishiki 知識 knowledge
chishiki ga aru 知識がある to have knowledge of
chitsu 膣 vagina
chizu 地図 map
chīzu チーズ cheese
chokumen suru 直面する to face
chōbo 帳簿 account book
chōchō 蝶々 butterfly
chōhōkei 長方形 rectangle
chōkakushōgai no 聴覚障害の deaf
chokki チョッキ vest
chōkoku 彫刻 carving, sculpture
chōkoku suru 彫刻する to sculpt
chokorēto チョコレート chocolate
chōri sareta 調理された cooked
chōsa suru 調査する to examine
chōsei suru 調整する to organize, to arrange
chōsen 挑戦 challenge
chōshoku 朝食 breakfast, morning meal
chōshoku o toru 朝食をとる to eat breakfast
chōwa no toreta 調和のとれた harmonious
Chūgoku 中国 China
chūi 注意 attention, warning
chūi o harau 注意を払う to pay attention
chūibukai 注意深い cautious
chūmoku 注目 notice
chūmon 注文 order (placed for food, goods)
chūmon suru 注文する to order (something)
chūō 中央 middle, center
chūsha 注射 injection
chūsha suru 注射する to inject

chūsha suru 駐車する to park (car)
chūshin 中心 center, middle
chūshin no 中心の central
chūshoku 昼食 lunch, midday meal
chūshoku o toru 昼食をとる to eat lunch
daenkei no 楕円形の oval (shape)
dageki 打撃 hit, strike
daiben 大便 feces
daibubun wa 大部分は mostly
daidokoro 台所 kitchen
daigaku 大学 university
daimei 題名(本、映画) title (of book, film)
daisan no 第三の third
daitai だいたい more or less
daitōryō 大統領 president
daiyamondo ダイヤモンド diamond
dakara だから so, because of that
~**dake de naku~mo mata** ~だけでなく~もまた not only ... but
also
damasu だます to cheat, to deceive
dame だめ don't!, no good
danbōru bako 段ボール箱 cardboard box
dango 団子 dumpling
dankoto shita 断固とした determined, stubborn, firm (definite)
dansei 男性 male
dare だれ who
dareka だれか anybody, anyone, somebody, someone
daremo~nai だれも~ない nobody
dāsu ダース dozen
datō na 妥当な adequate
~**de** ~で in, at
debittokādo デビットカード debit card
detchiageru でっち上げる to make up, invent
deguchi 出口 exit, way out

dekibae できばえ performance
dekigoto 出来事 event, happening, incident
dekiru できる can, be able to
~de mo nai ~でもない nor, neither
dengon 伝言 message
denki 電気 electricity, light
denki-kiki 電気機器 appliance, electronic goods
denki no 電気の electric
densetsu no 伝説の legend
densha 電車 train
(denshi) mēru (電子)メール email (system, message)
(denshi) mēru adoresu (電子)メールアドレス email address
(denshi) mēru o okuru (電子)メールを送る to email
denshi no 電子の electronic
denshi shoseki 電子書籍 digital book, e-book, electronic book
dentō 伝統 tradition
dentōteki na 伝統的な traditional
denwa 電話 telephone
denwa ni deru 電話にでる to answer the phone
denwa o kakeru 電話をかける to dial (telephone)
denwa o suru 電話をする to call on the telephone
denwabangō 電話番号 telephone number
denwa no koki 電話の子機 telephone extension
denwa suru 電話する to ring (on the telephone)
depparu 出っ張る to stick out
depāto デパート department store
deru 出る to go out, to exit
~deshō ~でしょう probably
desuku デスク desk
~dewa nai ~ではない no, not
dezāto デザート sweets, dessert
dībuidī ディーバイディー DVD
dō 銅 bronze, copper
dōbutsu 動物 animal

dōbutsuen 動物園 zoo

dochiraka (ippō) no どちらか（一方）の either

dodai 土台 basis

dōgu 道具 tool, utensil, instrument

dōhan suru 同伴する to accompany

dōi 同意 agreement

dōi suru 同意する to agree

dōitashimashite どういたしまして don't mention it! you're welcome!

dōitsu no 同一の identical

dōji ni 同時に at the same time

dojō 土壌 earth, soil

doko どこ where

doko e どこへ to where

dokodemo どこでも everywhere, anywhere

dokoka どこか somewhere

doko ni mo~nai どこにも～ない nowhere

doku 毒 poison

dokuritsu shita 独立した free, independent

dokusei no 毒性の poisonous

dokushin no 独身の single (not married)

dokutoku no 独特の characteristic

dōkyō 道教 Taoism

domein mei (nēmu) ドメイン名(ネーム) domain name

donburi どんぶり bowl

donna どんな what kind of

dono yō ni どのように how

don'yorī shita どんよりした(天気) dull (weather)

dore どれ which

doresu ドレス dress, frock

dorobō 泥棒 thief

doryoku 努力 effort

doryoku suru 努力する to make an effort, to try

dote 土手 bank (of river)

dōri ni kanatteiru 道理にかなっている reasonable
dōryō 同僚 co-worker, colleague
dōyara~rashii どうやら~らしい apparently
dōyō ni 同様に alike
dōzo どうぞ please (go ahead)
doyōbi 土曜日 Saturday
~e ~へ to, toward
~e mukau ~へ向かう to head for, toward
~e yōkoso ~へようこそ welcome to
e 絵 picture
eakon エアコン air conditioning
ebi 海老 shrimp, prawn
eda 枝 branch
eien ni 永遠に forever
eiga 映画 film, movie
eigakan 映画館 cinema, movie house
Eikoku 英国 United Kingdom
Eikoku(-jin) no 英国（人）の British
eikyō 影響 effect, influence
eikyō o ataeru 影響を与える to affect, to influence
eikyū no 永久の permanent
eki 駅 train station
en 円 circle
endōmame エンドウ豆 peas
enjin エンジン motor, engine
enjo 援助 assistance
enkai 宴会 banquet
enkatsu ni susumu 円滑にすすむ to go smoothly
enki shita 延期した postponed, delayed
enki suru 延期する to postpone, to put off, to delay
enpitsu 鉛筆 pencil
erabu 選ぶ to pick, to choose, to select
erebētā エレベーター lift, elevator
eru 得る to earn

esukarētā エスカレーター escalator
faiāwōru ファイアーウォール firewall
fakkusu ファックス fax (machine)
fakkusu o okuru ファックスを送る to fax
fakkusubun ファックス文 fax (message)
fan ファン fan (admirer)
ferī フェリー ferry
Firipin フィリピン the Philippines
firumu フィルム film (camera)
fisshingu フィッシング phishing (fraud)
FTP (efutipī) エフティーピー File Transfer Protocol (FTP)
fōku フォーク fork
fuhei 不平 complaint
fuhei o kobosu 不平をこぼす to complain
fuhitsuyō na 不必要な unnecessary
fuhō no 不法の illegal
fujin 婦人 lady
fukai 深い deep
fukanō na 不可能な impossible
fukō 不幸 misfortune
fukō na 不幸な unhappy
fuku 服 clothes, clothing
fuku o nugu 服を脱ぐ to get undressed
fukubu 腹部 abdomen
fukumu 含む to include
fukuzatsu na 複雑な complicated
fumō no 不毛の barren
fun 分 minute
funatabi o suru 船旅をする to take a boat trip
funbetsu no aru 分別のある reasonable (sensible)
fune 船 ship
funshitsubutsu 紛失物 lost property
fun'iki 雰囲気 atmosphere, ambience
furikaeru 振り返る to turn around

furo 風呂 bath
furū 振る to shake, to wave
furui 古い(物) old (of things)
furumau 振舞う to act, to behave
furūto, fue フルート、笛 flute
fusawashii ふさわしい suitable, fitting
fuseikaku na 不正確な inaccurate
fushō 負傷 injury
futa ふた lid
futatabi 再び again
futotta 太った fat, plump
fūtō 封筒 envelope
futsū 普通 normal
futsū wa 普通は normally, usually
futsūyūbin 普通郵便 ordinary mail
futtō suru 沸騰する to boil
fuun 不運 bad luck
fuun na 不運な unlucky
fū o suru 封をする to steal
fuyasu 増やす to increase
ga 蛾 moth
~ **ga** ~が subject marking particle
gatchi suru 合致する to fit
gachō ガチョウ goose
gaido ガイド guide
gaikoku de 外国で abroad
gaikoku no 外国の foreign
gaikokujin 外国人 foreigner
gaitō 外套 coat, overcoat
gakkō 学校 school
gakudō 学童 schoolchild
gakusei 学生 student
gakushū suru 学習する to study, to learn
gamen 画面 screen (of computer)

ganbō 願望 desire
ganko na 頑固な stubborn, determined
ganryō 顔料 paint
gara 柄 pattern, design
garasu ガラス glass (material)
gasorin ガソリン gasoline, petrol
~gatsu ~月 month
gaun ガウン dressing gown
geijutsu 芸術 art
geijutsuka 芸術家 artist
gekijō 劇場 theater (drama)
gekkei ga aru 月経がある to menstruate
gendai no 現代の modern
genko 言語 language
genkan 玄関 entrance, way in, front door
genkei no 原型の original
genki 元気 how are you?
genki na 元気な fine, energetic
genki ni naru 元気になる to get better
genkin 現金 cash, money
genshō 減少 reduction
genzai 現在 presently, nowadays
genzai no 現在の current
genzō suru 現像する to develop (film)
gen'in 原因 cause
getsuyōbi 月曜日 Monday
gimu 義務 duty (responsibility)
gimuteki na 義務的な compulsory
gin 銀 silver
ginkō 銀行 bank (finance)
giri no chichi 義理の父 father-in-law
giri no haha 義理の母 mother-in-law
giri no musuko 義理の息子 son-in-law
giri no musume 義理の娘 daughter-in-law

giron 議論 argument, discussion
gisei 犠牲 sacrifice
gishiki 儀式 ceremony
go 五 five
go 語 word
gochisō ご馳走 treat (something special), delicious meal
Gogatsu 五月 May
gogo 午後 p.m.
go-han ご飯 rice (cooked)
gōhō no 合法の legal
gojū 五十 fifty
gokai 誤解 misunderstanding
gōkaku suru 合格する(試験) to pass (exam)
gōka na 豪華な luxurious
gōkei no 合計の total
goma ゴマ sesame seeds
goma abura ゴマ油 sesame oil
gomen nasai ごめんなさい sorry! excuse me!
gomi ごみ garbage
gomu ゴム rubber
goraku 娯楽 pastime
gōru ゴール goal
gorufu ゴルフ golf
gōsei no 合成の synthetic
~goto ni ~毎に each, every
guntai 軍隊 army, troops
gurasu グラス glass (for drinking)
guratsuita ぐらついた loose (wobbly)
gurūpu グループ group
gūzen ni 偶然に accidentally, by chance
gūzō 偶像 idol
gyakkō suru 逆行する to go backwards
gyanburu ギャンブル gamble
gyōgi no ii 行儀のいい well-behaved

gyōretsu 行列 line (queue)
gyūniku 牛肉 beef
gyūnyū 牛乳 milk
ha 歯 teeth, tooth
ha 葉 leaf
haba 幅 width
habahiroi 幅広い wide
haburashi 歯ブラシ toothbrush
hachi 八 eight
hachi 鉢 pot
Hachigatsu 八月 August
hachijū 八十 eighty
hachimitsu 蜂蜜 honey
hada 肌 skin
hadagi 肌着 underwear
hadaka no 裸の naked, nude
hādodisuku ハードディスク hard disk
hae 蠅 fly (insect)
haeru 生える to grow, to come out
hagaki 葉書 postcard
hagane はがね steel
hageshiku utsu 激しく打つ to beat (to strike)
hageta はげた bald
haha 母 mother
hai はい yes
hai 肺 lungs
haiben suru 排便する to defecate
haigūsha 配偶者 spouse
haiiro no 灰色の gray
hairu 入る to enter
haitatsu suru 配達する to deliver
haji 端 tip (end)
hajimari 始まり start, beginning
hajime ni 初めに at first

hajimeru 始める to begin, to start
hajite 恥じて ashamed, embarrassed
haka 墓 grave
hakai sareta 破壊された destroyed, ruined
hakai suru 破壊する to destroy
hakari はかり scales
hakarū 測る to measure
hakarū 量る to weigh
hakarukoto 計ること measurement
hakidasu 吐き出す to vomit, spit out
hakike ga suru 吐き気がする to feel sick
hakkā ハッカー hacker, hack
hakken suru 発見する to discover
hako 箱 box
hakobu 運ぶ to carry
haku 掃く to sweep
hakusai 白菜 Chinese cabbage
hamabe 浜辺 beach
hamaki 葉巻 cigar
hamigakiko 歯磨き粉 toothpaste
hana 花 flower
hana 鼻 nose
hanabi 花火 fireworks
hanamuko 花婿 groom
hanashi 話 story (tale)
hanashichū 話し中(電話) busy, engaged (telephone)
hanasu 話す to speak, to talk, to tell
hanayome 花嫁 bride
hanbun 半分 half
hankagai 繁華街 downtown, center (of city)
hankyō suru 反響する to reflect
han'nō 反応 reaction, response
han'nō suru 反応する to react
hansamu ハンサム handsome

hantai no 反対の opposed, opposite
hantai suru 反対する to object, to protest, to oppose
hanzaisha 犯罪者 criminal
hara 腹 stomach, belly
harau 払う to pay
hareta 晴れた(天気) clear (weather)
hari 針 needle
haru 春 spring (season)
hasami はさみ scissors
hashi 橋 bridge
hashi 端 edge, end (tip)
hashi 箸 chopsticks
hashigo 梯子 ladder
hashira 柱 post, column, pillar
hashiru 走る to run
hata 旗 flag
hatsu 果たす to fulfill
hatsugen 発言 utterance
hatsumei 発明 invitation
hatsumei suru 発明する to invent
hatsunetsu 発熱 fever
hatsuon suru 発音する to pronounce
hatten 発展 development
hatten suru 発展する to develop
hayai 速い fast, rapid
hazukashii 恥ずかしい embarrassing
hebi 蛇 snake
heibon na 平凡な plain (not fancy)
heikin 平均 average (numbers)
heisa 閉鎖 closed (road)
heитай 兵隊 soldier
heitan na 平坦な flat, smooth
heiten 閉店 closed (shop)
heiwa 平和 peace

heiwa na 平和な peaceful
hen na 変な strange
henji 返事 answer, response (spoken)
henji o suru 返事をする to answer, to reply
henshin 返信 answer, response (written)
henshin suru 返信する to answer, to respond (written)
hentō 返答 response
hentō suru 返答する to reply (in speech)
herasu 減らす to reduce
heru 減る to decrease
heya 部屋 room
hi ga tsuku 火がつく to catch fire
hiatari ga ii 日当たりがいい sunny (room)
hidarigawa 左側 left-hand side
hidoi ひどい terrible
higashi 東 east
hiji ひじ elbow
hijō ni 非常に very, extremely
hikaeme na 控えめな modest
hikaku suru 比較する to compare
hikaru 光る to shine
hikidashi 引き出し drawer
hikō 飛行 flight
hikōki 飛行機 airplane
hiku 引く to pull, to draw
hikui 低い low, short (not tall)
himitsu 秘密 secret
himitsu o mamoru 秘密を守る to keep a secret
himo 紐 string
hinan 非難 attack (with words), blame
hinode 日の出 sunrise
hinoiri 日の入 sunset
hinpan ni 頻繁に frequently
hiraiteiru 開いている open

hiroba 広場 square, town square
hirobiro shita 広々した spacious
hiroi 広い broad, spacious, large
hiroma 広間 hall
hishaku ひしゃく dipper, ladle
hisho 秘書 secretary
hissu no 必須の compulsory
hitaru 浸る to soak
hīta 引いた less, minus
hito 人 person
hitobito 人々 people
hitokire 一切れ piece, portion
hitonami 人並み average (so-so, just okay)
hitori de ひとりで alone, on one's own
hitsuji 羊 sheep
hitsuyō na 必要な necessary
hitsuyōsei 必要性 necessity
hiyasareta 冷やされた chilled
hiyoku na 肥沃な fertile
hiyō 費用 cost (expense)
hiza 膝 knee
hizashi 日差し sunlight
hizuke 日付 date (of the month)
hō 頬 cheek
hōgen 方言 dialect
hogoku 保護区 reserve (for animals)
hoka no ほかの different, other
hokan suru 保管する to leave behind for safekeeping
hoken 保険 insurance
hokori 誇り pride
hokori 埃 dust
hokōkyori 歩行距離 distance that one walks
hon 本 book
hone 骨 bone

Honkon 香港 Hong Kong
honō 炎 fire
hontō 本当 really, truth
hontō ni 本当に really, truly
hontō no 本当の true
hon'yaku 翻訳 translation
hora'ana 洞穴 cave
horu 彫る to carve
hoshi 星 star
hoshōsho 保証書 guarantee
hoshō suru 保証する to guarantee
hosoi 細い slender, slim
hoteru ホテル hotel
hotondo ほとんど almost, most (the most of), nearly
hotondo~nai ほとんど~ない hardly, seldom
hōhō 方法 method, way
hōki ほうき broom
hōki suru 放棄する to desert, to abandon
hōkoku 報告 report
hōkoku suru 報告する to report
hōkō 方向 direction
hōrensō ほうれん草 spinach
hōritsu 法律 laws, legislation
hōsekirui 宝石類 jewelry
hōshi 奉仕 service
hōsō 放送 broadcast
hōsō suru 放送する to broadcast
hōtai 包帯 bandage
hyakkaten 百貨店 department store
hyaku 百 hundred
hyakubunritsu 百分率 percent, percentage
hyakuman 百万 million
hyō 表 list
hyōmen 表面 surface

hyōshiki 標識 sign, signpost

ichi 一 one

ichiba 市場 market

ichiban no 一番の first

ichibu 一部 part (not whole)

ichido 一度 once

Ichigatsu 一月 January

ichihōkō o shimesu 位置方向を示す point out the position/
direction

ichijiteki na 一時的な temporary

ichi-mai no kami 一枚の紙 a sheet of paper

ichiman 一万 ten thousand

idaku 抱く to embrace

ido 井戸 well (for water)

idō suru 移動する to move

ie 家 home, house

igaku no 医学の medical

Igirisu イギリス England, UK

Igirisu(-jin) no イギリス(人)の English, British

ijiwarui 意地悪い mean (cruel)

ika イカ squid

ikari 怒り anger

iken 意見 opinion

ikinobiru 生延びる to survive

ikite 生きて alive

ikiteiru 生きている living

ikko no 一個の a piece of

iku 行く to go

ikura desu ka いくらですか how much?

ikutsu desu ka いくつですか how old?, how many?

ikutsuka no いくつかの several, some

ima 今 now

imi 意味 meaning

imi suru 意味する to mean (word)

imōto 妹 younger sister
inaka 田舎 country (rural area)
inazuma 稲妻 lightning
Indoneshia インドネシア Indonesia
ine 稲 rice (plant)
ingenmame インゲン豆 kidney beans
inoru 祈る to pray
insatsu suru 印刷する to print
inshōzokeru 印象付ける to make an impression
intai shita 引退した retired
intānetto インターネット Internet
intānetto kafe インターネットカフェ (= netto kafe ネットカフェ) Internet Café, Net café
inu 犬 dog
ippai no いっぱいの full of
ippaku suru 一泊する to stay overnight
ippan ni 一般に generally
ippanteki na 一般的な general, all-purpose
irai 以来 since then
irai suru 依頼する to ask for, to request
irekawaru 入れ替わる to replace
iriguchi 入り口 entrance, way in
iro 色 color
irui 衣類 garment
isamashii 勇ましい brave, daring
iseki 遺跡 remains (historical)
isha 医者 doctor
ishi 石 rock, stone
isogashii 忙しい busy (doing something)
isoide 急いで in a hurry
issō 一生 lifetime
issō いつそう even (also)
isu 椅子 chair, seat
Isuramu no イスラムの Islamic

Isuramukyō no イスラム教の Muslim
IT (aiti) アイティー information technology
itai 痛い sore, painful
itamu 痛む to ache
itazura na いたずらな naughty
ito 意図 intention
ito 糸 thread
ito sareta 意図された intended for
itsu いつ when
itsu de mo いつでも whenever
itsu mo いつも always, every time
itsu mo no いつもの usual
ittsui no 一對の a pair of
iu 言う to say
iwau 祝う to celebrate
iyakuhin 医薬品 medicine
iyaringu イヤリング earrings
izen ni 以前に before (in time)
izon suru 依存する to depend on
jagaimo ジャガイモ potato
jaketto ジャケット coat, jacket
jama 邪魔 hindrance
jamu ジャム jam
janguru ジャングル jungle
jibun no 自分の own, personal
jidōsha 自動車 automobile, car
jidōsha-shūrikōjō 自動車修理工場 garage (for repairs)
jijitsu 事実 fact
jiin 寺院 temple
jikaku 自覚 awareness
jikaku suru 自覚する to be conscious of
jikan 時間 hour, time
jikandōri ni 時間どおりに punctual, on time
jiken 事件 incident

jiko 事故 accident
jikokuhyō 時刻表 timetable
jikoshōkai suru 自己紹介する to introduce oneself
jimen 地面 ground, earth
jimi na 地味な simple, plain (modest)
jimusho 事務所 office
jinkō 人口 population
jinkō no 人工の artificial
jinrui 人類 human
jinzō 腎臓 kidney
jishin 自信 confidence
jishin 自身 self
jishin 地震 earthquake
jishin o motsu 自信を持つ to have confidence
jisho 辞書 dictionary
jisonshin 自尊心 pride
jissai ni 実際に actually, really (in fact)
jiten 時点 point (in time)
jitensha 自転車 bicycle
jitsugyōka 実業家 businessperson
jiyū 自由 freedom
jōdan 冗談 joke
jogen 助言 advice
jogen suru 助言する to advise
jōhō 情報 information
jōi no 上位の ranked higher
jojo ni 徐々に gradually
jōken 条件 condition, pre-condition
jōki 蒸気 steam
jōku ジョーク joke
jōkyaku 乗客 passenger
jōkyō 状況 condition (status), situation, how things are
joō 女王 queen
jōryūshu 蒸留酒 spirits, hard liquor

josei 女性 female, woman
jōsharyōkin 乗車料金 fare
jōsha suru 乗車する to get on, to ride, to board
jōshi 上司 boss
jōshō 上昇 rise, ascendance
jōzai 錠剤 pills, tablets
jū 十 ten
jūbun na 十分な enough
Jūgatsu 十月 October
jūgo 十五 fifteen
jugyō 授業 lesson, class
jūhachi 十八 eighteen
jūichi 十一 eleven
Jūichigatsu 十一月 November
jūjun na 従順な obedient, tame
jukuren shita 熟練した skillful
juku shita 熟した ripe
jukyō 儒教 Confucianism
jūkyū 十九 nineteen
jūman 十万 hundred thousand
jūnana 十七 seventeen
junban 順番 order, sequence
junbi suru 準備する to prepare, to make ready
junchō na 順調な smooth, normal
jūni 十二 twelve
Jūnigatsu 十二月 December
jūnin 住人 resident, inhabitant
junjo 順序 sequence, order
junsui na 純粋な pure
jūoku 十億 billion
juritsu suru 樹立する to establish, to set up
jūroku 十六 sixteen
jūsan 十三 thirteen
jūshichi 十七 seventeen

jūsho 住所 address

jūsu ジュース juice

jūtan 絨毯 carpet

jūyaku 重役 director (of company)

jūyon 十四 fourteen

jūyō na 重要な major (important)

jūyō sa 重要さ importance

ka 蚊 mosquito
kaban 鞆 bag
kabe 壁 wall
kabi カビ mold, mildew
kabin 花瓶 vase
kachi 価値 value (cost)
kado 角 corner
kaeru 変える to change
kaesu 返す to return, to give back
kagaku 科学 science
kagami 鏡 mirror
kage 陰 shade
kage 影 shadow
kagee 影絵 shadow play
kagi 鍵 key (to room)
kago かご basket
kagu 家具 furniture
kai 階 storey (of a building)
kaichō 会長 president
kaichūdentō 懐中電灯 flashlight, torch
kaidan 階段 steps, stairs
kaifuku shita 回復した recovered, cured
kaiga 絵画 painting
kaigai no 海外の overseas
kaigō 会合 meeting
kaihatsu 開発 development
kaiin 会員 member
kaiketsu suru 解決する to resolve, to solve (a problem)
kaiko suru 解雇する to fire (lay off) someone
kaikyō 海峡 strait
kaikyū 階級 rank, station in life
kaimono o suru 買い物をする to go shopping, to shop
kairomō 回路網 network
kaisanbutsu 海産物 seafood

kaisha 会社 company
kaiwa 会話 conversation
kaji o toru かじをとる to steer
kajū 果汁 juice
kakaku 価格 price
kegōto 賭け事 gamble
kaketeiru 欠けている lacking
kaki 牡蠣 oyster
kakikomu 書き込む to fill out (form)
kakitome 書留 registered post
kakitomeru 書き留める to note down
kakō suru 下降する to descend, to go/come down
kaku 書く to write
kaku 描く to paint (a painting)
kakuchō suru 拡張する to enlarge
kakudai suru 拡大する to expand, to grow larger
kakureta 隠れた hidden
kakushin 確信 conviction
kakusu 隠す to hide
kakutei shita 確定した definite
kamaboko かまぼこ fish paste
kamado かまど cooker
kamera カメラ camera
kami 紙 paper
kami 神 God
kami 髪 hair
kamikazari 髪飾り hair ornaments
kaminari 雷 thunder
~ka mo shirenai ~かもしれない maybe
kamu 噛む to bite, to chew
kan 缶 can, tin
kanari かなり quite (fairly)
kanashii 悲しい sad, unhappy
kanashimi 悲しみ sorrow

kanban 看板 signboard
kanbatsu 干ばつ drought
Kanbojia カンボジア Cambodia
kanchi suru 完治する to fully recover
kandai na 寛大な generous
kandai sa 寛大さ generosity
kane 金 money
kanemochi 金持ち rich person
kangae 考え thought
kangaeru 考える to ponder, to think
kani 蟹 crab
kanja 患者 patient (doctor's)
kanji 感じ feeling
kanjiru 感じる to feel
kanjō 感情 emotion
kanjō o gaisuru 感情を害する to hurt one's feeling
kankin suru 換金する to exchange (money)
kankitsurui かんきつ類 citrus fruit
Kankoku 韓国 South Korea
kankō 観光 sightseeing
kankōkyaku 観光客 tourist
kankyō 環境 environment, surroundings
kanningu カンニング cheating
kanō na 可能な possible
kanō ni suru 可能にする to make possible
kanojo 彼女 she, her, girlfriend
kanpai 乾杯 cheers!
kanpeki na 完璧な complete (thorough)
kanrinin 管理人 custodian
kansei shita 完成した complete (finished)
kansha suru 感謝する to be grateful, to thank
kansō shita 乾燥した dry (weather)
kantan na 簡単な simple (easy)
kanyo shita 関与した involved

kanzei 関税 duty (import tax)
kanzen na 完全な whole, complete
kanzen ni 完全に completely, entirely
kanzō 肝臓 liver
kao 顔 face
kao o shikameru 顔をしかめる to frown
~**kara** ~から from
kara no 空の empty
karada 体 body
karai 辛い hot (spicy)
kare 彼 he, him, boyfriend
karera 彼ら they, them
kareshi 彼氏 boyfriend
kari ga aru 借りがある to owe
karifurawā カリフラワー cauliflower
kariru 借りる to borrow
karōjite かろうじて barely
karui 軽い light (not heavy)
kasa 傘 umbrella
kashi 菓子 confectionery
kashikoi 賢い clever, smart
kashitsu 過失 fault
kasu 貸す to lend, to rent
kata 肩 shoulder
katachi 形 form, shape, style
katachizukuru 形作る to form, to shape
katagaki 肩書き title (of person)
katai 堅い stiff
katai 固い hard (solid)
katai 硬い firm (mattress)
katami-chikippu 片道切符 one-way ticket
katazukeru 片付ける to tidy up
katei shitemiru 仮定してみる to hypothesize
kāten カーテン curtain

kāto カート cart, pushcart
katsudō 活動 activity
katsuryoku 活力 energy
katsute かつて in the past
kau 買う to buy
kauntā カウンター counter (for paying, buying tickets)
kawa 川 river
kawa 革 leather
kawaii かわいい cute
kawairashii かわいらしい pretty (of women)
kawaita 乾いた dry
kawakasu 乾かす to dry
kawaru 変わる to change (condition, situation)
kawase-sōba 為替相場 exchange rate
kawaserēto 為替レート rate of exchange (for foreign currency)
Kayōbi 火曜日 Tuesday
kazan 火山 volcano
kazaru 飾る to decorate
kaze 風邪 cold, flu
kazoeru 数える to count
kazoku 家族 family
kazu 数 number
~ka~ ~か~ or
kega 怪我 wound
keihi 経費 expenses
keikaku 計画 plan, schedule
keikaku suru 計画する to plan
keiken 経験 experience
keiken suru 経験する to experience, to undergo
keikoku 警告 warning
keikoku suru 警告する to warn
keimusho 刑務所 jail, prison
keisanki 計算機 calculator
keisan suru 計算する to calculate

keisatsukan 警察官 police officer
keisatsu 警察 police
keitaidenwa 携帯電話 cell phone
keizai 経済 economy, economics
keizaiteki na 経済的な economical
keizoku suru 継続する to continue
kekka 結果 result
kekkonshiki 結婚式 wedding
kekkon suru 結婚する to marry, to get married
kemuri 煙 smoke
ken 券 ticket (for entertainment)
ken 腱 tendon
kenchiku 建築 architecture
ken'i 権威 authority (person in charge)
kenka けんか fight, quarrel
kenkōteki na 健康的な healthy
kenkyū 研究 research
kenkyū suru 研究する to research
kenri 権利 rights
kenryoku(sha) 権力(者) authority (power)
kensaku suru 検索する to look up (in a book)
ken'okan 嫌悪感 hatred
ken'o suru 嫌悪する to hate
keshiki 景色 scenery, view, panorama
keshita 消した off (turned off)
kesseki no 欠席の missing, absent
kesshin 決心 decision
kesshite~nai 決して~ない never
kesu 消す to turn off
kesu 消す to put out (fire, candle)
ketten 欠点 defect
ki 木 tree, wood
kī キー key (computer)
ki o tsukete 気をつけて take care

kibin na 機敏な quick
kibishii きびしい severe, strict
kibō 希望 desire
kibōdo キーボード keyboard (computer)
kichin to shita きちんとした neat, orderly
kigaeru 着替える to change clothes
kigan 祈願 prayer
kigen 起源 origin
kigyō 企業 firm, company
kihon 基本 basic
kiji 記事 article (in newspaper)
kikai 機会 chance, opportunity
kikai 機械 machine
kikairui 機械類 machinery
kikan 期間 period (of time)
kiken 危険 danger
kiken na 危険な dangerous
kikō 気候 climate
kiku 聴く to listen
kiku 聞く to hear
kikyō suru 帰郷する to return to one's town
kimeru 決める to decide, to fix
kimi 君 you (male)
kinben na 勤勉な hardworking, industrious
kinchō shita 緊張した tense
kinenhi 記念碑 monument
ki ni iru 気に入る to be pleased with
ki ni naru 気になる to be anxious
ki ni shinaide 気にしないで never mind!
kinjirareta 禁じられた forbidden
kinkyūjitai 緊急事態 emergency
kinkyū no 緊急の urgent
kin'niku 筋肉 muscle
kinō 昨日 yesterday

kinoko きのこ mushroom
kinōsuru 機能する to function, to work
kinshi suru 禁止する to forbid
kinu 絹 silk
Kinyōbi 金曜日 Friday
kioku 記憶 memories
kippu 切符 ticket (for transport)
kirei na きれいな clean, beautiful
kirei ni suru きれいにする to clean
kiri 霧 fog, mist
kirisutokyō キリ基督教 Christianity
kiroguramu キログラム kilogram
kīroi 黄色い yellow
kiromētā キロメートル kilometer
kiru 切る to cut
kiru 着る to get dressed, to wear, to put on
kisetsu 季節 season
kisha 記者 journalist
kiso 基礎 base, foundation
kisoku 規則 rules
kisu キス kiss
kita 北 north
Kitachōsen 北朝鮮 North Korea
kitai o motte 期待をもって hopefully
kitaku suru 帰宅する to go home
kitanai 汚い dirty
kitsui きつい close together, tight
kitte 切手(郵便) postage stamp
kiwifurūtsu キーウィフルーツ kiwi fruit
kiyomeru 清める to purify
kizamu 刻む to engrave
kizuiteiru 気づいている aware
kizuku 気づく to notice
kizutsuku 傷つく to get hurt, to get injured

kodai no 古代の ancient
kōdō 行動 action
kodomo 子ども child
koe 声 voice
kōen 公園 garden, park
kōen 公演 performance
kōfun shita 興奮した excited
kōgaku no 高額の expensive
kogatana 小刀 knife
kōgei 工芸 crafts
kōgeika 工芸家 craftsperson
kōgeki 攻撃 attack (in war)
kōgi 講義 lecture
kogirei na こぎれいな neat (of places, things)
kogitte 小切手 check (bank)
kōhei na 公平な just, fair
kōhī コーヒー coffee
koi 濃い thick (of liquids)
koishikuomou 恋しく思う to miss (loved one)
koji 古寺 ancient temple
kojinteki na 個人的な private
kōjō 工場 factory
kōka 硬貨 coin
kōkai 後悔 regret
kōkai suru 後悔する to regret
kōkan 交換 exchange
kōkan suru 交換する to switch, to change
kokka 国家 country (nation)
kokku コック cook (person)
kokkyō 国境 border (between countries)
koko ここ here
kokochiyoi 心地良い comfortable
kokonattsu ココナッツ coconut
kokoromi 試み attempt

kokoromiru 試みる to attempt
kokorozuke 心付け tip (gratuity)
kōkūbin 航空便 airmail
kokusaiteki na 国際的な international
kokuseki 国籍 nationality
kōkyō no 公共の public
kome 米 rice (uncooked grains)
komichi 小道 alley, lane
kōmon 肛門 anus
komugiko 小麦粉 flour
konagona ni kowareta 粉々に壊れた broken, shattered
konagona ni suru 粉々にする to shatter
konban 今晚 tonight
konchū 昆虫 insect
kone コネ contact, connection
kongan suru 懇願する to plead
kongō shita 混合した mixed
konnan na 困難な hard, difficult
konnan 困難 trouble, difficulty
konnichi de wa 今日では nowadays
kon'nichi wa こんにちは hello, hi
kono この this
konomanai 好まない to dislike
konomi ni urusai 好みにうるさい fussy
konomu 好む to prefer
kononde 好んで fond of
konpyūtā コンピューター computer
konpōbako 梱包箱 crate
konran shita 混乱した confused
konro コンロ stove
kontei 根底 bottom, base
konwaku saseru 困惑させる to confuse
kon'yakuchū no 婚約中の engaged (to be married)
kon'yakusha 婚約者 fiancé, fiancée

konzatsu shita 混雑した crowded
koppu コップ cup
kopī コピー photocopy
kopī suru コピーする to photocopy
korera no これらの these
koriandā コリアンダー cilantro, coriander
kōri 氷 ice
kōritsuku 凍りつく to freeze
korobu 転ぶ to fall over
korosu 殺す to kill, to murder
kōryo suru 考慮する to consider (to think over)
kōsai suru 交際する to associate
kosame 小雨 shower (of rain)
kōsaten 交差点 intersection
kosei 個性 personality
kōshi 講師 lecturer
koshikake 腰掛 stool
kōshiki no 公式の official, formal
kōshinryō 香辛料 spices
koshō suru 故障する to break down (car, machine)
kōsui 香水 perfume
kotai no 固体の solid
kōtta 凍った frozen
kotei sareta 固定された fixed, won't move
koto こと (intangible) thing, matter
kōto コート coat, overcoat
kotowaru 断る to decline, refuse
kottōhin 骨董品 antiques
kōtsū 交通 traffic
kōun 幸運 lucky
kōun o inoru 幸運を祈る good luck!
kōun ni mo 幸運にも fortunately
kowagatte 恐がって afraid
kowareta 壊れた broken, does not work, spoiled

koya 小屋 hut, shack
koyū no 固有の indigenous, peculiar
kozeni 小銭 small change
kōzui 洪水 flood
kozutsumi 小包 package, parcel
kubi 首 neck
kubikazari 首飾り necklace
kuchi 口 mouth
kuchibiru 唇 lips
kuchihige 口ひげ moustache
kudaketa 砕けた cracked
kudamono 果物 fruit
kūfuku no 空腹の hungry
Kugatsu 九月 September
kugi 釘 nail (spike)
kujō 苦情 complaint
kūkan 空間 room, space
kūki 空気 air
kukkī クッキー cookie
kūkō 空港 airport
kumiawaseru 組み合わせる to assemble, to put together
kumotta 曇った cloudy
kuni 国 nation, country
kuni no 国の national
kunren 訓練 training
kurai 暗い dark
kurakkā クラッカー cracker
kurasu クラス class
kurikaesu 繰り返す to repeat
kuroi 黒い black
kurokoshō 黒胡椒 black pepper
kuromame 黒豆 black beans
kuru 来る to come
kurubushi くるぶし ankle

kuruma ni noseru 車に乗せる to pick up (someone)

kurushimi 苦しみ suffering

kurushimu 苦しむ to suffer

kurutta 狂った crazy

kusa 草 grass

kusai 臭い smelly

kusatta 腐った rotten, spoiled

kushami くしゃみ sneeze

kushi 櫛 comb

kūsō 空想 fancy, fantasy

kūsō suru 空想する to daydream

kusuri 薬 drug (medicine)

kutōten 句読点 punctuation marks

kutsu 靴 shoes

kutsurogu くつろぐ to relax

kutsushita 靴下 socks

kuwaete 加えて in addition

kyabetsu キャベツ cabbage

kyaku 客 guest, customer

kyodai na 巨大な huge

kyoka 許可 permit, license

kyoka suru 許可する to let, to allow, to permit

kyokutan ni 極端に extremely

kyori 距離 distance

kyō 今日 today

kyōbai ni kakeru 競売にかける to auction

kyōdai きょうだい siblings, brothers and sisters

kyōdōkeieisha 共同経営者 partner (in business)

kyōhaku suru 脅迫する to threaten

kyōiku 教育 education

kyōiku suru 教育する to educate

kyōkai 教会 church

kyōkaisen 境界線 boundary, border

kyōki no 狂気の insane

kyōmi bukai 興味深い interesting
kyōsō 競争 competition
kyōsōaite 競争相手 rival
kyōsō suru 競争する to compete
kyozetsu 拒絶 refusal
kyū 九 nine
kyū ni 急に suddenly
kyūji 給仕 waiter, waitress
kyūjitu 休日 day off
kyūjo suru 救助する to rescue
kyūjū 九十 ninety
kyūka 休暇 holiday (vacation)
kyūri キュウリ cucumber
kyūryō 給料 salary
ma ni awase no 間に合わせの makeshift
matchi マッチ matches
machi 町 town
machigaerareta 間違えられた mistaken
machigai 間違い error
machigatta 間違った wrong, mistaken
mada まだ still, even now
madadesu まだです not yet
mada~nai まだ~ない not yet
~made ~まで until
~mae ni ~までに by (a certain time)
mae ni 前に before, in the past
maebarai suru 前払いする to pay in advance
maemotte 前もって earlier, beforehand
magaru 曲がる to turn, to make a turn
magirawashii 紛らわしい confusing
mago 孫 grandchild
magomusuko 孫息子 grandson
magomusume 孫娘 granddaughter
mahi shita 麻痺した numb

maikurobasu マイクロバス minibus
mainichi no 毎日の daily
maishū no 毎週の weekly
mājan 麻雀 mahjong
majime na まじめな serious (not funny)
makeru 負ける to lose, to be defeated
makura 枕 pillow
mame 豆 bean
mamoru 守る to guard, to protect
mangō マンゴー mango
manzoku saseru 満足させる to satisfy
manzoku shita 満足した pleased, satisfied
mare ni まれに occasionally
Marēshia マレーシア Malaysia
marui 丸い round (shape)
massāji マッサージ massage
massugu mae ni 真っ直ぐ前に straight ahead
massugu na 真っ直ぐな straight (not crooked)
masuku マスク mask
maton マトン mutton
matsu 待つ to wait for
matsuri 祭り festival
matto マット mat
mattoresu マットレス mattress
mausu マウス mouse (of computer)
mayaku 麻薬 drug, narcotic
mayonaka 真夜中 midnight
mayotta 迷った lost (can't find way)
mayuge 眉毛 eyebrow
mazaru 混ざる to mix
mazushii 貧しい poor
me 目 eye
megami 女神 goddess
megane めがね eyeglasses, spectacles

me ga sameru 目が覚める wake up
mei 姪 niece
meirei 命令 command, order
meiwaku 迷惑 bother, nuisance
meiwaku mēru 迷惑メール (= **supamu mēru** スパムメール) e-mail spam, junk mail
meiwaku suru 迷惑する to be annoyed
memo メモ memo
men 綿 cotton
mendō na 面倒な troublesome
menkyo 免許 permit, license
menkyoshō 免許証 driving license
menrui 麺類 noodles
menyū メニュー menu
meron メロン melon
meshitsukai 召使 servant
mezameru 目覚める to wake up
mezurashii 珍しい rare, scarce, unusual
mibōjin 未亡人 widow
miburi 身振り gesture
miburui suru 身震いする to shiver
michi 道 road, street
michibiku 導く to lead, to guide
midori no 緑の green
migaku 磨く to brush, to polish
migigawa 右側 right-hand side
migoto na 見事な great, impressive
migurushii 見苦しい ugly
miharu 見張る to watch over, to guard
mihon 見本 sample
mijikai 短い brief, short
mikake 見かけ appearance, looks
mikata 見方 viewpoint
mimi 耳 ear

minami 南 south
minamoto 源 source
minato 港 harbor, port
miru 観る to watch (show, movie)
miru 見る to watch, to look, to see
miryokuaru 魅力ある attractive
mise 店 shop, store
miseijuku no 未成熟の unripe
miseru 見せる to show
mitasu 満たす to fill
mitomeru 認める to recognize
mitsukeru 見つける to find
mitsumoru 見積もる to estimate
mitsurin 密林 jungle
mitsuyunyū suru 密輸入する to smuggle
mizu 水 water
mizugi 水着 swimming costume, swimsuit
mizusashi 水差し jug, pitcher
mizushibuki 水しぶき splash
mizutama no 水玉の spotted (pattern)
mizuumi 湖 lake
mochiageru 持ち上げる to pick up, to lift (something)
mochidasu 持ち出す to bring up (topic)
mochigome もち米 glutinous rice, sticky rice
mochiron もちろん certainly!, of course
modoru 戻る to return, to go back
moetsukita 燃え尽きた burned down
mōfu 毛布 blanket
mō hitotsu no もうひとつの another
moji 文字 character (written)
mokugekisha 目撃者 witness
mokugeki suru 目撃する to witness
mokuhyō 目標 goal
mokusei no 木製の wooden

mokuteki 目的 purpose
mokutekichi 目的地 destination
Mokuyōbi 木曜日 Thursday
~mo mata ~もまた as well, too, also
momo もも thigh
~mo~mo~nai ~も~も~ない neither ... nor
mōmoku 盲目 blindness
mon 門 gate
mondai 問題 matter, issue, problem
mondainai 問題ない no problem
monitā モニター monitor (of computer)
mono 物 thing
moreguchi 漏れ口 leak
mori 森 forest
moshi もし if
mōshikomu 申し込む to apply
moshimoshi もしもし hello (on phone)
mosuku モスク mosque
mōtā モーター motor, engine
moto ni shita 基にした based on
motomeru 求める to seek
mottekuru 持ってくる to bring
mottomo 最も most (superlative)
moyō 模様 pattern, design
moyōshi 催し show (live performance)
muchi no 無知の ignorant
mueki na 無益な useless
mugon no 無言の silent
muimi na kotoba 無意味な言葉 nonsense
mukashi 昔 old times, past
mukashi no 昔の past, former
mukatsuku yō na むかつくような disgusting
muku 剥く to peel
mune 胸 chest (breast)

mura 村 village
murasaki no 紫の purple
muryō de 無料で free of charge
musareta 蒸された steamed
museigen ni 無制限に free of restraints
mushi suru 無視する to ignore
musubu 結ぶ to tie
musuko 息子 son
musume 娘 daughter
muzukashii 難しい difficult
Myanmā ミャンマー Myanmar
myōji 苗字 surname
na 名 given name
nabe 鍋 pan
nagai 長い long (length, time)
nagaisu 長いす couch, sofa
nagasa 長さ length
nageru 投げる to throw
naibu 内部 inside
naifu ナイフ knife
nairon ナイロン nylon
nakaniwa 中庭 courtyard
naku 泣く to cry, to weep
nama no 生の raw, uncooked, rare
namae 名前 name
namayake no 生焼けの rare (half-cooked)
nameraka na なめらかな smooth, glassy
nameru 舐める to lick
nami 波 wave (in sea)
namida 涙 tears
nan no tame ni 何のために what for
nana 七 seven
nanajū 七十 seventy
nani 何 what

nani ga okita 何が起こった what happened
nani ka 何か anything, something
nani mo~nai 何も～ない nothing
nan-ji 何時 what time
nan-jū-bai mo no 何十倍もの tens of, multiples of ten
naosu 直す to mend
narabu 並ぶ to line up
narasu 鳴らす to ring (bell)
narau 習う to learn
nareteiru 慣れている to be used to, to be accustomed
~nashi ni ～なしに without
nasu ナス aubergine, eggplant
natsu 夏 summer
naze なぜ why
naze nara なぜなら because
ne 根 root (of plant)
neba neba shita ねばねばした sticky
nedan 値段 price
neko 猫 cat
nekutai ネクタイ necktie
nemaki 寝巻き pajamas
nemui 眠い sleepy
nemutte 眠って asleep
nenchō no 年長の elder
neru 寝る to go to bed, to sleep
netto ginkō ネット銀行 Internet bank, Web bank
netto kafe ネットカフェ(= **intānetto kafe** インターネットカフェ)
Internet café
nesoberu 寝そべる to lie down
nezumi ねずみ mouse, rat
~ni ～に on, at, in
~ni hanshite ～に反して contrary to
~ni kanshite ～に関して concerning, regarding
~ni mo kakawarazu ～にもかかわらず in spite of

~ni tsuite ~について about (regarding)
~ni yoru to ~によると according to
~ni yotte ~によって by (author, artist)
ni 二 two
nibai no 二倍の double
nitchū 日中 daytime
Nichiyōbi 日曜日 Sunday
nigai 苦い bitter
Nigatsu 二月 February
nigeru 逃げる to run away
nigiyaka na にぎやかな busy, lively (crowded), cheerful
Nihon 日本 Japan
Nihon(-jin) no 日本(人)の Japanese (person)
nijū 二十 twenty
nikki 日記 diary, journal
nikomi 煮込み stew
nikudango 肉団子 meatball
ninjin 人参 carrot
ninki no aru 人気のある popular
ninmei suru 任命する to appoint
nin'niku にんにく garlic
niru 煮る to boil
niru 似る to resemble
nise no 偽の false (imitation)
ninshin suru 妊娠する to get pregnant
nintai no aru 忍耐のある patient (calm)
nishi 西 west
niwa 庭 garden, yard
niwatori 鶏 chicken, rooster
~no ~の of, from
~no aida ~の間 in (time, years), during
~no aida ni ~の間に among, while, during, between
~no atode ~のあとで after
~no kawari ni ~の代わりに instead of

~no kekka to shite ~の結果として as a result of

~no mae ni ~の前に before, in front of

~no mukai ni ~の向かいに across from

~no naka ni ~の中に inside of, into

~no saichū ~の最中 in the middle of

~no shita ni ~の下に under

~no soba ni ~のそばに near

~no soto ni ~の外に outside of

~no ue ni ~の上に on, above

~no ushiro ni ~の後ろに behind

~no yō na ~のような like, as, such

nō 脳 brain

noberu 述べる to express, to state, to mention

noboru 登る to go up, to climb

nodo のど throat

nodo no kawaita のどの渴いた thirsty

nokku suru ノックする to knock

nokori 残り left, remaining, rest, remainder

nokorimono 残り物 remainder, leftover

nokoru 残る to stay, to remain

nomikomu 飲み込む to swallow

nomimono 飲み物 drink, beverage

nomu 飲む to drink

norimono 乗り物 vehicle

noriokureru 乗り遅れる to miss (bus, flight)

noru 乗る to ride (an animal)

noseru 乗せる(車) to give a lift

nōto ノート notebook

nozoite 除いて except

nozomi 望み desire, hope

nugu 脱ぐ to take off (clothes)

nukumori ぬくもり warmth

nuno 布 cloth, fabric, textile

nureta 濡れた wet

nuu 縫う to sew

Nyūjīlāndo ニュージーランド New Zealand

nyūsu ニュース news

nyūyoku suru 入浴する to bathe, to take a bath

~o ~を object marking particle

o 尾 tail

oba おば aunt

obake お化け ghost

obieta おびえた scared

oboeteiru 覚えている to remember

oboreru おぼれる to drown

ōbun オープン oven

ochiru 落ちる to fall

odayaka na 穏やかな calm, mild (not severe)

odeko おでこ forehead

odori 踊り dance

odoroku 驚く to be surprised

odorokubeki 驚くべき surprising

odoru 踊る to dance

ofisu オフィス office

ōfukukippu 往復切符 return ticket

ōgon 黄金 gold

oi 甥 nephew

oiharau 追い払う to chase away, to chase out

oikakeru 追いかける to chase

oishii おいしい delicious, tasty

oiteiku 置いていく leave behind on purpose

oji おじ uncle

oka 丘 hill

okashii おかしい funny

okidokei 置き時計 clock

ōkii 大きい big

ōkiku naru 大きくなる to grow larger

okiru 起きる to get up (from bed)

okiwasureru 置き忘れる to leave behind by accident, to lose, to mislay
okō お香 incense
okoru 起こる to happen, to occur
okoru 怒る to get angry
okosu 起こす to wake someone up
okotta 怒った cross, angry
oku 置く to place, to put
okureru 遅れる to be delayed
okurimono 贈り物 present (gift)
okurimono o suru 贈り物をする to present
okuru 送る to send
omedetō おめでとう congratulations!
omo ni 主に mainly
omosa 重さ weight
omocha おもちゃ toy
omoi 重い heavy
omoidasaseru 思い出させる to remind
omoshiroi おもしろい humorous
omou 思う to consider (to have an opinion), to think
onaji takasa no 同じ高さの of the same height
onaji yō ni 同じように likewise
o-naka ga ippai no お腹がいっぱい of full, eaten one's fill
ondo 温度 degrees (temperature)
onegaishimasu お願いします please (request for something)
oneuchi お値打ち good value
ongaku 音楽 music
oniai no お似合いの suitable, fitting, compatible
onna no ko 女の子 girl
onrain gēmu オンラインゲーム online game
onryō no aru 音量のある loud
onsen 温泉 hot spring
orenji オレンジ orange (fruit)
orenjiro no オレンジ色の orange-colored

oreru 折れる to be broken, snapped (of bones, etc.)

orimono 織り物 weaving

oroka na 愚かな stupid

oru 織る to weave

oru 折る to fold

osaeru 抑える to restrain

ōsama 王様 king

oshieru 教える to teach, to tell, to let know

oshikumo 惜しくも regrettably

osoi 遅い late, slow

osokutomo 遅くとも at the latest

osoraku おそらく perhaps, probably

osore 恐れ fear

osu 押す to press, to push

ōsugiru 多過ぎる too much

ōsutoraria オーストラリア Australia

oto 音 sound, noise

ōtobai オートバイ motorcycle

otoko no hito 男の人 man

otoko no ko 男の子 boy

otōto 弟 younger brother

ototoi 一昨日 day before yesterday

otto 夫 husband

ōu 覆う to cover

owari 終わり end (finish)

owaru 終る to end

owatta 終った finished, gone, over

oyogu 泳ぐ to bathe, to swim

ōyoso おおよそ approximately, roughly

ōyoso no おおよその approximate, rough

pai パイ pie

painappuru パイナップル pineapple

pajama パジャマ pajamas

pan パン bread

panorama パノラマ panorama
pantsu パンツ shorts (underpants)
pantī パンティー panties
papaiya パパイヤ papaya
pāsento パーセント percent, percentage
pasupōto パスポート passport
pāti パーティー party (event)
pechikōto ペチコート slip, petticoat
pēji 頁 page
pen ペン pen
penki ペンキ paint
penki o nuru ペンキを塗る to paint (house, furniture)
petto ペット pet animal
pīnattsu ピーナッツ peanut
pinku no ピンクの pink
pittari shita ぴったりした tight-fitting
poketto ポケット pocket
ponpu ポンプ pump
puragu プラグ plug (electric)
puramu プラム plum
purasuchikku プラスチック plastic
purotokoru プロトコル protocol
pūru プール swimming pool
raichi ライチ lychee
raimu ライム lime
rainen 来年 next year
raishū 来週 next week
raitā ライター lighter
rajio ラジオ radio
ramu ラム lamb
ranpu ランプ lamp
rasenjō no らせん状の spiral
rei 例 example
reigitadashii 礼儀正しい polite

reizōko 冷蔵庫 refrigerator
rekishi 歴史 history
remon レモン lemon (fruit)
remongurasu レモングラス lemongrass
reinen no 例年の annual
renketsu suru 連結する to connect together
renraku suru 連絡する to contact, to get in touch with
renshū suru 練習する to practise
repōtā レポーター reporter
reshipi レシピ recipe
ressun レッスン lesson
resutoran レストラン restaurant
retsu 列 queue, line
retsu o tsukuru 列をつくる to queue, to line up
ribon リボン ribbon
rieki 利益 profit
rikai suru 理解する to understand
rikon suru 離婚する to divorce
ringo りんご apple
rinjin 隣人 neighbor
rinkaku 輪郭 border, edge
rishi 利子 interest
riyū 理由 reason
rō ロウ wax
rojji ロッジ lodge, small hotel
rōka 廊下 corridor
roku 六 six
rokuga suru 録画する to videotape
Rokugatsu 六月 June
rokujū 六十 sixty
rōpu ロープ rope
rōsoku ろうそく candle
ruiji 類似 resemble
ruijin'en 類人猿 ape

ruiji shita 類似した similar
rusuban-denwa 留守番電話 answering machine, voicemail
ryō 量 amount
ryō 寮 dormitory
ryōgae 両替 exchange
ryōhō 両方 both
ryoken 旅券 passport
ryōkin 料金 fee
ryokō suru 旅行する to travel
ryokōan'nai 旅行案内 guidebook
ryokōsha 旅行者 traveler
ryōri 料理 cooking, cuisine, dish (particular food)
ryōrinin 料理人 cook (person)
ryōri suru 料理する to cook
ryōshin 両親 parents
ryōshūsho 領収書 receipt
ryūchō na 流暢な fluent
sabaku 砂漠 desert (arid land)
sabishii 寂しい lonely
sāfin サーフィン surf
sagasu 探す to look for, to search for
sagi 詐欺 fraud
~sai ~歳 ~ years old
sai 差異 difference (discrepancy in figures)
saifu 財布 wallet, purse
saigo 最後 last
saigo ni 最後に finally
saigo no 最後の final, last
saijitsu 祭日 holiday (festival)
saikō no 最高の best
sain サイン signature
sainan 災難 disaster
saishō no 最小の smallest
saizu サイズ size

saka 坂 slope
sakaba 酒場 bar (serving drinks)
sakana 魚 fish
sakasama 逆さま upside down
sakasama no 逆さまの reversed, backwards
sake 酒 alcohol, liquor, sake
sakebu 叫ぶ to cry out, to shout, to yell
sakka 作家 writer
sakkā サッカー soccer
saku 柵 fence
sakuhin 作品 composition, writings
sakunen 昨年 last year
sakuya 昨夜 last night
samasu 冷ます to cool
samatageru 妨げる to disturb, to hinder, to prevent
same 鮫 shark
samui 寒い cold
san 三 three
sanchō 山頂 summit
sandaru サンドル sandals
Sangatsu 三月 March
sangoshō さんご礁 coral reef
sanjū 三十 thirty
sankaku 三角 triangle
sanka suru 参加する to go along, to join in, to participate
sanpo ni iku 散歩に行く to go for a walk
sara 皿 dish, platter, plate
sara ni 更に also
sararīman サラリーマン businessperson
saru 猿 monkey
sashikomi 差込 plug (electric)
sashō 査証 visa
sasou 誘う to invite (ask along)
sassoku 早速 immediately

satoru 悟る to realize, to be aware of
satō 砂糖 sugar
satōkibi サトウキビ sugarcane
sayōnara さようなら goodbye
sebone 背骨 spine
seibetsu 性別 sex, gender
seifu 政府 government
seiji 政治 politics
seijin no 成人の adult
seikaku 性格 character (personality)
seikaku na 正確な correct, exact
seikatsu 生活 life
seiketsu 清潔 cleanliness
seiki 世紀 century
seikō 成功 success
seikōsuru 成功する to succeed
seikyūsho 請求書 bill
seiri 生理 menstrual period
seiridansu 整理だんす chest (box)
seisan suru 生産する to produce
seishin no 精神の mental
seito 生徒 pupil, student
seiton suru 整頓する to tidy up
seiyōjin 西洋人 westerner
seizō suru 製造する to manufacture
sekai 世界 world
seki 咳 cough
sekikomu 咳きこむ to cough
sekinin 責任 responsibility
sekinin o motsu 責任を持つ to be responsible
sekken 石鹸 soap
semai 狭い narrow
semeru 責める to blame
sen 千 thousand

sen 栓 plug (bath)
sen 線 line (mark)
senaka 背中 back (part of body)
senkyo 選挙 election
senmonka 専門家 expert
senpūki 扇風機 fan (for cooling)
senro 線路 railroad, railway
sensei 先生 teacher
senshū 先週 last week
sensō 戦争 war
sentaku 選択 choice
sentensu センテンス sentence
sentō 戦闘 battle
senzai 洗剤 detergent
senzo 先祖 ancestor
serori セロリ celery
setsumeisuru 説明する to explain
setsuzoku suru 接続する to join together
sewa o suru 世話をする to take care of, to look after
shakkin 借金 debt
shako 車庫 garage
shakushi 杓子 ladle, dipper
shampū シャンプー shampoo
sharin 車輪 wheel
shasen 車線 lane (of a highway)
shashin 写真 photograph
shashin o toru 写真を撮る to photograph
shatsu シャツ shirt
shawā シャワー shower (for washing)
shawā o abiru シャワーを浴びる to take a shower
shi 市 city
shi 死 death
shiai 試合 match, game
shiawase 幸せ happiness

shibashiba しばしば often
shibō no ōi 脂肪の多い fatty, greasy
shichaku suru 試着する to try on (clothes)
shichi 七 seven
shichigatsu 七月 July
shichū シチュー stew
shīdī シーディー CD
shīdī romu シーディーロム CD-ROM
shidōsha 指導者 leader
Shigatsu 四月 April
shigeki no nai 刺激のない dull, monotonous
shigoto 仕事 job, work, occupation
shigoto o suru 仕事をする to work
shiharai 支払い payment
shihei 紙幣 note (currency)
shiiru 強いる to force, to compel
shiji suru 指示する to instruct, to tell to do something
shiji suru 支持する to back up
shikaku 資格 qualification
shikakui 四角い square (shape)
shikashi しかし however
shikashinagara かしながら however, nevertheless
shiken 試験 exam, test
shikin 資金 funds, funding
shikke no aru 湿気のある damp, humid
shikō 思考 thoughts
shikyū 子宮 uterus
shima 島 island
shima no aru 縞のある striped
shimai 姉妹 sisters
shimaru 閉まる to close
shimatta 閉まった shut, closed
shimi しみ stain
shimin 市民 citizen

shinbun 新聞 newspaper
shinda 死んだ dead
shindai 寝台 bed
Shingapōru シンガポール Singapore
shingurui 寝具類 bedding, bedclothes
shinjiru 信じる to believe
shinju 真珠 pearl
shinkō suru 信仰する to worship
shin'nen 信念 belief, faith
shinpai suru 心配する to worry
shinrai suru 信頼する to trust
shinsei na 神聖な holy, sacred
shinseki 親戚 relatives
shinsen na 新鮮な fresh
shinshitsu 寝室 bedroom
Shintō 神道 Shinto
shinu 死ぬ to die
shinwa 神話 myth
shinzō 心臓 heart
shio 塩 salt
shiokarai 塩辛い salty
shippai 失敗 failure
shippai suru 失敗する to fail
shippo しっぽ tail
shiraseru 知らせる to inform
shiri 尻 bottom, buttocks
shiriai 知り合い acquaintance
shiro 城 castle
shiroi 白い white
shiru 知る to learn, to realize
shiryo no aru 思慮のある sensible
shisai 司祭 priest
shisan 資産 property, assets
shishoku o suru 試食をする to taste (sample)

shishū 刺繍 embroidery
shishunki no kodomo 思春期の子供 teenager
shishū no 刺繍の embroidered
shison 子孫 descendant
~shitai ~したい to want
~shita koto ga aru ~したことがある have done something
~shite mo yoi ~してもよい can, may
shita 舌 tongue
shita e 下へ down, downward
shitagau 従う to obey
shitagi 下着 underwear
shitsu シーツ bedsheet, sheet
shitsubō suru 失望する to be disappointed
shitsugyōchū no 失業中の unemployed
shitsumon 質問 question
shitsurei 失礼 impoliteness
shitsurei na 失礼な rude, impolite
shitteiru 知っている to know
shitto 嫉妬 jealousy
shittobukai 嫉妬深い jealous
~shiyō ~しよう let's (suggestion)
shiyō dekiru 使用できる available
shizen 自然 nature
shizen no 自然の natural
shizuka na 静かな still, quiet
shō ショー show (live performance)
shōbai 商売 trade, business
shōchi shita 承知した OK, all right!
shōdō o karitateru 衝動を駆り立てる urge, to push for
shōga 生姜 ginger
shōgai 障害 handicap, obstacle
shōgo 正午 midday, noon
shohōsen 処方箋 prescription
shōjiki na 正直な honest

shoji suru 所持する to own
shōkai suru 紹介する to introduce someone
shokki o arau 食器を洗う wash the dishes
shokkidana 食器棚 cupboard
shōko 証拠 proof, evidence
shokubutsu 植物 plant
shokugyō 職業 occupation, profession
shokuji 食事 meal
shokuniku 食肉 meat
shomei 署名 signature
shōmei 照明 lighting
shōmei suru 証明する to prove
shomei suru 署名する to sign
shōrai 将来 in future
shōronbun 小論文 essay
shorui 書類 document
shōsan 賞賛 praise
shōsan suru 賞賛する admire, praise
shōsetsu 小説 novel
shōsho 証書 certificate
shōshō omachikudasai 少々お待ちください Please wait for a moment
shōtai suru 招待する to invite (formally)
shotei no 所定の set
shōtotsu 衝突 collision
shōtotsu suru 衝突する to collide
shōtsu ショーツ shorts (short trousers)
shōyu しょう油 soy sauce
shoyūbutsu 所有物 belongings
shoyūken 所有権 the right of ownership
shoyū suru 所有する to have, to own, to possess
shozoku suru 所属する to belong to
shū 週 week
shūchū suru 集中する to concentrate

shuhin 主賓 guest of honor
shujin 主人 host
shūkan 習慣 custom, practice
shūkin suru 集金する to collect money
shukōgei 手工芸 handicraft
shukuhakujo 宿泊所 accommodation
shukuhaku-shisetsu 宿泊施設 accommodations, facilities
shūkyō 宗教 religion
shūhen ni 周辺に around (surrounding)
shūmatsu 週末 weekend
shumi 趣味 hobby
shunkan 瞬間 moment, instant
shuppan suru 出版する to publish
shuppatsu 出発 departure
shuppatsu suru 出発する to leave, to depart
shūri suru 修理する to fix, repair
shurui 種類 kind, type, sort
shushō 首相 prime minister
shusseki suru 出席する to attend
shuyō na 主要な main, most important
sō 層 layer
sobo 祖母 grandmother
sōchō ni 早朝に early in the morning
sōdai na 壮大な grand, great
sōdan suru 相談する to consult, to talk over with
sodate ru 育てる to raise, to bring up (child)
sodatsu 育つ to grow up (child)
sofā ソファー couch, sofa
sofu 祖父 grandfather
sofubo 祖父母 grandparents
sōkan 壮観 spectacles
soketto ソケット socket (electric)
sokkuri no そっくりの exactly like
soko de そこで there

sokonau 損なう to damage
soko ni そこに there
songai 損害 damage
sonkei 尊敬 respect
sonkei suru 尊敬する to respect
sono go その後 afterwards, later, after that
sono hito その人 that person
sono kekka その結果 therefore
sono ta no その他の the other
sono tōri その通り exactly! just so!
sono ue その上 besides, further, additional
sono yō ni そのように like that
sonzai suru 存在する to exist
sora 空 sky
sore それ that one/matter
sore de wa mata それではまた see you later!
sore ni mo kakawarazu それにもかかわらず nevertheless
soreyue それゆえ therefore
soru 剃る to shave
sōshiki 葬式 funeral
sōshokuhin 装飾品 ornament
sosogu 注ぐ to pour
sōsu ソース sauce
sotogawa 外側 outside
sōzō suru 想像する to imagine
su 酢 vinegar
su 巢 nest
subarashii すばらしい wonderful
~subeki de aru ~すべきである ought to, should
subesube shita すべすべした smooth (of surfaces), glossy
subete 全て all
sugu ni すぐに in a moment, right now, immediately
sugusoba no すぐそばの close to, nearby
suitchi スイッチ switch

suijun 水準 level (standard)
suika スイカ watermelon
suisoku suru 推測する to guess
Suiyōbi 水曜日 Wednesday
sūji 数字 figure, number
sukkari すっかり completely
sukoshi 少し a bit, slightly
sukunai 少ない few, little (not much)
sukunaku naru 少なくなる to lessen, to reduce
sukunakutomo 少なくとも at least
sukurin スクリーン screen (of computer)
sukāto スカート skirt
sumasu 済ます to finish off
sumāto na スマートな slender
sumi 墨 ink
sumimasen すみません excuse me!
sumu 住む to live (stay in a place)
suna 砂 sand
sumu 済む to be completed
sūpā スーパー supermarket
supamu mēru スパムメール spam e-mail, spam mail, e-mail
spam
supai wea スパイウェア spyware
supīchi スピーチ speech
supīchi o suru スピーチをする to make a speech
supīdo スピード speed
suponji スポンジ sponge
supōtsu スポーツ sports
suppai すっぱい sour
supuringu スプリング spring (metal part)
supurē スプレー spray
sūpu スープ broth, soup
supūn スプーン spoon
suri すり pickpocket

surimu スリム slim
surippa スリッパ slippers
surippu スリッパ slip
suru する to do, to perform an action, to play
suru する to pickpocket
surudoい 鋭い sharp
~suru koto ga dekiru ~することができる to be able to do...
~suru tame ni ~するために in order to do...
~suru toki ~する時 when doing
~suru tsumori ~するつもり to intend to do...
~suru yoyū ga aru ~する余裕がある to afford to do...
susumeru 勧める to recommend
sutaffu スタッフ staff
sutanpu スタンプ stamp (ink)
suteki na 素敵な lovely, nice
suteru 捨てる to throw away, to throw out
sutoraiki o suru ストライキをする to go on strike
sūtsu スーツ business suit
sūtsukēsu スーツケース suitcase
suu 吸う to suck, to smoke
suwaru 座る to sit down, to sit
suzushii 涼しい cool
tabako タバコ cigarette
tabako o suu タバコをすう to smoke (tobacco)
tabemono 食べ物 food
taberu 食べる to eat
tabi 旅 trip, journey
tabun 多分 perhaps
tachiagaru 立ち上がる to stand up
tadashii 正しい right, correct
Tai タイ Thailand
taido 態度 attitude
taifū 台風 typhoon
taiju ga heru 体重が減る to lose weight

taijū ga fueru 体重が増える to gain weight
taikakusen no 対角線の diagonal
taikōsha 対抗者 opponent
taikutsu na 退屈な dull (boring)
taiman na 怠慢な lazy
taipusuru タイプする to type
taira na 平らな level, flat
tairiku 大陸 continent
taishi 大使 ambassador
taishikan 大使館 embassy
taishita koto nai 大したことない minor (not important)
taishosuru 対処する deal with, cope
taiyō 太陽 sun
taizai 滞在 visit
takai 高い high, tall
takameru 高める to lift, to raise
takarakuji 宝くじ lottery
takasa 高さ height
taki 滝 waterfall
takusan no たくさんの lots of, many, much
takushi タクシー taxi
takuwae 蓄え store, reserve
tamago 卵 egg
tamanegi 玉葱 onion
tamerau ためらう to hold back, to hesitate
tamesu 試す to test
tamotsu 保つ to keep, to save
tanbo 田んぼ rice fields
tane 種 seed
tani 谷 valley
tanjikan 短時間 short time, a moment
tanjōbi 誕生日 birthday, date of birth
tanmatsu 端末 computer terminal
tan ni 単に merely

tanomu 頼む to request
tanoshimeru 楽しめる enjoyable
tanoshimi 楽しみ pleasure, delight
tanoshimu 楽しむ to enjoy oneself, to have fun
tanpan 短パン shorts
tansha 単車 motorcycle
taoru タオル towel
tashika ni 確かに indeed, surely
tashikameru 確かめる to check, to verify
tassei suru 達成する to attain, to reach
tasukeru 助ける to assist, to help
tasukete 助けて help!
tatemono 建物 building
tateru 建てる to build
tatoeba 例えば such as, for example
tatsu 立つ to stand
tatta hitotsuno たった一つの sole, only
tatta ima たった今 just now
tatta no たったの just, only
tatta~dake たった~だけ only
tazuneru 尋ねる to ask about, to enquire
tazuneru 訪ねる to go around, to visit, to stop by, to pay a visit
te 手 hand
tēburukurosu テーブルクロス tablecloth
tēburumatto テーブルマット tablemat
tegami 手紙 letter
tegoro na 手ごろな reasonable (price)
tehai 手配 arrangements, planning
teian 提案 suggestion
teian suru 提案する to suggest
teido 程度 degree, level
teikyō 提供 offering
teikyō suru 提供する to offer, to suggest
teiryūjo 停留所 stop (bus, train)

teisei suru 訂正する to correct
teishutsu 提出 handing out, submission
teki 敵 enemy
tekisetsu na 適切な appropriate, fitting, suitable
tekubi 手首 wrist
ten 点 point, dot
tenimotsu 手荷物 baggage, luggage
ten'in 店員 sales assistant, shopkeeper
tenisu テニス tennis
tenji 展示 display
tenji suru 展示する to display
tenjō 天井 ceiling
tenkeiteki na 典型的な typical
tenken suru 点検する to inspect
tenki 天気 weather
tenpi 天火 oven
tēpu no rokuon テープの録音 tape recording
terebi テレビ TV, television
tesūryō 手数料 fee
tetsu no 鉄の iron
tīshatsu ティーシャツ T-shirt
~to ~と and, with
~to hanarete ~と離れて apart from
~to hikaku suru ~と比較する compared with
~to omowareru ~と思われる to seem
~to onaji ~と同じ the same as
~to~ryōhō ~と~両方 both ... and
to 戸 door
tō 党 party (political)
tō 塔 tower
toboshii 乏しい scarce
tobu 跳ぶ to jump
tōchaku 到着 arrival
tōchaku suru 到着する to arrive, to reach, to get to

tochi 土地 land
tochū de 途中で on the way
tōfu 豆腐 beancurd, tofu
tōgarashi 唐辛子 chilli pepper
tōgarashisōsu 唐辛子ソース chilli sauce
toho de 徒歩で on foot
tōhyō suru 投票する to vote
tōi 遠い far
toire トイレ toilet, restroom
tojiru 閉じる to shut
tokidoki 時々 from time to time, sometimes
tokoro de ところで by the way
tokoya 床屋 barber
toku ni 特に particularly, especially
tokubetsu na 特別な special
tokubetsu no 特別の extra
tokuchō 特徴 characteristics
tokei 時計 clock, watch
tomato トマト tomato
tomaru 止まる to stop (by itself)
toomeru 止める to stop (something)
tomo ni 共に together
tomodachi 友達 friend
tomonau 伴う to involve, to be accompanied by
tōmorokoshi トウモロコシ corn, maize
tonari ni 隣に next to
tora トラ tiger
toraeru 捕らえる to capture
torakku トラック truck
toranpu トランプ cards
tori 鳥 bird
torikesu 取り消す to cancel
tōrikosu 通り越す to pass, to go past
toriniku 鶏肉 poultry

torinozoku 取り除く to remove
tōrinukete 通り抜けて through, past
tōroku suru 登録する to register
toshi 都市 city
toshi 年 age, year
toshi no 都市の urban
toshitotta 年取った old (of persons)
toshokan 図書館 library
totemo とても very
totoonoeru 整える to arrange
totte 取っ手 handle
tōtte 通って via
tsugi ni 次に next, secondly
tsugi no 次の next (in line, sequence), the following
tsuiyasu 費やす to spend
tsūjō no 通常の regular, normal
tsūka 通貨 currency
tsukaeru 仕える to serve
tsukaifurushita 使い古した(worn out (clothes, appliances))
tsukamaeru 捕まえる to catch
tsukamu つかむ to hold, to grasp
tsukarekitta 疲れ切った burned down, exhausted
tsukareta 疲れた weary, worn out, tired
tsukau 使う to use
tsukeru つける to switch on, to turn (something) on
tsuki 月 moon
tsukitōshita 突き通した pierced, penetrated
tsukue 机 table
tsukue o naraberu 机を並べる to lay the table
tsukuru 作る to create, to make
tsumaranai つまらない boring
tsumasaki つま先 toe
tsume 爪 nail (finger, toe)
tsumikomu 積み込む to load up

tsumini 積み荷 load
tsureai つれあい partner, spouse
tsuru 釣る to fish
tsute つて contact, connection
tsutsumi 包み pack, wrap
tsūyakusha 通訳者 interpreter
tsuyoi 強い strong
tsuzuru 綴る to spell
uchiakeru 打ち明ける to admit, to confess
uchikatsu 打ち勝つ to overcome
uchimakasu 打ち負かす to beat, defeat
uchiwa うちわ fan (hand-held, for cooling)
uchiyoseru nami 打ち寄せる波 surf
ude 腕 arm
udedokei 腕時計 wristwatch
udewa 腕輪 bracelet
ue no 上の top
ue no hō e 上のほうへ up, upward
ueru 植える to plant
ugoki 動き movement, motion
ugoku 動く to move
uketoru 受け取る to accept, to get, to receive
uma 馬 horse
umareru 生まれる to be born
umi 海 ocean, sea
umigame 海ガメ sea turtle
umu 産む to give birth
un 運 luck
un'ei suru 運営する to manage, to run
unten suru 運転する to drive (a car)
uragaesu 裏返す over, to turn over
urareta 売られた sold
urayamashii 羨ましい envious
ureshiku omou うれしく思う to be glad

urikire 売り切れ sold out
urimono 売りもの for sale
uru 売る to sell
urusai うるさい noisy
ushi 牛 cow
ushinatta 失った lost (missing)
ushiro 後ろ back, rear, tail
ushiromuki ni 後ろ向きに backward
uso o tsuku 嘘をつく to lie, to tell a falsehood
uta 歌 song
utagau 疑う to doubt, to suspect
utau 歌う to sing
utsu 撃つ to shoot
utsu 打つ to strike, to hit
utsukushii 美しい beautiful
utsushi 写し copy
uttaeru 訴える to accuse, to sue
uwabaki 上履き slippers
wadai 話題 topic
wai-fai ワイ・ファイ Wi-Fi, wireless LAN
wakai 若い young
wakamono 若者 youth (young person)
wakareta 分かれた separate
wakasa 若さ youth (state of being young)
wakemae 分け前 portion, share
wakeru 分ける to separate
wakimizu 湧き水 spring (of water)
wakkusu ワックス wax
wakuwaku saseru わくわくさせる exciting
wakuwaku shita わくわくした excited
wan 湾 bay
wanpaku na 腕白な naughty
warau 笑う to laugh, to smile
wareware no 我々の our

waribiki 割引| discount
warui 悪い bad, wicked, wrong (morally)
warukunatte 悪くなって off, gone bad
wasureru 忘れる to forget
watashi no 私の my, mine
watashi 私 I, me
watasu 渡す to hand over
wazuka わずか small quantity
wazuka ni わずかに slightly
wazuka no わずかの a little, slight
webusaito ウェブサイト website
yaburu 破る to tear, to rip
yagi 山羊 goat
yakedo 火傷 burn (injury)
yakeru 焼ける to burn
yakigushi 焼き串 skewer
yakkyoku 薬局 drugstore, pharmacy
yaku 焼く to bake, to fry, to grill
yaku 約 about (approximately)
yakudatsu 役立つ to be useful
yakusoku suru 約束する to promise
yakuwari 役割 role
yama 山 mountain
yameru やめる to stop, to cease, to quit
yamete やめて Don't! Stop it!
yane 屋根 roof
yasai 野菜 vegetable
yasashii やさしい gentle, kind
yaseta やせた thin (person)
yashinau 養う to grow, to cultivate
yasui 安い cheap
yasumu 休む to rest, to relax
yasuuri 安売り sale (reduced prices)
yasuuri suru 安売りする to bargain

yatou 雇う to hire
yawarakai やわらかい soft
yoake 夜明け dawn
yōbi 曜日 day of the week
yobidasu 呼び出す to call, to summon
yobōsesshu 予防接種 vaccination
yobun no 余分の extra
yōgo suru 擁護する defend
yoi 良い well, good
yōi suru 用意する to arrange, to prepare
yoitabi o 良い旅を bon voyage!
yokin suru 預金する to deposit (put money in the bank)
yoki suru 予期する to expect
yokodaoshi ni suru 横倒しにする to lay sideways
yoko 横 side
yokogiru 横切る to cross, to go over
yokogitte 横切って across
yōkoso ようこそ welcome!
yoku dekimashita よくできました well done!
yoku aru よくある common, frequent
yoku hi no tōtta よく火の通った well-cooked, well-done
yokushitsu 浴室 bathroom
yoku~shita mono da よく~したものだ used to do something
yōkyū suru 要求する to demand
yōmō 羊毛 wool
yomu 読む to read
yon 四 four
yonjū 四十 forty
yopparau 酔っ払う to get drunk
~yori ~より than
yori warui より悪い worse
yori yoi よりよい better
Yoroppa ヨーロッパ Europe
yoru 夜 night

yoru ni 夜に at night
yoru no 夜の of the night
yoruosoku 夜遅く late at night
yōsai 要塞 fortress
yōshi 用紙 form (to fill out)
yosoou 装う to pretend
yotei 予定 program, schedule, plan
yowai 弱い weak
yoyaku 予約 reservation, booking
yoyaku suru 予約する to reserve (ask for in advance)
yubi 指 finger
yūbin 郵便 post, mail
yūbinbutsu 郵便物 mail, post
yūbinkyoku 郵便局 post office
yubiwa 指輪 ring (jewelry)
yūfuku na 裕福な well off, wealthy
yūga na 優雅な elegant
yūgata 夕方 evening
yūguredoki 夕暮れ時 dusk
yuiitsu no 唯一の single (only one)
yuka 床 floor
yukai na 愉快的 amusing, comical
yuki 雪 snow
yuki ga furu 雪が降る to snow
yukkuri ゆっくり slowly
yūkō na 有効な valid, effective
yukuefumei 行方不明 missing (lost person)
yūkyū no 有給の paid
yume 夢 dream
yume o miru 夢を見る to dream
yūmei na 有名な famous
yūnō na 有能な capable
yunyū 輸入 to import
yunyū suru 輸入する to import

yuri ugokasu 揺り動かす to swing
yurui ゆるい loose, not tight
yurusu 許す to forgive
yūshoku 夕食 dinner, evening meal
yūshōsha 優勝者 champion
yūshū na 優秀な excellent
yushutsu 輸出 export
yushutsu suru 輸出する to export
yūsō 郵送 mailing
yūzai 有罪 guilty (of a crime)
zaiakukan o kanjiru 罪悪感を感じる to feel guilty
zairyō 材料 material, ingredient
zankoku na 残酷な cruel
zan'nen 残念 what a shame!
zan'nen da 残念だ what a pity!
zan'nen nagara 残念ながら unfortunately
zasshi 雑誌 magazine
zenbu de 全部で altogether, in total
zenkei 全景 panorama
zenmen 前面 front
zenpō ni 前方に forward, in front
zenshin suru 前進する to advance, to go forward
zenshu no 全種の every kind of
zentaikara mite 全体から見て on the whole
zentai no 全体の entire
zero 零 zero
zō 象 elephant
zō 像 statue
zōge 象牙 ivory
zōka 増加 rise, increase
zubon ズボン pants, trousers
zuga 図画 drawing
zuibun ずいぶん quite (very)
zuii no 随意の optional

zunguri shita ずんぐりした stout, chubby

Dictionary

English—Japanese

able to ~suru koto ga dekiru ～すること ができる

about (approximately) yaku 約, ōyoso おおよそ

about (regarding) ~ni tsuite ～について

above ~yori ue ni ～より上に

abroad gaikoku de 外国で

absent kesseki 欠席

accept, to uketoru 受け取る

accident jiko 事故

accidentally gūzen ni 偶然に

accommodation shukuhakujo 宿泊所

accompany, to dōhan suru 同伴する

according to ~ni yori ～により

accuse, to uttaeru 訴える

ache itami 痛み

ache, to itamu 痛む

acquaintance shiriai 知り合い

acquainted, to be ~o shitteiru ～を知っている

across yokogitte 横切って

across from ~no mukai ni ～の向かいに

act, to furumau 振舞う

action kōdō 行動

activity katsudō 活動

actually jissai ni 実際に

add, to kuwaete 加えて

address jūsho 住所

admire, to shōsan suru 賞賛する

admit, to uchiakeru 打ち明ける

adult seijin no 成人の

advance, to (go forward) zenshin suru 前進する

advance money (deposit) maebarai suru 前払いする

advice jogen 助言

advise, to jogen suru 助言する

affect, to eikyō o ataeru 影響を与える

affection aiijō 愛情

afford, to ~suru yoyū ga aru ~する余裕がある

afraid kowagatte 恐がって

after ~no ato de ~のあとで

afternoon (3 pm to dusk) gogo 午後

afternoon (midday) shōgo 正午

afterwards (then) sonogo その後

again futatabi 再び

age toshi 年

ago mae ni 前に

agree, to dōi suru 同意する

agree to do something, to ~suru koto o shōdaku suru ~すること
を承諾する

agreed! shōchi shita 承知した

agreement dōi 同意

air kūki 空気

air conditioning eakon エアコン

airmail kōkūbin 航空便

airplane hikōki 飛行機

airport kūkō 空港

a little wazuka no わずかの

a lot takusan たくさん

alcohol (liquor) sake 酒

alike dōyō ni 同様に

alive ikite 生きて

all subete 全て

alley komichi 小道

allow, to kyoka suru 許可する

allowed to ~suru koto o kyoka sareru ～することを許可される

almost hotondo ほとんど

alone hitori de ひとりで

already sude ni すでに

also sara ni 更に

altogether zenbu de 全部で

although keredo mo けれども

always itsu mo いつも

ambassador taishi 大使

ambience fun'iki 雰囲気

America Amerika アメリカ

American Aamerika(-jin) no アメリカ（人）の

among ~no naka ni ～の中に

amount ryō 量

ancestor senzo 先祖

ancient kodai no 古代の

and ~to ～と, ~oyobi~ ～及び～

anger ikari 怒かり

angry okkotta 怒った

animal dōbutsu 動物

ankle kurubushi くるぶし

annoyed meiwaku shita 迷惑した

another (different) betsu no 別の

another (same again) mō hitotsu no もうひとつの

annual reinen no 例年の

answer (spoken) henji 返事

answer (written) henshin 返信

answer, to (spoken) henji o suru 返事をする

answer, to (written) henshin suru 返信する

answer the phone, to den-wa ni deru 電話にでる

answering machine rusu-ban-denwa 留守番電話

antiques kottōhin 骨董品

anus kōmon 肛門

anybody, anyone dareka だれか

anything nanika 何か
anywhere dokoka ni どこかに
ape ruijin'en 類人猿
apart hanarete 離れて
apartment apāto アパート
apologize, to ayamaru 謝る
apparently dōyara~rashii どうやら~らしい
appear, to arawareru 現れる
appearance mikake 見かけ
apple ringo りんご
appliance denki-kiki 電気機器
apply, to mōshikomu 申し込む
appointment ninmei 任命
approach, to (in space and time) chikazuku 近づく
appropriate tekisetsu na 適切な
approximately ōyoso おおよそ
April Shigatsu 四月
architecture kenchiku 建築
area chiiki 地域
argue, to giron suru 議論する
argument giron 議論
arm ude 腕
armchair hijikakeisu ひじ掛け椅子
arms buki 武器
army guntai 軍隊
around (approximately) ōyoso おおよそ
around (nearby) chikaku de 近くで
around (surrounding) shūhen ni 周辺に
arrange, to totonoeru 整える, yōi suru 用意する
arrangements (planning) tehai 手配
arrival tōchaku 到着
arrive, to tōchakusuru 到着する
art geijutsu 芸術
article (in newspaper) kiji 記事

artificial jinkō no 人工の
artist geijutsuka 芸術家
as well ~mo mata ~もまた
ashamed hajite 恥じて
Asia Ajia アジア
ask about, to tazuneru 尋ねる
ask for, to iraisuru 依頼する
asleep nemutte 眠って
assemble, to (gather) atsumeru 集める
assemble, to (assemble) kumiawaseru 組み合わせる
assist, to tasukeru 助ける
assistance enjo 援助
at ~de ~で, ~ni ~に
at home ie de 家で
at night yoru ni 夜に
at once sugu ni すぐに
atmosphere fun'iki 雰囲気
attack (in war) kōgeki 攻撃(戦争)
attack (with words) hinan 非難(言葉で)
attain, to tassei suru 達成する
attempt kokoromi 試み
attempt, to kokoromiru 試みる
attend, to shussekisuru 出席する
at the latest osokutomo 遅くとも
attitude taido 態度
attractive miryokuaru 魅力ある
aubergine nasu ナス
auction, to kyōbai ni kakeru 競売にかける
auctioned off kyōbai ni kakerareta 競売にかけられた
August Hachigatsu 八月
aunt oba おば
Australia ōsutoraria オーストラリア
authority (person in charge) ken'i 権威
authority (power) kenryokusha 権力者

automobile jidōsha 自動車
autumn aki 秋
available shiyōdekiru 使用できる
available, to make kanō ni suru 可能にする
average (numbers) heikin 平均
average (so-so, just okay) hitonami 人並み
awake me ga samete 目が覚めて
awake, to sameru 覚める
awaken, to okosu 起こす
aware kizuiteiru 気づいている
aware: to be aware of satoru 悟る
awareness jikaku 自覚
baby akachan 赤ちゃん
back (part of body) senaka 背中
back (rear) ushiro 後ろ
back, to go modoru 戻る
back up, to shiji suru 支持する
backward ushiromuki ni 後ろ向きに
bad warui 悪い
bad luck fuun 不運
bag kaban 鞆
baggage tenimotsu 手荷物
bake, to yaku 焼く
baked yakareta 焼かれた
bald hageeta はげた
ball bōru ボール
ballpoint pen bōrupen ボールペン
banana banana バナナ
bandage hōtai 包帯
bank (finance) ginkō 銀行
bank (of river) dote 土手
banquet enkai 宴会
bar (blocking way) kōshi 格子
bar (serving drinks) bā バー, sakaba 酒場

barber tokoya 床屋
barely karōjite かろうじて
bargain yasuuri 安売り
barren fumō no 不毛の
base (foundation) kiso 基礎
based on ~o moto ni shita ~を基にした
basic kihon 基本
basis dodai 土台
basket kago かご
basketball basukettobōru バスケットボール
bath furo 風呂
bathe, to (swim) oyogu 泳ぐ
bathe: to take a bath nyūyoku suru 入浴する
bathrobe basurōbu バスローブ, yukata 浴衣
bathroom yokushitsu 浴室
battle sentō 戦闘
bay wan 湾
be, to (exist) sonzai suru 存在する
be able to ~dekiru ~できる
beach bīchi ビーチ, hamabe 浜辺
bean mame 豆
beancurd tōfu 豆腐
beard agohige あごひげ
beat, to (to defeat) uchimakasu 打ち負かす
beat, to (to strike) hageshiku utsu 激しく打つ
beautiful kirei na きれいな, utsukushii 美しい
because nazenara なぜなら
become, to ~ni naru ~になる
become visible, to arawareru 現れる
bed beddo ベッド, shindai 寝台
bedroom shinshitsu 寝室
bedsheet shītsu シーツ
beef gyūniku 牛肉
beer bīru ビール

before (in front of) ~no mae ni ~の前に

before (in time) izen ni 以前に

begin, to hajimeru 始める

beginning hajime 始め

behave, to furumau 振舞う

behind ~no ushiro ni ~の後ろに

belief (faith) shin'nen 信念

believe, to shinjiru 信じる

belly hara 腹

belongings shoyūbutsu 所有物

belong to, to shozoku suru 所属する

below (downstairs) kaika ni 階下に

belt beruto ベルト

beside ~no toko ni ~の横に

besides sonoue その上

best saikō no 最高の

best wishes gotakō o inorimasu ご多幸を祈ります

better yoriyoi よりよい

better (improve) genki ni naru 元気になる, yokunaru よくなる

between ~no aida ni ~の間に

bicycle jitensha 自転車

big ōkii 大きい

bill seikyūsho 請求書

billion jūoku 十億

bird tori 鳥

birth, to give umu 産む

birthday tanjōbi 誕生日

biscuit (cookie) bisuketto ビスケット, kukkī クッキー

biscuit (cracker) kurakkā クラッカー

bit (slightly) sukoshi 少し

bite, to kamu 噛む

bitter nigai 苦い

black kuroi 黒い

black beans kuromame 黒豆

blame, to semeru 責める
bland onwa na 温和な
blanket mōfu 毛布
blind mōmoku no 盲目の
blood chi 血
blouse burausu ブラウス
blue aoi 青い
board, to (bus, train) jōsha suru 乗車する
boat bōto ボート, kobune 小船
body karada 体
boil, to futtō suru 沸騰する
boiled nita 煮た
bone hone 骨
book hon 本
border (between countries) kokkyō 国境
border (edge) rinkaku 輪郭
bored taikutsushita 退屈した
boring tsumaranai つまらない
born, to be umareru 生まれる
borrow, to kariru 借りる
boss jōshi 上司
both ryōhō 両方
both ... and ~to~ryōhō ~と~両方
bother, to jamasuru 邪魔する
bottle bin 瓶
bottom (base) kontei 根底
bottom (buttocks) shiri 尻
boundary kyōkaisen 境界線
bowl donburi どんぶり
box hako 箱
box (cardboard) danbōrubako 段ボール箱
boy otoko no ko 男の子
boyfriend kareshi 彼氏
bra burajā ブラジャー

bracelet udewa 腕輪

brain nō 脳

brain (mind) chiryoku 知力

brake burēki ブレーキ

brake, to burēki o kakeru ブレーキをかける

branch eda 枝

brave (daring) isamashii 勇ましい

bread pan パン

break, to konagona ni suru 粉々にする

break apart, to barabara ni suru ばらばらにする

break down, to (car, machine) koshōsuru 故障する

breakfast chōshoku 朝食

breakfast, to eat chōshoku o toru 朝食をとる

breasts mune 胸

bride hanayome 花嫁

bridegroom hanamuko 花婿

bridge hashi 橋

brief mijikai 短い

briefcase burīfukēsu ブリーフケース

briefs burīfu ブリーフ

bright akarui 明るい

bring, to mottekuru 持ってくる

bring up, to (children) sodateru 育てる(子供を)

bring up, to (topic) mochidasu 持ち出す

broad (spacious) hiroi 広い

broadcast, to hōsō suru 放送する

broken (does not work) kowareta 壊れた

broken (of bones, etc.) oreta 折れた

broken (shattered) konagona ni kowareta 粉々に壊れた

broken off ~kara hazureta ~からはずれた

bronze dō 銅

broom hōki ほうき

broth sūpu スープ

brother (older) ani 兄

brother (younger) otōto 弟

brown chairoi 茶色い

bruise aza あざ

brush burashi ブラシ, hake はけ

brush, to migaku 磨く

bucket baketsu バケツ

Buddhism bukk'yō 仏教

Buddhist bukk'yōto 仏教徒

build, to tateru 建てる

building tatemono 建物

burn (injury) yakedo 火傷

burn, to yakeru 焼ける

burned down/out moetsukita 燃え尽きた, tsukarekitta 疲れ切った

bus basu バス

bus stop basutei バス停

business shōbai 商売

busy (crowded) nigiyaka na にぎやかな

busy (doing something) isogashii 忙しい

but demo でも

butter batā バター

butterfly chōchō 蝶々

buttocks shiri 尻

buy, to kau 買う

by (author, artist) ~ni yotte ~によって

by means of ~no hōhō de ~の方法で

by the way tokorode ところで

cabbage kyabetsu キャベツ

cabbage, Chinese hakusai 白菜

cake (pastry) kēki ケーキ, pai パイ

calculate, to keisan suru 計算する

calculator keisanki 計算機

call, to yobidasu 呼び出す

call on the telephone, to denwa o suru 電話をする

called yobareteiru 呼ばれている
calm odayaka na 穏やかな
camera kamera カメラ
can ~dekiru ~できる
can (may) ~shite mo yoi ~してもよい
can (tin) kan 缶
cancel, to torikesu 取り消す
candle rōsoku ろうそく
candy ame 飴
capable of yūnō na 有能な
capture, to toraeru 捕らえる
car jidōsha 自動車
cardboard bōrugami ボール紙
cards (game) toranpu トランプ
care for, to konomu 好む
care of, to take sewa o suru 世話をする
careful! ki o tsukete 気をつけて
carpet jūtan 絨毯
carrot ninjin 人参
carry, to hakobu 運ぶ
carve, to horu 彫る
carving chōkoku 彫刻
cash genkin 現金
cash a check, to kogitte o kankinsuru 小切手を換金する
cat neko 猫
catch, to tsukamaeru 捕まえる
cauliflower karifurawā カリフラワー
cause gen'in 原因
cautious chūi bukai 注意深い
cave hora'ana 洞穴
CD shīdī シーディー
CD-ROM shīdī romu シーディーロム
ceiling tenjō 天井
celebrate, to iwau 祝う

celery serori セロリ

cell phone keitai denwa 携帯電話

center (of city) hankagai 繁華街

center chūshin 中心

central chūshin no 中心の

century seiki 世紀

ceremony gishiki 儀式

certain tashika na 確かな

certainly! mochiron もちろん

certificate shōsho 証書

chair isu 椅子

challenge chōsen 挑戦

champion yūshōsha 優勝者

chance kikai 機会

chance, by gūzen ni 偶然に

change kozeni 小銭

change, to (clothes) kigaeru 着替える

change, to (conditions, situations) kawaru 変わる

change, to (money) kankin suru 換金する

change one's mind, to kangae o kaeru 考えを変える, ki ga
kawaru 気が変わる

character (personality) seikaku 性格

character (written) moji 文字

characteristic dokutoku no 独特の

chase, to oikakeru 追いかける

chase away/out oiharau 追い払う

cheap yasui 安い

cheat peten ぺてん

cheat, to damasu だます

cheating (in a test/exam) kanningu カンニング

check, to tashikameru 確かめる

cheek hō 頬

cheers! kanpai 乾杯

cheese chīzu チーズ

chess chesu チェス
chest (box) seiridansu 整理だんす
chest (breast) mune 胸
chew, to kamu 噛む
chicken niwatori 鶏
child (offspring) kodomo 子供
child (young person) kodomo 子供
chilled hiyasareta 冷やされた
chin ago あご
China chūgoku 中国
chocolate chokorēto チョコレート
choice sentaku 選択
choose, to erabu 選ぶ
chopsticks hashi 箸
Christian Kirisutokyō(to) no キリシト教(徒)の
Christianity Kirisutokyō キリシト教
church kyōkai 教会
cigarette tabako タバコ
cinema eiga(kan) 映画(館)
circle en 円, maru 丸
citizen shimin 市民
citrus kankitsurui かんきつ類
city toshi 都市, machi 町, shi 市
class (category) bumon 部門
classes (at university) kurasu クラス, jugyō 授業
clean kirei na きれいな
clean, to kirei ni suru きれいにする
cleanliness seiketsu 清潔
clear (of weather) hareta 晴れた
clever kashikoi かしこい
climate kikō 気候
climb onto, to yojinoboru よじ登る
climb up, to (hills, mountains) noboru 登る
clock okidokei 置き時計

close, to shimaru 閉まる
close to sugu soba no すぐそばの
close together kitsui きつい
closed (door) shimatta 閉まった
closed (road) heisa 閉鎖
closed (shop) heiten 閉店
cloth nuno 布
clothes, clothing fuku 服
cloudy (overcast) kumotta 曇った
co-worker dōryō 同僚
coat (jacket) jaketto ジャケット, uwagi 上着
coat (overcoat) kōto コート, gaitō 外套
coconut kokonattsu ココナッツ
coffee kōhī コーヒー
coin kōka 硬貨
cold samui 寒い
cold (flu) kaze 風邪
colleague dōryō 同僚
collide, to shōtotsu suru 衝突する
collision shōtotsu 衝突
color iro 色
comb kushi 櫛
come, to kuru 来る
come back fukki 復帰
come in, to ~ni hairu ~に入る
come on sā ikō さあ行こう
comfortable kokochi yoi 心地良い
command (order) meirei 命令
command, to meirei suru 命令する
common yoku aru よくある
company kaisha 会社, kigyō 企業
compare, to hikaku suru 比較する
compared with ~to hikaku shite ~と比較して
compel, to shiiru 強いる

compete, to kyōsō suru 競争する
competition kyōsō 競争
complain, to fuhei o kobosu 不平をこぼす
complaint fuhei 不平, kujō 苦情
complete (finished) kansei shita 完成した
complete (thorough) kanpeki na 完璧な
complete (whole) subete sorotta 全てそろった
complete, to kanzen ni suru 完全にする
completely kanzen ni 完全に
complicated fukuzatsu na 複雑な
compose, to (letters, books, music) kaku 書く
composition sakuhin 作品
compulsory hissu no 必須の, gimuteki na 義務的な
computer konpyūtā コンピューター
concentrate, to shūchū suru 集中する
concerning ~ni kanshite ~に関して
condition (pre-condition) jōken 条件
condition (status) jōkyō 状況
confectionery kashi 菓子
confess, to uchiakeru 打ち明ける
confidence jishin 自信
confidence, to have jishin o motsu 自信を持つ
Confucianism Jukyō 儒教
confuse, to konwaku saseru 困惑させる
confused (in a mess) konran shita 混乱した
confused (mentally) konwaku shita 困惑した
confusing magirawashii 紛らわしい
congratulations! omedetō おめでとう
connect together, to renketsu suru 連結する
conscious of, to be jikaku suru 自覚する
consider, to (to think over) kōryo suru 考慮する
consult, to sōdan suru 相談する
contact, connection kone コネ, tsute つて
contact, to renraku suru 連絡する

continent tairiku 大陸

continue, to keizoku suru 継続する

convenient benri na 便利な

conversation kaiwa 会話

cook (person) kokku コック, ryōrinin 料理人

cook, to ryōri suru 料理する

cooked chōri sareta 調理された

cooker (stove) konro コンロ

cookie (sweet biscuit) kukkī クッキー, bisuketto ビスケット

cooking ryōri 料理

cool suzushii 涼しい

cool, to samasu 冷ます

copper dō 銅

copy utsushi 写し

corner kado 角

correct seikaku na 正確な

correct, to teisei suru 訂正する

correspond, to (write letters) buntsū suru 文通する

corridor rōka 廊下

cost (expense) hiyō 費用

cost (price) kakaku 価格

cotton men 綿

couch sofā ソファ, nagaisu 長い

cough seki 咳

cough, to sekikomu 咳きこむ

could hyottoshitara ~ka mo shirenai ひょっとしたら～かもしれない

count, to kazoeru 数える

counter (for paying, buying tickets) kauntā カウンター,
kanjōdai 勘定台

country (nation) kokka 国家

country (rural area) inaka 田舎

courtyard nakaniwa 中庭

cover, to ōu 覆う

cow ushi 牛
cracked kudaketa 砕けた
cracker kurakkā クラッカー
crafts kōgei 工芸
craftsperson kōgeika 工芸家
crazy kurutta 狂った
create, to tsukuru 作る
criminal hanzaisha 犯罪者
cross, to (go over) yokogiru 横切る
crowded konzatsu shita 混雑した
cruel zankoku na 残酷な
cry, to naku 泣く
cry out, to sakebu 叫ぶ
cucumber kyuuri キュウリ
culture bunka 文化
cup koppu コップ, chawan 茶碗
cupboard shokkidana 食器棚, todana 戸棚
cure (medical) chiryō 治療
cured hozon sareta 保存された
currency tsūka 通貨
curtain kâten カーテン
custom shūkan 習慣, dentō 伝統
cut (slice) kireme 切れめ
cut, to kiru 切る
cute (appealing) kawaii かわいい
daily mainichi no 毎日の
damage songai 損害
damage, to ~o sokonau ~を損なう
damp shikke no aru 湿気のある
dance odori 踊り
dance, to odoru 踊る
danger kiken 危険
dangerous kiken na 危険な
dark kurai 暗い

date (of the month) hizuke 日付
date of birth tanjōbi 誕生日
daughter musume 娘
daughter-in-law girino musume 義理の娘
dawn yoake 夜明け
day hi 日
day after tomorrow asatte 明後日
day before yesterday ototoi 一昨日
day of the week yōbi 曜日
day off kyūjitsu 休日
daydream, to kūsō suru 空想する
dead shinda 死んだ
deaf chōkakushōgai no aru 聴覚障害のある
death shi 死
debt shakkin 借金
deceive, to damasu だます
December jūnigatsu 十二月
decide, to kimeru 決める
decision kesshin 決心
decline, to (get less) kakō suru 下降する
decorate, to kazaru 飾る
decrease, to heru 減る
deep fukai 深い
defeat, to uchimakasu 打ち負かす
defect ketten 欠点
defend, to (in war) bōgyo suru 防御する(戦争)
defend, to (with words) yōgo suru 擁護する(言葉で)
definite kakutei shita 確定した
degree (level) teido 程度
degrees (temperature) ondo 温度
delay okure 遅れ
delayed okureta 遅れた
delicious oishii おいしい
deliver, to haitatsu suru 配達する

demand, to yōkyū suru 要求する
depart, to shuppatsu suru 出発する
department bu 部, ka 課
department store hyakkaten 百貨店, depāto デパート
departure shuppatsu 出発
depend on, to izon suru 依存する
deposit, to (put money in the bank) yokin suru 預金する
descendant shison 子孫
describe, to byōsha suru 描写する
desert (arid land) sabaku 砂漠
desert, to (abandon) hōki suru 放棄する
desire kibō 希望, ganbō 願望
desire, to nozomu 望む
desk desuku デスク, benkyōzukue 勉強机
dessert dezāto デザート
destination mokutekichi 目的地
destroy, to hakai suru 破壊する
detergent senjōzai 洗剤
determined danko to shita 断固とした
develop, to (happen) hatten suru 発展する
development hatten 発展, kaiatsu 開発
dial, to (telephone) denwa o kakeru 電話をかける
dialect hōgen 方言
diamond daiyamondo ダイヤモンド
diary nikki 日記
dictionary jisho 辞書
die, to shinu 死ぬ
difference (discrepancy in figures) sai 差異
difference (in quality) sōi 相違
different (other) hoka no ほかの
difficult muzukashii 難しい
dinner yūshoku 夕食
dinner, to eat yūshoku o toru 夕食をとる
direction hōkō 方向

director (of company) jūyaku 重役
dirty kitanai 汚い
disappointed shitsubō shita 失望した
disaster sainan 災難
discount waribiki 割引
discover, to hakkensuru 発見する
discuss, to gironsuru 議論する
discussion giron 議論
disease byōki 病気
disgusting mukatsuku yō na むかつくような
dish sara 皿
dish (particular food) ryōri 料理
dislike, to konomanai 好まない, kirau 嫌う
display tenji 展示
display, to tenji suru 展示する
distance kyori 距離
disturb, to samatageru 妨げる
disturbance bōgai 妨害
divide, to bunkatsu suru 分割する
divided by ~de warareta ~で割られた
divorce, to rikon suru 離婚する
divorced rikon shita 離婚した
do, to (perform an action) ~suru ~する
do one's best besuto o tsukusu ベストを尽くす
doctor isha 医者
document shorui 書類
do(es) not work (spoiled) kowareta 壊れた
dog inu 犬
done (cooked) yoku hi no tōtta よく火の通った
done (finished) sunda 済んだ
door to 戸, doa ドア
double nibai no 二倍の
doubt, to utagau 疑う
down, downward shita e 下へ

downstairs kaika e 階下へ
downtown hankagai 繁華街
dozen dāsu ダース
draw, to hiku 引く
drawer hikidashi 引き出し
drawing zuga 図画
dream yume 夢
dream, to yume o miru 夢を見る
dress doresu ドレス
dressed, to get kiru 着る
drink nomimono 飲み物
drink, to nomu 飲む
drive, to (a car) unten suru 運転する(車)
drought kanbatsu 干ばつ
drown, to oboreru おぼれる
drug (medicine) kusuri 薬
drugstore yakkyoku 薬局
drunk yopparatta 酔っ払った
dry kawaita 乾いた
dry (weather) kansō shita 乾燥した
dry, to kawakasu 乾かす
duck ahiru アヒル
dull (boring) taikutsu na 退屈な
dull (weather) don'yori shita (tenki) どんよりした(天気)
dumpling dango 団子
during ~no aida ni ~の間に
dusk yūgure doki 夕暮れ時
dust hokori 埃
duty (responsibility) gimu 義務
DVD dibuidī デーブイディー
each ~goto ni ~毎に
ear mimi 耳
earrings iyaringu イアリング
earlier maemotte 前もって

early hayai 早い

early in the morning sōchō ni 早朝に

earn, to eru 得る

earth dojō 土壌

Earth chikyū 地球

earthquake jishin 地震

east higashi 東

easy kantan na 簡単な

eat, to taberu 食べる

economical keizaiteki na 経済的な

economy keizai 経済

edge hashi 端

educate, to kyōiku suru 教育する

education kyōiku 教育

effect eikyō 影響

effort doryoku 努力

effort: to make an effort doryoku suru 努力する

egg tamago 卵

eggplant nasu ナス

either dochiraka ippō no どちらか一方の

elbow hiji ひじ

elder nenchō no 年長の

election senkyo 選挙

electric denki no 電気の

electricity denki 電気

electronic denshi no 電子的の

elegant yūga na 優雅な

elephant zō 象

elevator erebētā エレベーター

else: anything else sonota no その他の

else: or else ~de nakereba ~でなければ

email (message) denshi mēru 電子メール

email, to denshi mēru o okuru 電子メールを送る

email address denshi mēru adoresu 電子メールアドレス

embarrassed batsu no warui ばつの悪い
embarrassing hazukashii 恥ずかしい
embassy taishikan 大使館
embrace, to idaku 抱く
emergency kinkyūjitai 緊急事態
emoticon kaomoji 顔文字, emōtikon エモーティコン
emotion kanjō 感情
empty kara no 空の
end (finish) owari 終わり
end (tip) hashi 端
end, to owaru 終る
enemy teki 敵
energy katsuryoku 活力
engaged (to be married) kon'yakuchū no 婚約中の
engine enjin エンジン
England Igrisu イギリス
English Igrisu(-jin) no イギリス(人)の
enjoy oneself, to tanoshimu 楽しむ
enjoyable tanoshii 楽しい
enough jūbun na 十分な
enter, to hairu 入る
entire zentai no 全体の
entirety zentai 全体
entrance genkan 玄関, iriguchi 入口
envelope fūtō 封筒
envious urayamashii 羨ましい
environment kankyō 環境
envy urayamashi sa 羨ましさ
equal dōtō no 同等の
error machigai 間違い
escalator esukarētā エスカレーター
especially toku ni 特に
establish, to setsuritsu suru 設立する, juritsu suru 樹立する
essay shōron 小論, essē エッセー

estimate, to mitsumoru 見積もる
even (also) issō いっそう
even (smooth) nameraka na なめらかな
evening yūgata 夕方
evening meal yūshoku 夕食
event dekgoto 出来事
ever katsute かつて
every (all) subete no 全ての
every (each) ~goto ni ~毎に
every kind of zenshu no 全種の
every time itsu mo いつも
everybody, everyone subete no hito 全ての人, ban'nin 万人
everything subete no mono 全ての物
everywhere doko de mo どこでも
exact, exactly seikaku na 正確な
exactly! sono tōri その通り
exam shiken 試験
examine, to chōsa suru 調査する
example rei 例
example, for tatoeba 例えば
excellent yūshū na 優秀な
except ~o nozoite ~を除いて
exchange, to (money) kankin suru 換金する
exchange rate kawase-sōba 為替相場
excited wakuwaku shita わくわくした
exciting wakuwaku saseru わくわくさせる
excuse me! (apology) gomen nasai ごめんなさい
excuse me! (attracting attention) sumimasen すみません
excuse me! (getting past) sumimasen すみません
exist, to sonzai suru 存在する
exit, to (go out) deru 出る
exit deguchi 出口
expand, to kakudai suru 拡大する
expect, to yokisuru 予期する

expense hiyō 費用, shuppi 出費
expensive kōgaku no 高額の, takai 高い
experience keiken 経験
expert senmonka 専門家
explain, to setsumei suru 説明する
export yushutsu 輸出
export, to yushutsu suru 輸出する
express, to noberu 述べる
extension (telephone) denwa no koki 電話の子機, naisen 内線
extra yobun no 余分の, tokubetsu no 特別の
extremely kyokutan ni 極端に
eye me 目
eyebrow mayuge 眉毛
eyeglasses megane めがね
fabric (textile) nuno 布
face kao 顔
face, to chokumen suru 直面する
Facebook Feisubukku フェイスブック
fact jijitsu 事実
factory kōjō 工場
fail, to shippaisuru 失敗する
failure shippai 失敗
fall (season) aki 秋
fall, to ochiru 落ちる
fall over, to korobu 転ぶ
false (imitation) nise no にせの
false (not true) fuseikaku na 不正確な
family kazoku 家族
famous yūmei na 有名な
fan (admirer) fan ファン
fan (for cooling) senpūki 扇風機, uchiwa うちわ
fancy kūsō 空想
far tōku e 遠くへ, tōi 遠い
fare jōsharyōkin 乗車料金

fast (rapid) hayai 速い

fast, to danjiki suru 断食する

fat (grease) shibō 脂肪

fat (plump) futotta 太った

father chichi 父

father-in-law giri no chichi 義理の父

fault kashitsu 過失

fax, to fakkusu o okuru ファックスを送る

fear osore 恐れ

February Nigatsu 二月

fee ryōkin 料金, tesūryō 手数料

feed, to tabemono o ataeru 食べ物を与える

feel, to kanjiru 感じる

feeling kanji 感じ

female josei 女性

fence saku 柵

ferry ferī フェリー, watashibune 渡し舟

fertile hiyoku na 肥沃な

festival matsuri 祭り

fetch, to tottekuru 取ってくる

fever hatsunetsu 発熱

few sukunai 少ない

fiancé kon'yakusha 婚約者

fiancée kon'yakusha 婚約者

field (empty space) akichi 空き地

fierce araarashii 荒々しい

fight, to (physically) kenka けんか

fight over, to ~de kenka suru ~で喧嘩する

figure (number) sūji 数字

fill, to mitasu 満たす

fill out, to (form) kakikomu 書き込む

film (movie) eiga 映画

final saigo no 最後の

finally saigo ni 最後に

find, to mitsukeru 見つける
fine (healthy) genki na 元気な
fine (punishment) bakkin 罰金
finger yubi 指
finish saigo 最後
finish off, to sumasu 済ます
finished (complete) kanseishita 完成した
finished (none left) owatta 終わった
fire honō 炎
fire someone, to kaikosuru 解雇する
fireworks hanabi 花火
firm (definite) danko to shita 断固とした
firm (mattress) katai 硬い
firm (company) kigyō 企業
first ichiban no 一番の
first mazu まず, hajime ni 初めに
fish sakana 魚
fish, to tsuru 釣る
fit, to gatchi suru 合致する
fitting (suitable) tekisetsu na 適切な
fix, to (a time, appointment) kimeru 決める
fix, to (repair) shūri suru 修理する
flag hata 旗
flashlight kaichūdentō 懐中電灯
flat (apartment) apāto アパート
flat (smooth) heitan na 平坦な
flight hikō 飛行
flood kōzui 洪水
floor yuka 床
flour komugiko 小麦粉
flower hana 花
flu kaze 風邪, infuruenza インフルエンザ
fluent ryūchō na 流暢な
flute furūto フルート, fue 笛

fly (insect) hae 蠅

fly, to tobu 飛ぶ

fog kiri 霧

fold, to oru 折る

follow along, to ~ni tsuzuku 〜に続く

follow behind, to ushirokara tsuitekuru 後ろからついてくる

following tsugi no 次の

fond of ~o kononde 〜を好んで

food tabemono 食べ物

foot ashi 足

for ~suru tame no 〜するための

for ever eien ni 永遠に

forbid, to kinshi suru 禁止する

forbidden kinjirareta 禁じられた

force chikara 力

force, to shiiru 強いる

forehead odedo おでこ

foreign gaikoku no 外国の

foreigner gaikokujin 外国人

forest mori 森

forget, to wasureru 忘れる

forget about, to ~ni tsuite wasureru 〜について忘れる

forgive, to yurusu 許す

forgiveness kandai sa 寛大さ

forgotten wasurerareta 忘れられた

fork fōku フォーク

form (shape) katachi 形

form (to fill out) yōshi 用紙

fortress yōsai 要塞

fortunately kōun ni mo 幸運にも

forward zenpō ni 前方に

free (independent) dokuritsu-shita 独立した

free of charge muryō de 無料で

freedom jiyū 自由

freeze kōritsuku 凍りつく
frequent hinpan na 頻繁な
fresh shinsen na 新鮮な
Friday kin'yōbi 金曜日
fried yakareta 焼かれた
friend tomodachi 友達
friendly (outgoing) shakōteki na 社交的な
frightened odorōita 驚いた
from ~kara ~から
front zenmen 前面
front: in front of ~no mae ni ~の前に
frown: with a frown kao o shikameta 顔をしかめた
frown, to kao o shikameru 顔をしかめる
frozen kōtta 凍った
fruit kudamono 果物
fry, to yaku 焼く
fulfill, to hatasu 果たす
full ippai no いっぱいの
full (eaten one's fill) o-naka ga ippai no お腹がいっぱいの
fun: to have fun tanoshimu 楽しむ
function, to (work) kinō suru 機能する
funds, funding shikin 資金
funeral sōshiki 葬式
funny okashii おかしい
furniture kagu 家具
further (additional) sonoue その上
fussy konomi ni urusai 好みにうるさい
future shōrai 将来
gamble kakegoto 賭け事, gyanburu ギャンブル
game shiai 試合
garage (for parking) shako 車庫
garage (for repairs) jidōsha-shūrikōjō 自動車修理工場
garbage gomi ごみ
garden (yard) niwa 庭

garden (park) kōen 公園
garlic nin'niku にんにく
garment irui 衣類
gasoline gasorin ガソリン
gasoline station kyūyujo 給油所
gate mon 門
gather, to atsumeru 集める
gender seibetsu 性別
general (all-purpose) ippanteki na 一般的な
generally ippan ni 一般に
generous kandai na 寛大な
gentle yasashii やさしい
gesture miburi 身振り
get in touch with, to (contact) renraku suru 連絡する
get, to (receive) uketoru 受け取る
get off, to (transport) kōsha suru 降車する
get on, to (transport) jōsha suru 乗車する
get up, to (from bed) okiru 起きる
get well soon hayaku naotte 早く治って
ghost obake お化け
gift okurimono 贈り物
ginger shōga 生姜
girl onna no ko 女の子
girlfriend kanojo 彼女
give, to ataeru 与える
given name na 名
glad ureshii うれしい
glass (for drinking) gurasu グラス
glass (material) garasu ガラス
glasses (spectacles) megane めがね
glutinous rice mochigome もち米
go, to iku 行く
go along, to (join) sanku suru 参加する
go around, to (visit) tazuneru 訪ねる

go back modoru 戻る
go for a walk, to sanpo ni iku 散歩に行く
go home, to kitaku suru 帰宅する
go out (fire, candle) kieru 消える
go out, to deru 出る
go over, to yokogiru 横切る
go to bed, to neru 寝る
go up, to (climb) noboru 登る
goal gōru ゴール, mokuhyō 目標
goat yagi 山羊
God kami 神
god gūzō 偶像, kami 神
goddess megami 女神
gold ōgon 黄金
golf gorufu ゴルフ
gone (finished) owatta 終わった
good yoi 良い
good luck! kōun o inoru 幸運を祈る
goodbye sayōnara さようなら
goodness! aramā あらまあ
government seifu 政府
gradually jojo ni 徐々に
grand sōdai na 壮大な
granddaughter magomusume 孫娘
grandfather sofu 祖父
grandmother sobo 祖母
grandparents sofubo 祖父母
grandson magomusuko 孫息子
grapes budō 葡萄
grass kusa 草
grateful kansha shita 感謝した
grave haka 墓
gray haiiro no 灰色の
great (grand) sōdai na 壮大な

great (impressive) migoto na 見事な
green midori no 緑の
greens (vegetables) aoyasai 青野菜
greet, to aisatsu o suru 挨拶をする
greetings aisatsu 挨拶
grill, to yaku 焼く
ground jimen 地面
group gurūpu グループ, atsumari 集まり
grow: to be growing (plant) haeru 生える
grow, to (cultivate) yashinau 養う
grow larger, to ōkiku naru 大きくなる
grow up, to (child) soda-tsu 育つ
guarantee hoshōsho 保証書
guarantee, to hoshō suru 保証する
guard, to mamoru 守る
guess, to suisoku suru 推測する
guest kyaku 客
guide gaido ガイド, an'nainin 案内人
guidebook ryokōan'nai 旅行案内
guilty (of a crime) yūzai 有罪
guilty, to feel zaiakukan o kanjiru 罪悪感を感じる
hair kami 髪
half hanbun 半分
hall hiroma 広間, genkan 玄関
hand te 手
hand out, to teishutsusuru 提出する
hand over, to watasu 渡す
handicraft shukōgei 手工芸
handle totte 取っ手
handsome hansamu ハンサム
hang, to kakeru 掛ける
happen, to okoru 起こる
happened, what nani ga okita 何が起きた
happening dekgoto 出来事

happy shiawase na 幸せな
Happy birthday! tanjōbi omedetō 誕生日おめでとう
Happy New Year! akemashite omedetō 明けましておめでとう
harbor minato 港
hard (difficult) konnan na 困難な
hard (solid) katai 固い
hard disk hādodisuku ハードディスク
hardly hotondo~nai ほとんど~ない
hardworking kinben na 勤勉な
harmonious chōwa no toreta 調和のとれた
hat bōshi 帽子
hate, to ken'osuru 嫌悪する
hatred ken'okan 嫌悪感
have, to shoyūsuru 所有する
have to ~nakute wa ikenai ~なくてははいけない
head atama 頭
head for, to (toward) ~e mukau ~へ向かう
headdress kamikazari 髪飾り
healthy kenkōteki na 健康的な
hear, to kiku 聞く
heart shinzō 心臓
heat, to atatameru 温める
heavy omoi 重い
height takasa 高さ
hello! (on phone) moshimoshi もしもし
hello, hi kon'nichi wa こんにちは
help! tasukete 助けて
help, to tasukeru 助ける, tetsudau 手伝う
here koko ここ
hidden kakureta 隠れた
hide, to kakusu 隠す
high takai 高い
hill oka 丘
hinder, to samatageru 妨げる

hire, to yatou 雇う
history rekishi 歴史
hit (strike) dageki 打撃
hobby shumi 趣味
hold, to (grasp) tsukamu つかむ
hold back, to tamerau ためらう
hole ana 穴
holiday (festival) saijitsu 祭日
holiday (vacation) kyūka 休暇
holy shinsei na 神聖な
home, house ie 家
honest shōjiki na 正直な
honey hachimitsu 蜂蜜
hope, to nozomu 望む
hopefully kitai o motte 期待をもって
horse uma 馬
hospital byōin 病院
host shujin 主人
hot (spicy) karai 辛い
hot (temperature) atsui 熱い
hot spring onsen 温泉
hotel hōteru ホテル
hour jikan 時間
house ie 家
how? dono yō ni どのように
how are you? genki desu ka 元気ですか
however shikashinagara しかしながら
how long? donokurai どのくらい(時間)
how many? donokurai どのくらい(数)
how much? ikura いくら
how old? ikutsu いくつ
huge kyodai na 巨大な
human jinrui 人類
humid shikke no aru 湿気のある

humorous omoshiroi おもしろい
hundred hyaku 百
hundred thousand jūman 十万
hungry kūfuku no 空腹の
hurry up! isoide 急いで
hurt (injured) kizutsuita 傷ついた
hurt, to (cause pain) kizutsuku 傷つく
husband otto 夫
ice kōri 氷
ice cream aisukurīmu アイスクリーム
idea kangae 考え
identical dōitsu no 同一の
if moshi もし
ignore, to mushi suru 無視する
ignorant muchi no 無知の
illegal fuhō no 不法の
ill byōki no 病気の
illness byōki 病気
imagine, to sōzō suru 想像する
immediately sassoku 早速
impolite shitsurei na 失礼な, burei na 無礼な
import, to yunyū suru 輸入する
importance jūyō sa 重要さ
important jūyō na 重要な
impossible fukanō na 不可能な
impression: to make an impression inshōzokeru 印象付ける
impressive migoto na みごとな
in, at (space) ~ni ~に, ~de ~で
in (time, years) ~no aida ~の間, ~ni ~に
in addition ~ni kuwaete ~に加えて
in order that tame ni ために, yō ni ように
incense okō お香
incident jiken 事件
included, including ~o fukumete ~を含めて

increase zōka 増加

increase, to fuyasu 増やす

indeed! tashika ni 確かに

indigenous koyū no 固有の

industrious kinben na 勤勉な

inexpensive yasui 安い, anka na 安価な

influence eikyō 影響

inform, to shiraseru 知らせる

information jōhō 情報

information booth an'naijo 案内所

inhabitant jūnin 住人

injection chūsha 注射

injured kizutsuita 傷ついた

injury fushō 負傷

ink sumi 墨

inquire, to tazuneru 尋ねる

insane kyōki no 狂気の

insect konchū 昆虫

inside naibu 内部

inside of ~no naka ni ~の中に

inspect, to tenken suru 点検する

instead of ~no kawari ni ~の代わりに

instruct, to shiji suru 指示する

instrument dōgu 道具

insult bujoku 侮辱

insurance hoken 保険

intend, to ~suru tsumori dearu ~するつもりである

intended for ito sareta 意図された

intention ito 意図

interest (curiosity) kyōmi 興味

interest (money earned) rishi 利子

interested in ~ni kyōmi ga aru ~に興味がある

interesting kyōmi bukai 興味深い, omoshiroi 面白い

international kokusaiteki na 国際的な

Internet intānetto インターネット
interpreter tsūyakusha 通訳者
intersection kōsaten 交差点
into ~no naka ni ~の中に
introduce oneself, to jikoshōkai suru 自己紹介する
introduce someone, to shōkai suru 紹介する
invitation hatsumeï 発明
invite, to (ask along) sasou 誘う
invite, to (formally) shōtai suru 招待する
invoice shikirijō 仕切り状
involve, to tomonau 伴う
involved kan'yoshita 関与した
Ireland Airurando アイルランド
iron tetsu no 鉄の
iron, to (clothing) airon o kakeru アイロンをかける
Islam Isuramu イスラム
island shima 島
item (individual thing) hinmoku 品目
ivory zōge 象牙
jacket jaketto ジャケット, uwagi 上着
jail keimusho 刑務所
jam jamu ジャム
January ichigatsu 一月
Japan Nihon 日本
Japanese Nihon(-jin) no 日本（人）の
jaw ago あご
jealous shittobukai 嫉妬深い
jealousy shitto 嫉妬
jewelry hōsekirui 宝石類
job shigoto 仕事
join in, to sanku suru 参加する
join, to awaseru 合わせる
join together, to setsuzoku suru 接続する
joke jōku ジョーク, jōdan 冗談

journalist kisha 記者, jānarisuto ジャーナリスト

journey tabi 旅

juice jūsu ジュース, kajū 果汁

July Shichigatsu 七月

jump, to tobu 跳ぶ

June Rokugatsu 六月

jungle janguru ジャングル, mitsurin 密林

just (fair) kōhei na 公平な

just (only) tatta no たったの

just now tatta ima たった今

just so! sono tōri その通り

keep, to tamotsu 保つ

key (computer) kī キー

key (to room) kagi 鍵

keyboard (of computer) kībōdo キーボード

kill, to korosu 殺す

kilogram kiroguramu キログラム

kilometer kiromētā キロメートル

kind (generous) yasashii やさしい

kind (type) shurui 種類

king ōsama 王様

kiss kisu キス

kitchen daidokoro 台所

knee hiza 膝

knife kogatana 小刀, naifu ナイフ

knock, to nokkusuru ノックする

know (be acquainted with) chishikiga aru 知識がある

know, to shitteiru 知っている

knowledge chishiki 知識

Korea, North Kitachōsen 北朝鮮

Korea, South Kankoku 韓国

lacking kaketeiru 欠けている

ladder hashigo 梯子

ladle shakushi 杓子

lady fujin 婦人

lake mizuumi 湖

lamb (meat) hitsujiniku 羊肉, ramu ラム

lamp ranpu ランプ, shōmei 照明

land tochi 土地

land, to (plane) chakuriku suru 着陸する

lane komichi 小道

lane (of a highway) shasen 車線

language gengo 言語

large hiroi 広い, ōkii 大きい

last saigo no 最後の

last night sakuya 昨夜

last week senshū 先週

last year sakunen 昨年

late osoi 遅い

late at night yoruosoku 夜遅く

later sono go その後, ato de 後で

laugh, to warau 笑う

laugh at, to ~o warau ~を笑う

laws (legislation) hōritsu 法律

lawyer bengoshi 弁護士

layer sō 層

lazy taiman na 怠慢な

lead, to (to guide someone somewhere) an'nai suru 案内する

lead, to (as a leader) michi--biku 導く

leader shidōsha 指導者

leaf ha 葉

leak, to moreru 漏れる

learn, to narau 習う

least (smallest amount) saishō no 最小の

least: at least sukunakutomo 少なくとも

leather kawa 皮

leave, to shuppatsu suru 出発する

leave behind by accident, to okiwasureru 置き忘れる

lecture kōgi 講義

lecturer (at university) kōshi 講師（大学の）

left (remaining) nokori 残り

left-hand side hidarigawa 左側

leg ashi 脚

legal gōhō no 合法の

legend densetsu 伝説

lemon remon レモン

lend, to kasu 貸す

length nagasa 長さ

less (smaller amount) yori sukunaku より少なく

less (minus) ~o hiita ~を引いた

lessen, to sukunaku naru 少なくなる

lesson ressun レッスン, jugyō 授業

let, to kyoka suru 許可する

let someone know, to shiraseru しらせる

let's (suggestion) ~shiyō ~しよう

let's go sâ ikō さあ行こう

letter tegami 手紙

level (even, flat) taira na 平らな

level (height) onajitakasa no 同じ高さの

library toshokan 図書館

license (for driving) menkyoshō 免許証(運転)

lick, to nameru 舐める

lid futa ふた

lie, to (tell a falsehood) uso o tsuku 嘘をつく

lie down, to nesoberu 寝そべる

life seikatsu 生活

lifetime isshō 一生

lift, to (something) mochiageru 持ち上げる

lift, to give a (ride in car) noseteageru 乗せてあげる

lift, to (raise) takameru 高める

light (bright) akarui 明るい

light (lamp) shōmei 照明

light (not heavy) karui 軽い
lightning inazuma 稲妻
like (as) ~no yōna ~のような
like (be pleased by) ki ni iru 気に入る
likewise onaji yō ni 同じように
lime (citrus) raimu ライム
line (mark) sen 線
line (queue) gyōretsu 行列
line up, to narabu 並ぶ
lips kuchibiru 唇
liquor sake 酒
list hyō 表
listen, to kiku 聴く
listen to ~o kiku ~を聴く
literature bungaku 文学
little (not much) sukunai 少ない
little (small) chīsai 小さい
live, to (be alive) ikiteiru 生きている
live, to (stay in a place) sumu 住む
load tsumini 積み荷
load up, to tsumikomu 積み込む
located, to be ichi suru 位置する
lock jō 錠
lock, to jō o kakeru 錠を掛ける
lonely sabishii 寂しい
long nagai 長い
look! mite 見て
look, to ~no yō ni omoeru ~のように思える
look after, to sewa o suru 世話をする
look at, to miru 見る
look for, to sagasu 探す
look like, to ~no yō ni mieru ~のように見える
look out! ki o tsukete 気をつけて
looks mikake 見かけ

look up, to (find in book) kensaku suru (本を)検索する

loose (not in packet) tabanete inai 束ねていない

loose (wobbly) guratsuita ぐらついた

lose, to (be defeated) makeru 負ける

lose, to (mislay) okiwasureru 置き忘れる

lose money, to kane o nakusu 金をなくす

lost (can't find way) mayotta (道に)迷った

lost (missing) ushinatta 失った

lots of takusan no たくさんの

lottery takarakuji 宝くじ

loud onryō no aru 音量のある

love ai 愛

love, to ai suru 愛する, konomu 好む

lovely suteki na 素敵な

low hikui 低い

luck un 運

lucky kōun 幸運

luggage tenimotsu 手荷物

lunch chūshoku 昼食

lunch, to eat chūshoku o toru 昼食をとる

luxurious gōka na 豪華な

machine kikai 機械

machinery kikairui 機械類

magazine zasshi 雑誌

mail (post) yūbinbutsu 郵便物

mail, to yūsō suru 郵送する

main (most important) shuyō na 主要な

mainly omo ni 主に

major (important) jūyō na 重要な

make, to tsukuru 作る

make up, to (invent) detchiageru でっち上げる

makeshift maniwase no 間に合わせの

male dansei 男性

man otoko no hito 男の人

manage, to (run) un'eisuru 運営する
manager manējā マネージャー
manufacture, to seizōsuru 製造する
many takusan no たくさんの
map chizu 地図
March Sangatsu 三月
market ichiba 市場
married kekkon shita 結婚した
marry: to get married kekkon suru 結婚する
mask masuku マスク
massage massāji マッサージ
mat matto マット
match (game) shiai 試合
material (ingredient) zairyō 材料
matter (issue) mondai 問題
matter, it doesn't dō de mo ii どうでもいい
mattress mattoresu マットレス
May Gogatsu 五月
may ~ka mo shirenai ~かもしれない
maybe tabun 多分
meal shokuji 食事
mean (cruel) ijiwarui 意地悪い
mean, to (intend) ~suru tsumori ~するつもり
mean, to (word) imi suru 意味する
meaning imi 意味
meanwhile sono aida ni その間に
measure, to hakaru 計る
measurement sokutē 測定
measure out, to hakari wakeru 計り分ける
meat shokuniku 食肉
medical igaku no 医学の
medicine iyakuhin 医薬品
meet, to au 会う
meeting kaigō 会合

melon meron メロン

member kaiin 会員

memories kioku 記憶

mend, to naosu 直す

mental seishin no 精神の

mention, to noberu 述べる

menu menyū メニュー

merely tan ni 単に

mess: in a mess chirakari 散かり

message dengon 伝言

method hōhō 方法

midday shōgo 正午

midday meal chūshoku 昼食

middle (center) chūō 中央

middle: be in the middle of doing ~no saichū ~の最中

midnight mayonaka 真夜中

might moshikashitara ~ka mo shirenai もしかしたら~かもしれない

mild, calm odayaka na 穏やかな

mild (not spicy) amakuchi no 甘口の

milk gyūnyū 牛乳

million hyakuman 百万

mind (brain) chiryoku 知力

mind, to (be displeased) ki ni naru 気になる

minor (not important) taishita koto nai 大したことない

minus ~o hiita ~を引いた

minute fun 分

mirror kagami 鏡

misfortune fukō 不幸

miss, to (bus, flight) nori-okureru 乗り遅れる

miss, to (loved one) koishiku omou 恋しく思う

missing (absent) kesseki no 欠席の

missing (lost person) yukue-fumei 行方不明

mist kiri 霧

mistake machigai 間違い

mistaken machigae rareta 間違えられた

misunderstanding gokai 誤解

mix, to mazaru 混ざる

mixed kongō shita 混合した

mobile phone keitaidenwa 携帯電話

modern gendai no 現代の

modest (simple) hikaeme na 控えめな

moment: in a moment, just a moment sugu ni すぐに; **wait a**

moment shōshō omachi kudasai 少々お待ちください

moment (instant) shunkan 瞬間

Monday getsuyōbi 月曜日

money o-kane お金

monitor (of computer) monitā モニター

monkey saru 猿

month tsuki 月

monument kinenhi 記念碑

moon tsuki 月

more (comparative) ~yori ōku 〜より多く

more of (things) ~yori ōku no 〜より多くの

more or less daitai だいたい

morning asa 朝

morning meal chōshoku 朝食

most (superlative) mottomo 最も

most (most of) hotondo ほとんど

mostly daibubun wa 大部分は

mother haha 母

mother-in-law girinohaha 義理の母

motor, engine motā モーター, enjin エンジン

motor vehicle dōryokusha 動力車

motorcycle ōtobai オートバイ, tansha 単車

mountain yama 山

mouse (computer) mausu マウス

mouth kuchi 口

move, to ugoku 動く

movement (motion) ugoki 動き

movie eiga 映画

movie house eigakan 映画館

much takusan no たくさんの

murder, to korosu 殺す

muscle kin'niku 筋肉

mushroom kinoko きのこ

music ongaku 音楽

Muslim Isuramukyō(to) no イスラム教(徒)の

must ~nakutewaikenai ~なくてははいけない

mustache kuchihige 口ひげ

my, mine watashi no 私の

myth shinwa 神話

nail (finger, toe) tsume 爪(手、足)
nail (spike) kugi 釘
naked hadaka no 裸の
name namae 名前
narrow semai 狭い
nation (country) kuni 国
national kuni no 国の
nationality kokuseki 国籍
natural shizen no 自然の
nature shizen 自然
naughty itazura na いたずらな, wanpaku na 腕白な
nearby sugusoba no すぐそばの
nearly hotondo ほとんど
neat (orderly) kichin to shita きちんとした
necessary hitsuyō na 必要な
neck kubi 首
necklace kubikazari 首飾り
necktie nekutai ネクタイ
need hitsuyō 必要
need, to hitsuyō de aru 必要である
needle hari 針
neighbor rinjin 隣人
neither ~de nai ~でない
neither ... nor ~mo~mo~nai ~も~も~ない
nephew oi 甥
nest su 巣
net ami 網
Netbook Netto-bukku ネットブック
Netizen netto-shimin ネット市民
network hōsōmō 放送網, kairomō 回路網
never kesshite~nai 決して~ない
never mind! ki ni shinaide 気にしないで
nevertheless sore ni mo kakawarazu それにもかかわらず
new atarashii 新しい

New Zealand Nyūjirando ニュージーランド

news nyūsu ニュース

newspaper shinbun 新聞

next (in line, sequence) tsugi no 次の

next to tonari ni 隣に

next week raishū 来週

next year rainen 来年

nice suteki na 素敵な

niece mei 姪

night yoru 夜

no, not (with nouns) ~dewa nai ~ではない

no, not (with verbs and adjectives) ~nai ~ない, ~dewa nai ~
ではない

nobody daremo~nai 誰も~ない

noise oto 音

noisy urusai うるさい

nonsense muimi na kotoba 無意味な言葉, nansensu ナンセンス

noodles menrui 麺類

noon shōgo 正午

nor ~de mo nai ~でもない

normal futsū no 普通の

normally futsū wa 普通は

north kita 北

nose hana 鼻

nostril bikō 鼻腔

not ~dewa nai ~ではない

not only ... but also ~dake de naku~mo mata ~だけでなく~も
また

not yet mada desu まだです

note (written) memo メモ

note down, to kaki tomeru 書き留める

notebook nōto ノート

nothing nani mo~nai 何も~ない

notice chūmoku 注目, chūi 注意

notice, to kizuku 気づく
novel shōsetsu 小説
November Jūichigatsu 十一月
now ima 今
nowhere doko ni mo~nai どこにも~ない
nude hadaka 裸
numb mahishita 麻痺した
number kazu 数
o'clock ~ji ~時
obedient jūjun na 従順な
obey, to shitagau 従う
object (thing) buttai 物体
object, to (protest) hantai suru 反対する
occasionally tama ni たまに
occupation shokugyō 職業
occur, to okoru 起こる
ocean umi 海
October Jūgatsu 十月
odor (bad smell) akushū 悪臭
of (from) ~no ~の, ~kara ~から
of course mochiron もちろん
off (turned off) keshita 消した, tomatta 止まった
offend, to kanjō o gaisuru 感情を害する
offer, to (suggest) teikyōsuru 提供する
offering teikyō 提供
office jimusho 事務所, ofisu オフィス
official (formal) kōshiki no 公式の
often shibashiba しばしば, yoku よく
oil abura 油
okay ii いい, ōkē オーケー
old (of persons) toshitotta 年取った
old (of things) furui 古い
older brother chōkei 長兄
older sister chōshi 長姉

on (of dates) ~ni ~に, ~no toki ni ~の時に
on (turned on) haitta 入った
on (at) ~no ue ni ~の上に, ~ni ~に
on: to turn something on tsuketa 点けた
on board ~ni notte ~に乗って
on fire hi ga tsuita 火がついた
on foot toho de 徒歩で
on the way tochū de 途中で
on time jikan dōri ni 時間通りに
once, one time ichido 一度
once, before katsute かつて
one ichi 一
one-way ticket katamichi-kippu 片道切符
onion tamanegi 玉葱
only ...shika (...nai) …しか(…ない)
only, merely wazuka わずか
open hiraiteiru 開いている
open, to akeru 開ける
opinion iken 意見
opponent taikōsha 対抗者
opportunity kikai 機会
oppose, to hantai suru 反対する
opposed, in opposition hantai no 反対の
opposite (contrary) ~ni hanshite ~に反して
opposite (facing) hantai gawa no 反対側の
optional zuii no 随意の
or ~ka~ ~か~
orange (color) orenjiro オレンジ色
orange (citrus) orenji オレンジ
order (command) meirei 命令
order (placed for food, goods) chūmon 注文
order (sequence) junban 順番
order, to (command) meireisuru 命令する
order something, to chūmon suru 注文する

orderly (organized) seiton sareta 整とんされた
organize, to chōsei suru 調整する
origin kigen 起源
original genkei no 原型の
originate, to (come from) ~kara okoru ~から起こる
ornament sōshokuhin 装飾品
other hoka no 他の
ought to ~subeki de aru ~すべきである
out ~no soto e ~の外へ
outside sotogawa 外側
outside of ~no soto ni ~の外に
oval (shape) daenkei 楕円形
oven tenpi 天火, ōbun オーブン
over (finished) owatta 終った
over: to turn over uragaesu 裏返す
over there achira gawa あちら側, asoko あそこ
overcast (cloudy) kumotta 曇った
overcome, to uchikatsu 打ち勝つ
overseas kaigai no 海外の
owe, to kari ga aru 借りがある
own, to shoji suru 所持する
own (personal) jibun no 自分の
own: on one's own hitori de 独りで
pack, package tsutsumi 包み
page pēji 頁
paid yūkyū no 有給の
pain itami 痛み
painful itai 痛い
paint, to (a painting) kaku 描く
paint, to (house, furniture) penki o nuru ペンキを塗る
painting kaiga 絵画
pair of, a ittsumi no 一對の
pajamas nemaki 寝巻き, pajama パジャマ
palace kyūden 宮殿

pan nabe 鍋

panorama zenkei 全景, panorama パノラマ

panties pantī パンティー

pants zubon ズボン

paper kami 紙

parcel kozutsumi 小包

parents ryōshin 両親

park kōen 公園

park, to chūsha suru 駐車する

part (not whole) ichibu 一部

part (of machine) buhin 部品

participate, to sanku suru 参加する

particularly toku ni 特に

partly bubunteki ni 部分的に

partner (in business) kyōdō keieisha 共同経営者

partner (spouse) tsureai つれあい

party (event) pātī パーティー

party (political) tō 党

pass, to (exam) gōkaku suru 合格する

pass, to (go past) tōrikosu 通り越す

passenger jōkyaku 乗客

passport ryoken 旅券, pasupōto パスポート

past: go past tōrikosu 通り越す

past (former) mukashi no 昔の

pastime goraku 娯楽

patient (calm) nintai no aru 忍耐のある

patient (doctor's) kanja 患者

pattern (design) moyō 模様, gara 柄

pay, to harau 払う

pay attention chūi o harau 注意を払う

payment shiharai 支払い

peace heiwa 平和

peaceful heiwa na 平和な

peak (summit) sanchō 山頂, chōten 頂点

pearl shinju 真珠
peel, to muku 剥く
pen pen ペン
pencil enpitsu 鉛筆
people hitobito 人々
pepper (black) kurokoshō 黒胡椒
pepper (chilli) tōgarashi 唐辛子
percent, percentage hyakubun-ritsu 百分率, pāsento パーセント
performance kōen 公演, dekibae 出来映え
perfume kōsui 香水
perhaps (maybe) tabun 多分
period (menstrual) seiri 生理
period (of time) kikan 期間
permanent eikyū no 永久の
permit (license) menkyo 免許
permit, to (allow) kyoka suru 許可する
person hito 人
personality kosei 個性, seikaku 性格
perspire, to ase o kaku 汗をかく
pet animal aiganddubutsu 愛玩動物, petto ペット
pharmacy yakkyoku 薬局
photocopy kopī コピー
photocopy, to kopī suru コピーする
photograph shashin 写真
photograph, to shashin o toru 写真を撮る
pick, to (choose) erabu 選ぶ
pick up, to (someone, in a car) kuruma ni noseru 車に乗せる
pick up, to (something) mochiageru 持ち上げる
pickpocket suri すり
picture e 絵
piece (item) ikko 一個
piece (portion, section) hitokire ひと切れ
pierce, to tsukitōsu 突き通す
pig buta 豚

pillow makura 枕

pills jōzai 錠剤

pink pinku no ピンクの

pitcher mizusashi 水差し

pity: what a pity zan'nen da 残念だ

place basho 場所

place, to oku 置く

plain (level ground) taira na 平らな

plain (not fancy) heibon na 平凡な

plan keikaku 計画

plan, to keikaku suru 計画する

plane hikōki 飛行機

plant shokubutsu 植物

plant, to ueru 植える

plastic purasuchikku プラスチック

plate sara 皿

play, to ~suru ~する

play around, to asobimawaru 遊びまわる

plead, to kongan suru 懇願する

pleasant kanji no ii 感じのいい

please (go ahead) dōzo どうぞ

please (request for help) onegai shimasu お願いします

please (request for something) onegai shimasu お願いします

pleased manzoku shita 満足した

plug (bath) sen 栓

plug (electric) sashikomi 差し込, puragu プラグ

plus tsukekuwawatta 付け加わった, purasu プラス

pocket poketto ポケット

point (in time) jiten 時点

point (dot) ten 点

point out shiteki suru 指摘する

poison doku 毒

police keisatsu 警察

police officer keisatsukan 警察官

polish, to migaku 磨く
politics seiji 政治
polite reigitadashii 礼儀正しい
poor mazushii 貧しい
popular ninki no aru 人気のある
population jinkō 人口
pork butaniku 豚肉
port minato 港
portion (serve) wakemae 分け前
possess, to shoyū suru 所有する
possessions shoyūbutsu 所有物
possible kanō na 可能な
possibly osoraku~darō おそらく~だろう
post (mail) yūbin 郵便
postcard hagaki 葉書
postpone, to enki suru 延期する
post office yūbinkyoku 郵便局
pot hachi 鉢
potato jagaimo ジャガイモ
pour, to sosogu 注ぐ
power chikara 力
powerful chikarazuyoi 力強い
practice shūkan 習慣, renshū 練習
practice, to renshū suru 練習する
praise shōsan 賞賛
praise, to shōsan suru 賞賛する
pray, to inoru 祈る
prayer kigan(suru hito) 祈願(する人)
prefer, to konomu 好む
pregnant ninshin shita 妊娠した
prepare, to (make ready) junbi suru 準備する
prepared (ready) yōi ga dekiteiru 用意ができています
prescription shohōsen 処方箋
present (gift) okurimono 贈り物, purezento プレゼント

present, to be (here) koko ni iru ここにいる
present, to okurimono o suru 贈り物をする
present: at the present moment genzai 現在
presently (nowadays) genzai 現在
preserved hozon sareta 保存された
president (of country) daitōryō 大統領
president (of society) kaichō 会長
president (of company) shachō 社長
press, to osu 押す
pressure atsuruyoku 圧力
pretend, to ~o yosoo ~を装う
pretty (of places, things) utsukushii 美しい, kogirei na こぎれいな
pretty (of women) kawairashii かわいらしい
pretty (very) totemo とても
prevent, to samatageru 妨げる
price nedan 値段
pride hokori 誇り, jisonshin 自尊心
priest shisai 司祭
print, to insatsu suru 印刷する
prison keimusho 刑務所
private kojinteki na 個人的な
probably osoraku おそらく
problem mondai 問題
produce, to seisan suru 生産する
profession shokugyō 職業
profit rieki 利益
program (schedule) yotei 予定
promise, to yakusoku suru 約束する
pronounce, to hatsuon suru 発音する
proof shōko 証拠
property shisan 資産
protest, to hantai suru 反対する
proud hokori ni omou 誇りに思う

prove, to shōmei suru 証明する
public kōkyō no 公共の
publish, to shuppan suru 出版する
pull, to hiku 引く
punctual jikandōri no 時間どおりの
pupil seito 生徒
pure junsui na 純粋な
purple murasaki 紫
purpose mokuteki 目的
purse (for money) saifu 財布
push, to osu 押す
put, to (place) oku 置く
put off (delay) enki suru 延期する
put on (clothes) kiru 着る
put together, to kumiawaseru 組み合わせる
qualification shikaku 資格
queen joō 女王
question shitsumon 質問
quick kibun na 機敏な, hayai 速い
quickly binsoku ni 敏速に
quiet shizuka na 静かな
quite (fairly) kanari かなり
quite (very) zuibun ずいぶん
radio rajio ラジオ
railroad, railway senro 線路, tetsudo 鉄道
rain ame 雨
rain, to ame ga furu 雨が降る
raise, to (children) sodateru 育てる
raise, to (lift) ageru あげる
rapid hayai 速い
rare (scarce) mezurashii 珍しい
rare (half-cooked) namayake no 生焼けの
rarely, seldom mare ni まれに
rate (tariff) ryōkin 料金

rate of exchange (for foreign currency) kawase rēto 為替レート

rather than ~yori mushiro ~よりむしろ

raw (uncooked) nama no 生の

reach, to (get to) tōchaku suru 到着する

react, to han'nō suru 反応する

read, to yomu 読む

ready yōidekita 用意できた

ready: to get/make ready junbi suru 準備する

realize, to satoru 悟る

really (in fact) jissai ni 実際に

really (truly, honestly) hontō ni 本当に

really? hontō 本当

rear (tail) ushiro 後ろ

reason riyū 理由

reasonable (price) tegoro na 手ごろな

reasonable (sensible) funbetsu no aru 分別のある

receipt ryōshūsho 領収書

receive, to uketoru 受け取る

recipe reshipi レシピ

reckon up, to kazoeru 数える

recognize, to mitomeru 認める

recommend, to susumeru 勧める

recovered (cured) kaifukushita 回復した

rectangle chōhōkei 長方形

red aka 赤

reduce, to herasu 減らす

reduction genshō 減少

reflect, to hankyō suru 反響する

refreshment (drink) nomimono 飲み物

refrigerator reizōko 冷蔵庫

refusal kyozeitsu 拒絶

refuse, to kotowaru 断る

regarding ~ni kanshite ~に関して

region chiiki 地域
register, to tōroku suru 登録する
registered post kakitome 書留
regret, to kōkai suru 後悔する
regrettably oshikumo 惜しくも
regular (normal) tsūjō no 通常の
relatives shinseki 親戚
relax, to kutsurogu くつろぐ
release, to hanasu 放す
religion shūkyō 宗教
remainder (leftover) nokori-mono 残り物
remember, to oboeteiru 覚えている
remind, to omoidasaseru 思い出させる
rent, to kasu 貸す
repair, to shūri suru 修理する
repeat, to kurikaesu 繰り返す
replace, to irekawaru 入れ替わる
reply (response) henji 返事
reply, to (in speech) hentō suru 返答する
reply, to (in writing) henji o kaku 返事を書く
report hōkoku 報告
report, to hōkoku suru 報告する
reporter repōtā レポーター
request, to (formally) irai suru 依頼する
request, to (informally) tanomu 頼む
rescue, to kyūjo suru 救助する
research kenkyū 研究
research, to kenkyū suru 研究する
resemble ruiji suru 類似する
reservation yoyaku 予約
reserve, to (ask for in advance) yoyaku suru 予約する
resident jūnin 住人
resolve, to (a problem) kaiketsu suru 解決する
respect sonkei 尊敬

respect, to sonkei suru 尊敬する

respond, to hentō suru 返答する

response (reaction) hentō 返答, han'nō 反応

responsibility sekinin 責任

responsible, to be sekinin o motsu 責任を持つ

rest (remainder) nokori 残り

rest, to (relax) yasumu 休む

restaurant resutoran レストラン

restrain, to osaeru 抑える

restroom tearai 手洗い

result: as a result, resulting from ~no kekka to shite ~の結果として

result kekka 結果

result (effect) eikyō 影響

retired intaishita 引退した

return, to (give back) kaesu 返す

return, to (go back) modoru 戻る

return ticket ōfuku-kippu 往復切符

return to one's home town, to kikyō suru 帰郷する

reveal, to (make known) akiraka ni suru 明らかにする

reveal, to (make visible) arawasu 現す

reverse, to (go backwards) gyakkō suru 逆行する

ribbon ribon リボン

rice (cooked) go-han ご飯

rice (plant) ine 稲

rice (uncooked) kome 米

rice fields tanbo 田んぼ

rich kanemochi no 金持ちの

rid: get rid of torinozoku 取り除く

ride, to (in car, on an animal) noru 乗る

ride, to (bus, train) jōsha suru 乗車する

right (correct) tadashii 正しい

right-hand side migigawa 右側

right now sugu ni すぐに

rights kenri 権利
ring (jewelry) yubiwa 指輪
ring, to (bell) narasu 鳴らす
ring, to (on the telephone) denwa suru 電話する
ripe jukushita 熟した
rise (ascendancy) jōshō 上昇
rise (increase) zōka 増加
river kawa 川
road michi 道
roast, to (grill) aburu あぶる, yaku やく
rock ishi 石
role yakuwari 役割
roof yane 屋根
room (in hotel/house) heya 部屋
room (space) kūkan 空間
root (of plant) ne 根
rope rōpu ロープ, nawa 縄
rotten kusatta 腐った
rough arappoi 荒っぽい
roughly (approximately) ōyoso おおよそ
round (shape) marui 丸い
rubber gomu ゴム
rude shitsurei na 失礼な
ruined hakai sareta 破壊された
rule kisoku 規則
run, to hashiru 走る
run away, to nigeru 逃げる
sacred shinēs na 神聖な
sacrifice gisei 犠牲
sacrifice, to gisei ni suru 犠牲にする
sad kanashii 悲しい
safe anzen na 安全な
sail, to funatabi o suru 船旅をする
salary kyūryō 給料

sale, for urimono 売りもの

sale (reduced prices) yasuuri 安売り, bāgen バーゲン

sales assistant ten'in 店員

salt shio 塩

salty shiokarai 塩辛い

same onaji 同じ

sample mihon 見本

sand suna 砂

sandals sandaru サンダル

satisfied manzoku shita 満足した

satisfy, to manzoku saseru 満足させる

Saturday doyōbi 土曜日

sauce sōsu ソース

save, to tamotsu 保つ

say, to iu 言う

say hello, to kon'nichi wa to iu こんにちはと言う, yoroshiku よろしく

say goodbye, to sayōnara to iu さようならと言う

say sorry, to ayamaru 謝る

say thank you, to arigatō to iu ありがとうと言う

scarce toboshii 乏しい

scared obieta おびえた

schedule kēkaku 計画

school gakkō 学校

schoolchild gakudō 学童

science kagaku 科学

scissors hasami はさみ

screen (of computer) gamen 画面, sukurīn スクリーン

scrub, to araiotosu 洗い落とす

sculpture chōkoku 彫刻

sea umi 海

seafood kaisanbutsu 海産物

search for, to ~o sagasu ~を探す

season kisetsu 季節

seat isu 椅子

second (unit of time) byō 秒

second (number two position) daini no 第二の

secret himitsu 秘密

secret: to keep a secret himitsu o mamoru 秘密を守る

secretary hisho 秘書

secure anzen na 安全な

see, to miru 見る

seed tane 種

seek, to motomeru 求める

seem, to ~to omowareru ~と思われる

see you later! sorede wa mata それではまた

seldom hotondo~nai ほとんど~ない

select, to erabu 選ぶ

self jishin 自身

sell, to uru 売る

send, to okuru 送る

sensible shiryo no aru 思慮のある

sentence bun 文, sentensu センテンス

separate wakareta 分かれた

separate, to wakeru 分ける

September Kugatsu 九月

sequence (order) junjo 順序

serious (not funny) majime na まじめな

serious (severe) hidoi ひどい

servant meshitsukai 召使

serve, to tsukaeru 仕える

service hōshi 奉仕

set shotei no 所定の

set up, to setsuritsu suru 設立する, juritsu suru 樹立する

several ikutsuka no いくつかの

severe kibishii きびしい

sew, to nu'u 縫う

sex (gender) seibetsu 性別

shade kage 陰
shadow kage 影
shadow play kagee 影絵
shake, to furu 振る
shall ~deshō 〜でしょう
shallow asai 浅い
shame (disgrace) chijoku 恥辱
shame: what a shame! zan'nen 残念
shampoo shanpū シャンプー
shape katachi 形
shape, to (form) katachizukuru 形作る
shark same 鮫
sharp surudoī 鋭い
shatter, to konagona ni suru 粉々にする
shave, to soru 剃る
sheet (for bed) shītsu シーツ
sheet (of paper) ichi-mai no kami 一枚の紙
Shinto shintō 神道
shiny hikaru 光る
ship fune 船
shirt shatsu シャツ
shiver, to miburui suru 身震いする
shoes kutsu 靴
shoot, to utsu 撃つ
shop, to (go shopping) kaimono o suru 買い物をする
shop mise 店
shopkeeper ten'in 店員
short (concise) mijikai 短い
short (not tall) hikui 低い
short time (a moment) tanjikan 短時間
shorts shōtsu ショーツ, tanpan 短パン
shoulder kata 肩
shout, to sakebu 叫ぶ
show (broadcast) bangumi 番組

show (live performance) shō ショー, moyōshi 催し

show, to miseru 見せる

shower (for washing) shawā シャワー

shower (of rain) kosame 小雨

shower: to take a shower shawā o abiru シャワーを浴びる

shrimp ebi 海老

shut shimatta 閉まった

shut, to tojiru 閉じる

sick byōki no 病気の

sick, to be (vomit) hakike ga suru 吐き気がする

side yoko 横

sightseeing kankō 観光

sign (symbol) hyōshiki 標識

sign, to shomei suru 署名する

signature shomei 署名, sain サイン

silent mugon no 無言の

silk kinu 絹

silver gin 銀

similar ruiji shita 類似した

simple (uncomplicated, modest) jimi na 地味な

simple (easy) kantan na 簡単な

since irai 以来

sing, to utau 歌う

single (not married) dokushin no 独身の

single (only one) yuiitsu no 唯一の

sir (term of address) kika 貴下（男性への敬称）

sister shimai 姉妹

sit, to suwaru 座る

sit down, to suwaru 座る

situated, to be ~no jōtai ni aru ~の状態にある

situation (how things are) jōkyō 状況

size saizu サイズ

skillful jukuren shita 熟練した

skin hada 肌

skirt sukāto スカート

sky sora 空

sleep, to neru 寝る

sleepy nemui 眠い

slender hosoi 細い, sumāto na スマートな

slight wazuka na わずかな

slightly wazuka ni わずかに

slim surimu na スリムな, hosoi 細い

slip surippu スリッパ, pechikōto ペチコート

slippers surippa スリッパ, uwabaki 上履き

slope saka 坂

slow osoi 遅い

slowly yukkuri ゆっくり

small chīsai 小さい

small change kozeni 小銭

smart kashikoi 賢い

smartphone sumātofon スマートフォン

smell (bad odor) akushū 悪臭

smell, to niou 臭う

smile, to warau 笑う

smoke kemuri 煙

smoke, to (tobacco) tabako o suu タバコをすう

smooth (of surfaces) subesube shita すべすべした

smooth (to go smoothly) enkatsu ni susumu 円滑にすすむ

smuggle, to mitsuyunyū suru 密輸入する

snake hebi 蛇

sneeze kushami くしゃみ

sneeze, to kushami o suru くしゃみをする

snow yuki 雪

snow, to yuki ga furu 雪が降る

so (therefore) sorede それで, soreyue それゆえ

so (very) totemo とても

so that dakara だから, ~suru tame ni ~するために

soak, to hitaru 浸る

soap sekken 石鹸

socket (electric) soketto ソケット, ukeguchi 受け口

socks kutsushita 靴下

sofa sofā ソファ

soft yawarakai やわらかい

soil tsuchi 土

sold urareta 売られた

sold out urikire 売り切れ

soldier heitai 兵隊

sole (only) tatta hitotsu no たったひとつの

solid kotai no 固体の

solve, to (a problem) kaiketsu suru 解決する

some ikutsuka no いくつかの

somebody, someone dareka 誰か

something nani ka 何か

sometimes tokidoki 時々

somewhere doko ka どこか

son musuko 息子

son-in-law giri no musuko 義理の息子

song uta 歌

soon sugu ni すぐに

sore, painful itai 痛い

sorrow kanashimi 悲しみ

sorry gomen nasai ごめんなさい

sorry, to be kōkai suru 後悔する

sort (type) shurui 種類

sort out, to taisho suru 対処する

sound oto 音

soup (clear) sūpu スープ

sour suppai すっぱい

source minamoto 源

south minami 南

souvenir miyagemono みやげ物

space kūkan 空間

spacious hirobiro shita 広々した
speak, to hanasu 話す
special tokubetsu na 特別な
speech supīchi スピーチ
speed supīdo スピード
spell, to tsuzuru 綴る
spend, to tsuiyasu 費やす
spicy karai 辛い
spinach hōrensō ほうれん草
spine sebone 背骨
spiral rasenjō no らせん状の
split, to bunkatsu suru 分割する
spoiled (of food) kusatta 腐った
spoon supūn スプーン
sponge sponji スポンジ
sports supōtsu no スポーツの, undōyō no 運動用の
spouse haigūsha 配偶者
spray supurē スプレー
spring (of water) wakimizu 湧き水
spring (season) haru 春
square (shape) shikakui 四角い
square (town square) hiroba 広場
squid ika イカ
staff sutaffu スタッフ, ichiin 一員
stain shimi しみ
stairs kaidan 階段
stall, to (car) shissoku saseru 失速させる
stamp (ink) kokuin 刻印, sutanpu スタンプ
stamp (postage) kitte 切手
stand, to tatsu 立つ
stand up, to tachiagaru 立ち上がる
star hoshi 星
start (beginning) hajimari 始まり
start, to hajimeru 始める

state, to noberu 述べる
stationery bunbōgu 文房具
statue zō 像
stay, to (remain) nokoru 残る
stay overnight, to ippaku suru 一泊する
steal, to nusumu 盗む
steam jōki 蒸気
steamed musareta 蒸された
steel hagane はがね
steer, to kaji o toru かじをとる
step ashidori 足取り, ippo 一步
steps, stairs kaidan 階段
stew shichū シチュー, nikomi 煮込み
stick (pole) bō 棒
stick out, to depparu 出っ張る
sticky nebaneba shita ねばねばした
sticky rice mochigome もち米
stiff katai 堅い
still (even now) mada まだ
still (quiet) shizuka na 静かな
stink, to akushū o hanatsu 悪臭を放つ
stomach hara 腹
stone ishi 石
stool koshikake 腰掛
stop (bus, train) teiryūjo 停留所
stop, to (cease) yameru やめる
stop, to (halt) tomeru 止める
stop by, to (pay a visit) tazuneru 訪ねる
stop it yamete やめて
stores, reserves, savings takuwae 蓄え
store, shop mise 店
storm arashi 嵐
story (of a building) kai 階
story (tale) hanashi 話

stout zungurishita ずんぐりした
stove (cooker) konro コンロ, kamado かまど
straight (not crooked) massugu na 真っ直ぐな
straight ahead massugu mae ni 真っ直ぐ前に
strange hen na 変な
stranger shiranai hito 知らない人
street michi 道, tōri 通り
strength chikara 力
strict kibishii 厳しい
strike, to (hit) utsu 打つ
strike: to go on strike sutoraiki o suru ストライキをする
string himo 紐
strong tsuyoi 強い
stubborn (determined) ganko na 頑固な
stuck (won't move) kotei sareta 固定された
student gakusei 学生
study, to gakushū suru 学習する
stupid oroka na 愚かな
style katachi 形
succeed, to seikō suru 成功する
success seikō 成功
such as ~no yōna ~のような, tatoeba 例えば
suck, to suu 吸う
suddenly kyū ni 急に
suffer, to kurushimu 苦しむ
sugar satō 砂糖
sugarcane satōkibi サトウキビ
suggest, to teian suru 提案する
suggestion teian 提案
suit (business) sūtsu スーツ
suitable fusawashii ふさわしい, oniai no お似合いの
suitcase sūtsukēsu スーツケース
summer natsu 夏
summit (peak) sanchō 山頂

summon, to yobidasu 呼び出す

sun taiyō 太陽

Sunday nichiyōbi 日曜日

sunlight hizashi 日差し

sunny hiataru ga ii 日当たりがいい

sunrise hinode 日の出

sunset hinoiri 日の入

supermarket sūpāmāketto スーパーマーケット

suppose, to ~da to omou 〜だと思う

sure kakushinshita 確信した

surf uchiyoseru nami 打ち寄せる波, sāfin サーフィン

surface hyōmen 表面

surface mail futsūyūbin 普通郵便

surname myōji 苗字

surprised odoroiita 驚いた

surprising odorokubeki 驚くべき

surroundings kankyō 環境

survive, to ikinobiru 生き延びる

suspect, to utagau 疑う

suspicion kengi 嫌疑

stubborn danko to shita 断固とした

swallow, to nomikomu 飲み込む

sweat hakkan 発汗

sweat, to ase o kaku 汗をかく

sweep, to haku 掃く

sweet amai 甘い

sweet and sour amazuppai 甘酸っぱい

sweets (candy) ame 飴

swim, to oyogu 泳ぐ

swimsuit mizugi 水着

swing, to yuri ugokasu 揺り動かす

switch suitchi スイッチ

switch, to (change) kōkan suru 交換する

switch, to (clothes) kigaeru 着替える

switch on, to tsukeru 点ける
table tsukue 机, tēburu テーブル
tablecloth tēburukurosu テーブルクロス
tablemat tēburumatto テーブルマット
tail o 尾, shippo しっぽ
take, to (remove) motteiku 持っていく
take care of, to sewa o suru 世話をする
take off, to (clothes) nugu 脱ぐ
talk, to hanasu 話す
talk about, to ~ni suite hanasu ~について話す
tall takai 高い
tape, adhesive setchaku tēpu 接着テープ
taste aji 味
taste, to (sample) shishoku o suru 試食をする
taste, to (salty, spicy, etc.) ajimi o suru 味見をする
tasty oishii おいしい
taxi takushī タクシー
tea cha 茶
teach, to oshieru 教える
teacher sensei 先生
team chīmu チーム
tear, to (rip) yaburu 破る
tears namida 涙
teenager shishunki no kodomo 思春期の子供
teeth ha 歯
telephone denwa 電話
telephone number denwabangō 電話番号
television terebi テレビ
tell, to (a story) hanasu 話す
tell, to (let know) oshieru 教える
temperature ondo 温度
temple (ancient) koji 古寺
temple jiin 寺院, tera 寺
temporary ichijiteki na 一時的な

ten thousand ichiman 一万
tennis tenisu テニス
tens of (multiples of ten) nanjū bai mo no 何十倍もの
tense kinchō shita 緊張した
terrible hidoi ひどい
test shiken 試験, tesuto テスト
test, to tamesu 試す
than ~yori ~より
Thailand tai タイ
thank, to kansha suru 感謝する
thank you arigatō ありがとう
that (introducing a quotation) ~to (iu) ~と(言う)
that person sono hito その人
that are あれ
that thing sore それ
theater (drama) gekijo 劇場
then sono go その後, sore kara それから
there soko ni そこに, soko de そこで
there is/are ~ga aru ~がある, ~ga iru ~がいる
therefore sono kekka その結果
these korera no これらの
thick (of liquids) koi 濃い
thick (of things) atsui 厚い
thief dorobō 泥棒
thin (of liquids) usui 薄い
thin (of persons) yaseta やせた
thing mono 物
think, to (have an opinion) omou 思う
think, to (ponder) kangaeru 考える
third daisan no 第三の
thirsty nodo no kawaita のどの渴いた
this kono この
those arera あれら
though ~ni mo kakawarazu ~にもかかわらず

thoughts shikō 思考

thousand sen 千

thread ito 糸

threaten, to kyōhaku suru 脅迫する

throat nodo のど

through (past) ~o tōrinukete ~を通り抜けて

throw, to nageru 投げる

throw away/out, to suteru 捨てる

thunder kaminari 雷

Thursday mokuyōbi 木曜日

thus (so) shitagatte 従って

ticket (for entertainment) ken 券, chiketto チケット

ticket (for transport) kippu 切符

tidy sēton sareta 整頓された

tidy up, to sēton suru 整頓する

tie (necktie) nekutai ネクタイ

tie, to musubu 結ぶ

tight pittarishita びったりした, kitsui きつい

time jikan 時間

time: from time to time tokidoki 時々

times (multiplying) bai 倍

timetable jikokuhyō 時刻表

tiny totemo chīsa na とても小さな

tip (end) hashi 端

tip (gratuity) chippu チップ, kokorozuke 心付け

tired (sleepy) nemui 眠い

tired (worn out) tsukareta 疲れた

title (of book, film) daimei 題名

title (of person) katagaki 肩書き

to (a person) ~e ~へ, ~no hō ni ~の方に

to (a place) ~e ~へ, ~no hōkō ni ~の方向に

toasted aburareta あぶられた

today kyō 今日

toe tsumasaki つま先

tofu tōfu 豆腐

together tomo ni 共に, issho ni 一緒に

toilet tearai 手洗い, toire トイレ

tomato tomato トマト

tomorrow asu 明日

tongue shita 舌

tonight konban 今晚

too (also) ~mo mata 〜もまた

too (excessive) amari ni~ sugiru あまりに〜過ぎる

too much ōsugiru 多過ぎる

tool dōgu 道具

tooth ha 歯

toothbrush haburashi 歯ブラシ

toothpaste hamigakiko 歯磨き粉

top ue 上

topic wadai 話題

total gōkei (no) 合計(の)

touch, to fureru 触れる

tourist kankōkyaku 観光客

toward ~no hōe 〜の方へ

toward, to ~e mukau 〜へ向かう

towel taoru タオル

tower tō 塔

town machi 町

toy omocha おもちゃ

trade (business) shōbai 商売

trade (exchange) bōeki 貿易

tradition dentō 伝統

traditional dentōteki na 伝統的な

traffic kōtsū 交通

train densha 電車

train station eki 駅

training kunren 訓練

translate, to hon'yaku suru 翻訳する

travel, to ryokō o suru 旅行をする

traveler ryokōsha 旅行者

tray bon 盆

treat (something special) tanoshimi 楽しみ, gochisō ご馳走

treat, to (deal with) atsukau 扱う

treat, to (medically) chiryō suru 治療する

tree ki 木

triangle sankaku 三角

tribe buzoku 部族

trip (journey) tabi 旅

trouble konnan 困難

troublesome mendō na 面倒な

trousers zubon ズボン

truck torakku トラック

true hontō no 本当の

truly hontō ni 本当に

trust, to shinrai suru 信頼する

try, to doryoku suru 努力する

try on, to (clothes) shichaku suru 試着する

T-shirt tīshatsu ティーシャツ

Tuesday Kayōbi 火曜日

turn: to make a turn magaru 曲がる

turn around, to furikaeru 振りかえる

turn off, to kesu 消す

turn on, to tsukeru 点ける

TV terebi テレビ

Tweet, to tsubuyaku つぶやく

Twitter Tsuittā ツイッター

type (sort) shurui 種類

type, to taipusuru タイプする

typhoon taihū 台風

typical tenkeiteki na 典型的な

ugly migurushii 見苦しい

umbrella kasa 傘

uncle oji おじ

uncooked nama no 生の

under ~no shita ni ~の下に

undergo, to keiken suru 経験する

underpants pantsu パンツ

undershirt hadagi 肌着

understand, to rikai suru 理解する

underwear shitagi 下着

undressed, to get fuku o nugu 服を脱ぐ

unemployed shitsugyōchū no 失業中の

unfortunately zan'nen nagara 残念ながら

unhappy fukō na 不幸な

United Kingdom Eikoku 英国

United States Amerika gasshūkoku アメリカ合衆国

university daigaku 大学

unless ~de nai kagiri ~でない限り

unlucky fuun na 不運な

unnecessary fuhitsuyō na 不必要な

unripe miseijuku no 未成熟の

until ~made ~まで

up, upward ue no hōe 上のほうへ

upset dōyōshita 動揺した

upside down sakasama 逆さま

upstairs jōkai e 上階へ

urban toshi no 都市の

urge, to (push for) shōdō o karitateru 衝動を駆り立てる

urgent kinkyū no 緊急の

urinate, to shōben o suru 小便をする

use, to tsukau 使う

used to (accustomed) nareteiru 慣れている

used to do something yoku~shita mono da よく~したものだ

useful yakudatsu 役立つ

useless mueki na 無益な

usual itsu mo no いつもの

usually taitei たいてい
utensil dōgu 道具
vacation kyūka 休暇
vaccination yobōsesshu 予防接種
vague aimai na あいまいな
valid yūkō na 有効な, datō na 妥当な
valley tani 谷
value (cost) kachi 価格
value (good) oneuchi お値打ち
vase kabin 花瓶
VCR bideo dekki ビデオデッキ
vegetable yasai 野菜
vehicle norimono 乗り物
verify tashikameru 確かめる
very (extremely) hijō ni 非常に
via ~o tōtte ~を通って
video recorder bideo rekōdā ビデオレコーダー
videotape, to rokuga suru 録画する
Vietnam Betonamu ベトナム
view (panorama) keshiki 景色
viewpoint mikata 見方
village mura 村
vinegar su 酢
visa biza ビザ, sashō 査証
visit taizai 滞在
visit: pay a visit to tazuneru 訪ねる
voice koe 声
voicemail rusuban-denwa 留守番電話
volcano kazan 火山
vomit, to haku 吐く
vote, to tōhyō suru 投票する
wages chingin 賃金
wait for, to ~o motsu ~を待つ
waiter, waitress kyūji 給仕

wake someone up, to okosu 起こす
wake up, to mezameru 目覚める
walk, to aruku 歩く
wall kabe 壁
wallet saifu 財布
want, to ~ga hoshii ~が欲しい, ~shitai ~したい
war sensō 戦争
warm atatakai 暖かい
warmth nukumori ぬくもり
warn, to kēkoku suru 警告する
warning kēkoku 警告
wash, to arau 洗う
wash the dishes, to shokki o arau 食器を洗う
watch (wristwatch) udedokei 腕時計
watch, to miru 見る
watch, to (show, movie) miru 観る
watch over, to (guard) miharu 見張る
water mizu 水
waterfall taki 滝
watermelon suika スイカ
wave (in sea) nami 波
wave, to furu 振る
way (method) hōhō 方法
way: the way of ~suru hōhō ~する方法
way in iriguchi 入口
way out deguchi 出口
weak yowai 弱い
wealthy yūfuku na 裕福な
weapon buki 武器
wear, to kiru 着る
weary tsukarekitta 疲れ切った
weather tenki 天気
weave, to oru 織る
website webusaito ウェブサイト

wedding kekkonshiki 結婚式

Wednesday suiyōbi 水曜日

week shū 週

weekend shūmatsu 週末

weekly maishū no 毎週の

weep, to naku 泣く

weigh, to hakaru 量る

weight omosa 重さ

weight, to gain taijū ga fueru 体重が増える

weight, to lose taijū ga heru 体重が減る

welcome! yōkoso ようこそ

welcome to ~e yōkoso ~へようこそ

well (for water) ido 井戸

well (good) yoi 良い

well done! yoku dekimashita よくできました

well off (wealthy) yūfuku na 裕福な

well-behaved, well-mannered gyōgi no ii 行儀のいい

well-cooked, well-done yoku hi no tootta よく火の通った

west nishi 西

westerner sei'yōjin 西洋人

wet nureta 濡れた

what nani 何

what for nan no tame ni 何のために

what happened nani ga okitano 何が起きたの

what kind of donna どんな

what time nan-ji 何時

wheel (car) sharin 車輪

when itsu いつ

when (at the time) ~suru toki ~する時

whenever itsu de mo いつでも

where doko どこ

where to doko e どこへ

which dore どれ

while (during) ~no aida ni ~の間に

white shiro 白
who dare だれ
whole (all of) subete no 全ての
whole (to be complete) kanzen na 完全な
why naze なぜ
wicked warui 悪い
wide habahiroi 幅広い
width haba 幅
widow mibōjin 未亡人
will ~deshō 〜でしょう
with ~to 〜と
within reason dōri ni kanatteiru 道理にかなっている
without ~nashi ni 〜なしに
witness mokugekisha 目撃者
witness, to mokugeki suru 目撃する
woman josei 女性
wonderful subarashii すばらしい
wood ki 木
wooden mokusei no 木製の
wool yōmō 羊毛
word go 語, kotoba 言葉
work (occupation) shigoto 仕事
work, to shigoto o suru 仕事をする
work, to (function) kinō suru 機能する
world sekai 世界
worn out (clothes, machine) tsukaifurushita 使い古した
worn out (tired) tsukarekitta 疲れ切った
worry, to shinpai suru 心配する
worse yori warui より悪い
worship, to shinkō suru 信仰する
worst mottomo hidoi 最もひどい
worth, to be kachiga aru 価値がある
wound kega 怪我
wrap, to tsutsumu 包む

wrist tekubi 手首

write, to kaku 書く

writer sakka 作家

wrong (false) ayamatta 誤った

wrong (mistaken) machigatta 間違った

wrong (morally) warui 悪い(道徳的に)

yawn, to akubi suru あくびする

year toshi 年

years old ~sai ~歳

yell, to sakebu 叫ぶ

yellow kīro 黄色

yesterday kinō 昨日

yet: not yet mada~nai まだ~ない

you're welcome dōitashimashite どういたしまして

young wakai 若い

younger brother otōto 弟

younger sister imōto 妹

youth (state of being young) wakasa 若さ

youth (young person) wakamono 若者

zero zero 零

zoo dōbutsuen 動物園

Illustration and Photo Credits

The manga and line drawings throughout the text are by Akiko Saito.

The credits for the photographs are as follows:

ayustety (<http://www.flickr.com/photos/ayustety/12482886/>)/

Wikimedia Commons:153, *depachika* at Lotte Department Store

Bobby (<http://flickr.com/photos/84468390@N00/>)/Wikimedia

Commons: 13, bookshelves with manga

Dorregaray/Dreamstime.com: 125, capsule hotel

Eriko Sato: 140, bento boxes

Radzian/Dreamstime.com: 78, Akihabara

Taeko Kamei: 39, *netto kafe*; 52, fast-food restaurants; 152, *konbini*

Tsuneomp/Dreamstime.com: 189, tatami room

List of Culture Notes

Puzzling Japanese Phrases

Manga

Netto Kafe

Weather in Japan

Meishi (Business Cards)

Bentō

Business Telephone Conversations

Convenient **Konbini**

Depachika

Manshon

Nengajō 'New Year's Greeting Cards'

Izakaya

Bowing

Gift-giving

Blood Types and Personality

ABOUT TUTTLE

“Books to Span the East and West”

Our core mission at Tuttle Publishing is to create books which bring people together one page at a time. Tuttle was founded in 1832 in the small New England town of Rutland, Vermont (USA). Our fundamental values remain as strong today as they were then—to publish best-in-class books informing the English-speaking world about the countries and peoples of Asia. The world has become a smaller place today and Asia’s economic, cultural and political influence has expanded, yet the need for meaningful dialogue and information about this diverse region has never been greater. Since 1948, Tuttle has been a leader in publishing books on the cultures, arts, cuisines, languages and literatures of Asia. Our authors and photographers have won numerous awards and Tuttle has published thousands of books on subjects ranging from martial arts to paper crafts. We welcome you to explore the wealth of information available on Asia at **www.tuttlepublishing.com**.

Published by Tuttle Publishing, an imprint of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

www.tuttlepublishing.com

Copyright © 2012, 2017 by Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without prior written permission from the publisher.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Martin, Samuel E. (Samuel Elmo), 1924–2009.

Basic Japanese: learn to speak everyday Japanese in 10 carefully structured lessons / Samuel Martin, Eriko Sato. — 1st ed.

351 p.: ill.; 23 cm. + 1 CD-ROM (4 3/4 in.).

ISBN 978-4-8053-0962-9 (pbk.) ISBN 978-1-4629-1451-7 (ebook)

1. Japanese language—Textbooks for foreign speakers—English. 2. Japanese language—Spoken Japanese. 3. Japanese language—Self-instruction. I. Sato, Eriko. II. Title.

PL539.5.E5M27 2012

495.6'82421—dc23 2012003345

2017 Edition ISBN: 978-4-8053-1390-9 ISBN 978-1-4629-1928-4 (ebook)

Distributed by

North America, Latin America & Europe

Tuttle Publishing

364 Innovation Drive

North Clarendon, VT 05759-9436 U.S.A.

Tel: 1 (802) 773-8930; Fax: 1 (802) 773-6993

info@tuttlepublishing.com

www.tuttlepublishing.com

Japan

Tuttle Publishing

Yaekari Building 3rd Floor

5-4-12 Osaki Shinagawa-ku

Tokyo 141 0032

Tel: (81) 3 5437-0171; Fax: (81) 3 5437-0755

sales@tuttle.co.jp

www.tuttle.co.jp

Asia Pacific

Berkeley Books Pte. Ltd.

61 Tai Seng Avenue #02-12
Singapore 534167
Tel: (65) 6280-1330; Fax: (65) 6280-6290
inquiries@periplus.com.sg
www.periplus.com

First edition

21 20 19 18 17 5 4 3 2 1 1708RR

Printed in China

TUTTLE PUBLISHING® is a registered trademark of Tuttle Publishing, a division
of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

“Did you like this book. Please post review.”